

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO



3 1761 01790374 1



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

91


A GRAMMAR
OF THE
ARABIC LANGUAGE

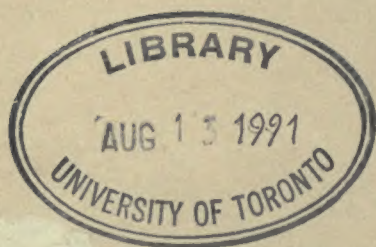
A GRAMMAR
OF THE
ARABIC LANGUAGE

BY

The Rev. R. STERLING M.A., M.B., B.S.,
Missionary of the Church Missionary Society,
Gaza, Palestine.

LONDON
KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & Co. LIMITED
Dryden House, Gerrard St. W.
1904





~~~~~  
Printed by E. J. BRILL. — LEIDEN (Holland).

# CONTENTS

## PART I

### ORTHOGRAPHY

|                                     | Page |
|-------------------------------------|------|
| The Alphabet . . . . .              | 1    |
| The Vowels . . . . .                | 6    |
| Other Orthographical Signs. . . . . | 7    |
| The Pause. . . . .                  | 10   |
| The Accent . . . . .                | 11   |
| Anomalies in Writing . . . . .      | 11   |

### ETYMOLOGY

|                                                           |    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Parts of Speech. . . . .                                  | 13 |
| Servile Letters . . . . .                                 | 13 |
| Measures of Words . . . . .                               | 14 |
| The Verb. . . . .                                         | 16 |
| The Annexed Pronouns. . . . .                             | 19 |
| Simple Form of the Triliteral. . . . .                    | 20 |
| The Six Measures of the Triliteral . . . . .              | 21 |
| Observations on the Derived Forms. . . . .                | 22 |
| Rules for the Formation of the Verb . . . . .             | 23 |
| The Quadriliteral Verb . . . . .                          | 26 |
| Table of Derived Forms. . . . .                           | 27 |
| Changes of the Weak Letters. . . . .                      | 28 |
| Assimilation . . . . .                                    | 30 |
| Forms of the Verb in respect to its Root Letter . . . . . | 32 |
| Changes peculiar to each Form . . . . .                   | 33 |
| \ The Corroborative نُونٌ . . . . .                       | 38 |
| The نُونٌ of Precaution . . . . .                         | 40 |
| Tables of Triliteral Verbs . . . . .                      | 41 |
| Meanings of the Derived Forms . . . . .                   | 47 |
| The Derivative Nouns . . . . .                            | 61 |
| The Primitive Noun . . . . .                              | 85 |
| The Gender of Nouns . . . . .                             | 85 |
| Feminine Nouns . . . . .                                  | 86 |
| Number. . . . .                                           | 91 |



|                                          | Page |
|------------------------------------------|------|
| The Dual . . . . .                       | 91   |
| The Plural . . . . .                     | 92   |
| The Regular Masculine Plural . . . . .   | 92   |
| The Regular Feminine Plural . . . . .    | 94   |
| The Irregular or broken Plural . . . . . | 96   |
| The Noun of Relation . . . . .           | 98   |
| The Diminutive . . . . .                 | 102  |
| The Numerals . . . . .                   | 107  |
| The Pronouns . . . . .                   | 112  |
| The Article . . . . .                    | 119  |
| Collective Nouns . . . . .               | 122  |
| Classification of Nouns . . . . .        | 123  |

## PART II

## SYNTAX

|                                                             |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Declension. . . . .                                         | 125 |
| Indeclension . . . . .                                      | 125 |
| Regents . . . . .                                           | 126 |
| Cases . . . . .                                             | 127 |
| Division of the Signs of Declension. . . . .                | 128 |
| Implied Signs of Declension . . . . .                       | 131 |
| The Nunation . . . . .                                      | 132 |
| States of the Noun in Declension and Indeclension . . . . . | 133 |
| Imperfectly Declined Nouns . . . . .                        | 134 |
| Indeclinable Nouns . . . . .                                | 137 |
| Definite Nouns . . . . .                                    | 138 |
| The Sentence. . . . .                                       | 140 |
| The Nominative Case. . . . .                                | 140 |
| The Verbal Sentence . . . . .                               | 141 |
| The Subject of a Passive Verb . . . . .                     | 144 |
| The Nominal Sentence . . . . .                              | 146 |
| Words which affect the Subject and Predicate . . . . .      | 158 |
| The Accusative Case . . . . .                               | 180 |
| The Genitive Case . . . . .                                 | 197 |

## THE PREPOSITION

## NOUNS IN CONSTRUCTION

|                                                                      |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| The Appositives. . . . .                                             | 214 |
| Moods of the Verbs . . . . .                                         | 226 |
| The Subjunctive Mood. Accusative Particles . . . . .                 | 226 |
| The Conditional and Imperative Moods. Apocopative Particles. . . . . | 229 |
| The Conditional Particles لَمَّا, لَوْ, لَوْلا, أَمَّا . . . . .     | 233 |
| Tenses of the Verb . . . . .                                         | 235 |



# CONTENTS .

XI

Page

|                                                                       |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| ✕ The Negative Particles . . . . .                                    | 238 |
| ✕ The Particles قد, سوف, س . . . . .                                  | 238 |
| — The Letter نون . . . . .                                            | 239 |
| Verbs of Wonder . . . . .                                             | 240 |
| Verbs of Praise and Blame . . . . .                                   | 241 |
| Derived Nouns which govern as Verbs . . . . .                         | 243 |
| Appendix . . . . .                                                    | 245 |
| Tables of Derived Forms of the Verb . . . . .                         | 247 |
| Triliteral Verbs arranged according to their medial radical . . . . . | 247 |
| Derived Verbs . . . . .                                               | 258 |
| Nouns of Action Triliteral . . . . .                                  | 281 |
| Adjectives . . . . .                                                  | 298 |
| Nouns of Excess . . . . .                                             | 306 |
| Nouns of Instrument . . . . .                                         | 309 |
| Irregular Plurals . . . . .                                           | 314 |
| (a). Paucity . . . . .                                                | 315 |
| (b). Multitude . . . . .                                              | 320 |
| (c). of Plurals . . . . .                                             | 337 |

---



# PART FIRST.

## ORTHOGRAPHY.

### THE ALPHABET.

The alphabet **اَلْحُرُوفُ اَلْهَجَائِيَّةُ** contains twenty-eight letters which are all consonants.

They are written and read from right to left.

Their forms are modified in accordance with their position in a word, whether at the beginning, middle, or end, and whether single or joined to others.

Their names, forms, numerical value and approximate pronunciation are given in the following table.

| Numerical Value. | Numerical Order. | Final. | Medial. | Initial. | Detached. | Name.       |
|------------------|------------------|--------|---------|----------|-----------|-------------|
| ا                | ا                | ا      | ا       | ا        | ا         | اَلِف Aleph |
| ب                | ب                | ب      | ب       | ب        | ب         | بَاء Ba     |
| ت                | ت                | ت      | ت       | ت        | ت         | تَاء Ta     |
| ث                | ث                | ث      | ث       | ث        | ث         | ثَاء Thā    |
| ج                | ج                | ج      | ج       | ج        | ج         | جِيم Jim    |
| ح                | ح                | ح      | ح       | ح        | ح         | حَاء Hā     |
| خ                | خ                | خ      | خ       | خ        | خ         | خَاء Khā    |



| Numerical Value. | Numerical Order. | Final. | Medial. | Initial. | Detached. | Name.          |
|------------------|------------------|--------|---------|----------|-----------|----------------|
| ٨                | ح                | د      | ..      | د        | د         | دَال Dal       |
| ٩                | ط                | ذ      | ..      | ذ        | ذ         | ذَال Dhal      |
| ١٠               | ي                | ر      | ..      | ر        | ر         | رَاءَ Ra       |
| ٢٠               | ك                | ز      | ..      | ز        | ز         | زَاي Zain      |
| ٣٠               | ل                | س      | س       | س        | س         | سَيْن Sīn      |
| ٤٠               | م                | ش      | ش       | ش        | ش         | شَيْن Shīn     |
| ٥٠               | ن                | ص      | ص       | ص        | ص         | صَاد Ṣad       |
| ٦٠               | س                | ض      | ض       | ض        | ض         | ضَاد Ḍhad      |
| ٧٠               | ع                | ط      | ط       | ط        | ط         | طَاءَ Ṭa       |
| ٨٠               | ف                | ظ      | ظ       | ظ        | ظ         | ظَاءَ Ḍhā      |
| ٩٠               | ص                | ع      | ع       | ع        | ع         | عَيْن ‘Ain     |
| ١٠٠              | ق                | غ      | غ       | غ        | غ         | غَيْن Gh(r)ain |
| ٢٠٠              | هـ               | ف      | ف       | ف        | ف         | فَاءَ Fa       |
| ٣٠٠              | ش                | ق      | ق       | ق        | ق         | قَاَف Ḳāf      |
| ٤٠٠              | ك                | ك      | ك       | ك        | ك         | كَاف Kāf       |
| ٥٠٠              | ث                | ل      | ل       | ل        | ل         | لَام Lām       |
| ٦٠٠              | خ                | م      | م       | م        | م         | مِيم Mīm       |
| ٧٠٠              | ذ                | ن      | ن       | ن        | ن         | نُون Nūn       |
| ٨٠٠              | ض                | هـ     | هـ      | هـ       | هـ        | هَاءَ Hā       |
| ٩٠٠              | ظ                | و      | ..      | و        | و         | وَاو Wāw       |
| ١٠٠٠             | غ                | ي      | ي       | ي        | ي         | يَاءَ Yā       |

ا preceded by ج has the form لا and is reckoned a letter of the alphabet by the native grammarians being called Lām-Aleph. It serves to distinguish the long vowel ا (ā) from اَ ; and follows the letter و.

These letters except Aleph, all end in a bold stroke when detached or terminating a word; when joined to the following letter this stroke is replaced by a small upward curve.

The letters ا د ذ ر ز و are not joined to the left.

The Numerical Order of the letters is represented by the mnemonic words اَبْجَدْ هَوَز حُطَي كَلَمُن سَقْفُز قُرَشَتْ دَخُذ ضَطْع. Their employment as numerals is confined to mathematical works, and the record of historical events.

For ordinary use the decimal system of numeration is employed اَلرَّقْمُ اَلْهِنْدِي in the same way as in all Indo-Aryan languages, viz.

• ١ ٢ ٣ ٤ ٥ ٦ ٧ ٨ ٩ ١٠ ١١ ١٢ ١٩٠٢.

0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 1902.

### اَللَّفْظُ. PRONUNCIATION.

ا is (I) a weak aspirate depending for its sound on the accompanying vowel, as for instance *almanack*, *illusion*, *ulterior*, (II) a sound resembling the glottal catch, (III) a sign lengthening of the vowel.

ب is b.

- ت is a soft dental, softer than our *t*.
- ث as *th* in *theory*, *thin*. (Classical pronunciation).
- ج as *s* in *measure*. (In Egypt *g* in *good*).
- ح is a strong and smooth pectoral sound produced by the forcible expulsion of the breath through an almost closed glottis as in a deep sigh.
- خ is a vibratory guttural sound produced on expiration by the oscillation of the appendages of the throat as in the Scotch word *loch*, and the German *ch* as in *ich*.
- د is a soft dental.
- ذ is like *th* in *that*, *than*, *these*. (Classical pronunciation).
- ر is as *r* (English) distinctly articulated in all positions.
- ز is as *z* distinctly articulated.
- س is as *s* but with more of a hissing sound as in *kiss*.
- ش is as *sh* in *sherbet*.
- ص is a 'lispings' *s* pronounced somewhat as in *sod*.
- ض is extremely difficult to pronounce correctly, the tongue is rolled against the cheek; it is an aspirated د strongly pronounced.
- ط has a broader and more open sound than *t*.
- ظ has the same affinity to ط as ث has to ذ having a broad and open sound something like *th* in *this*.
- ع is a strong guttural produced by quick and forcible closure of the wind-pipe with the emission of the breath.



غ is a strong guttural produced as in the effort of gargling and sounds similar to "ghr" in English.

ف as *f*.

ق is a strong guttural *k* produced as in the cawing of a crow.

ك ه ن م ل as our *k. l. m. n. h. w.*

ي as *y*.

The pronunciation of these letters as a whole, can only be adequately acquired from the lips of Arabic speaking people.

Special attention however should be given to the letters **الْأَحْرُفُ الْمَفْعَمَةُ** خ ر ص ط ظ غ ق which have a broad sound when vowelled by *ـَـ*, also the name of God **اللَّهِ** when preceded by *ـَـ* or *ـِـ*.

The other letters are called **الْكَرُوفُ الْمُرْقَفَةُ**.

It may be observed that the only letter having a nasal sound is the ن when preceding ي **مَنْ أَحَبَّ أَنْ ي** **يَأْخُذَ فَلْيَأْخُذْ**.

This sound is called **غُنَّة** (having the nasal sound).

*The letters are further regarded as:*

I. Strong **صَحِيحَةً** (Sound).

II. Weak **(مُعْتَلَّةٌ)**.

The latter are ا و ي and resemble vowels in pronunciation and use, the rest are all strong.

The Aleph (Hemzeh) resembles the weak letters in admitting of change, **الْإِعْلَالُ**.

The Weak Letters when unvowelled are called **أَحْرُفٌ** (soft) but should they be preceded in this state by a homogeneous vowel they are called **أَحْرُفٌ مَدَّةٌ** *letters of prolongation*.

The letters are sub-divided according to their place of utterance (**مَخْرَجٌ**) into:

- I. Gutturals **ا ح خ ع غ ه ق ك ي**.
- II. Linguals **ر ز س ش ص ض**.
- III. Dentals **ت ث ج د ذ ط ظ ل ن**.
- IV. Labials **ب ف م و**.

The Linguals and Dentals except **ج** are also called Solar letters (**الْأَحْرُفُ الشَّمْسِيَّةُ**) because one of their number begins the word **الشَّمْسُ** The Sun.

When the article (**الْ**) precedes any of the Solar letters its **ل** is elided in pronunciation, and the symbol **ـَـ** is placed over the initial letter of the word to indicate that it is doubled.

The remaining letters are called Lunar letters for a similar reason (**الْأَحْرُفُ الْقَمَرِيَّةُ**). **الْقَمَرُ** The Moon.

## THE VOWELS. **الْأَحْرَافُ**

The vowels are three in number and are only diacritical signs and written above or below the consonants to which they belong, **الْفَتْحَةُ** = **الضَّمَّةُ** = **الكَسْرَةُ**.

They are also used as terminations of inflection **الْإِعْرَابُ** in nouns and the moods of verbs.

With an Indefinite Noun the case endings are doubled  
 ة ِ َ and form the Nunation النَّوْنُ which has  
 the force of the Indefinite Article.

َ ة represents the Nominative Case الرَّفْعُ.

ِ ة ,, ,, Accusative Case النَّصْبُ.

ِ ة ,, ,, Genitive Case الْكَفْضُ.

The Nunation in the Accusative Case requires an Aleph  
 except when the noun ends in ة or ا حَيَاةً . سَمَاءً .

### OTHER ORTHOGRAPHICAL SIGNS. الضَّوَابِطُ

(1) ْ سُكُونٌ .

(2) ِ مَدَّةٌ .

(3) ِ شَدَّةٌ .

(4) ِ هَمْزَةُ الْقَطْعِ .

(5) ِ هَمْزَةُ الرَّصْلِ .

(1) ْ السُّكُونُ .

The symbol ْ السُّكُونُ is placed over an unvowelled  
 letter as مِنْ or قَدْ, the ن or د is called silent سَاكِتَةٌ .

The م or ق is vowelled مُتَحَرِّكَةٌ . It is not usual to  
 place ْ over a letter of prolongation.

(2) ِ الْمَدَّةُ .

Hemzeh ِ followed by Aleph ْ is written ْ as آمَنَ = آمِنَ .  
 The sign is called الْمَدَّةُ .

It is also used in ْ الْأَسْمَاءُ الْمَمْدُودَةُ to indicate that an  
 Aleph of prolongation is followed by a Hemzeh as صَحْرَاءَ .

## (3) الشَّذَّةُ =

The symbol = signifies that the letter over which it is placed is doubled in pronunciation.

The first letter is silent, and the second has the vowel upon the =.

## (4) الَّهْمَزَةُ (Compression).

It is of two kinds هَمْزَةُ الْقَطْعِ and هَمْزَةُ الْوَصْلِ

## (5) هَمْزَةُ الْوَصْلِ (Conjunction).

The sign = is placed over the initial *ā* when not directly beginning a sentence, to indicate that the Aleph is elided, and the preceding vowel joined to the following consonant.

*This Elision occurs in:*

- I. The Article, as أَخُو الْمَلِكِ "The brother of the king".
- II. In the Imperative of the Triliteral Verb أَسْرِعْ وَأَنْزِلْ.
- III. The Preterite (both voices), Imperative, and the Nouns of Action of the Derived Forms, from the sixth onwards.
- IV. In the Nouns:

|       |            |          |           |
|-------|------------|----------|-----------|
| Two   | اِثْنَانِ  | Son      | ابْنِ     |
| Man   | إِمْرَأَ   | Name     | إِسْمِ    |
| Woman | إِمْرَأَةً | Son      | ابْنِ     |
| Oath  | أَيْمُنِ   | Daughter | ابْنَةِ   |
| Anus  | إِسْتِ     | Two      | اِثْنَانِ |



Its vowel at the beginning of a sentence is َ except in 1 the Article **أَلْ**;

11 the Imperative of the Triliteral, the middle letter of which in the Imperfect tense has ِ **أَنْصُرْ**.

To help **نَصَرَ يَنْصُرُ**

When the letter which precedes the **آ** is silent it takes َ.

Exceptions are **يَ، نِي، مِنِ**, and the Imperative of Doubled verbs which take ِ when preceding **أَلْ**.

**أَنْتُمْ، هُمْ، كُمْ، مُمْ** take ِ.

The **آ** is omitted in the following instances:

I. The introductory formula **بِسْمِ اللَّهِ** (**بِاسْمِ**). (In the name of God).

II. In the word **إِبْنِ** when used in a genealogical series between two proper nouns, the first of which is the name of the son, and the second the name of the father.

III. In the **أَلْ** when preceded by **لِ** and after **أَ** the Particle of Interrogation **لِلرَّجُلِ** (**لِلرَّجُلِ**). To the man.

Is thy son.....? **أَبْنُكَ أَبْنُكَ**.

Is the water.....? **أَلْمَاءُ أَلْمَاءُ**.

THE POINT OF DISJUNCTION. ٦) **هَمْزَةُ الْقَطْعِ**

**هَمْزَةُ الْقَطْعِ** is the hiatus which is felt before the vowel which it introduces is uttered, and unlike **هَمْزَةُ الْوَصْلِ** it occurs as a root letter not only in the beginning but in the middle and end of a word.

*It takes any vowel and is always pronounced, as*  
 أَكْرَمَ أَبَاكَ وَاللَّهُ إِبْرَاهِيمَ وَإِسْحَاقَ.

*In the beginning of a word it is written with the chair*  
 (Aleph). ا (كُرْسِي) أَصْبَعَ. أَكْبَل. أَكَد.

*In the middle of a word when followed by an ا or when silent it takes the chair homogeneous to the vowel of the preceding letter, as* رَأْسٌ. يَشْرُ. سُؤَالٌ.

*If vowelled and not followed by ا the hemzeh takes the chair homogeneous to its own vowel, as* لَوْمٌ. سُئِلَ. سَأَلَ.

*In the end of a word if preceded by a vowel, it takes the chair homogeneous to the preceding vowel as* قَرَأَ. ظَمِيَ. مَرَوْ. but when not preceded by a vowel it is written without a chair, شَيْءٌ. جُزْءٌ. ضَرْءٌ.

Many words are not written according to these rules, as مَسْئَلَةٌ.

The expression أَخْطُ أَلْهَجَاءَ "I write out the alphabet" contains all the vowels and orthographical signs.

## THE PAUSE. الْوَقْفُ

In reading, the following changes are to be observed when a pause occurs.

I. The final short vowels and the Nunation are dropped except in the case of ة the final نُونٌ only is dropped and is replaced in pronunciation by the Aleph.

II. ة with or without the Nunation is pronounced ه.

## THE ACCENT. النَّبَرَةُ

In all other respects Arabic is pronounced as it is written; long vowels as such, and short vowels as such.

The first syllable is accentuated in words whose vowel sounds are all long or all short; where a long vowel succeeds a short one, it receives the accent.

When a letter is doubled by ـ both letters must be distinctly pronounced.

## ANOMALIES IN WRITING. اِقَامَةُ اَلْهَجَاءِ

ما “What” when used interrogatively and preceded by certain prepositions drops its **ا** as:

With what shall I come before the Lord? يَمِ اَتَقَدَّمُ  
إِلَى الرَّبِّ.

What do you desire? فِيمَ تَرْغَبُ.

How long will you pursue your evil course? حَتَّامَ  
تَتَمَادَى فِي شَرِّكَ.

For what do you weep? عَلَامَ تَبْكِي.

The **ا** is represented by ـ in the following instances and pronounced.

|           |         |         |              |
|-----------|---------|---------|--------------|
| But       | لِکِنْ  | Ishmael | إِسْمَاعِيلَ |
| But       | لِکِنَّ | Aaron   | هَارُونَ     |
| This      | هَذَا   | Isaac   | إِسْحَاقَ    |
| These two | هَذَانِ | Abraham | إِبْرَاهِيمَ |

|             |            |               |             |
|-------------|------------|---------------|-------------|
| These       | هَؤُلَاءِ  | God           | ٱللَّهُ     |
| This (fem.) | هَذِهِ     | The God       | ٱللَّهِ     |
| That        | ذَٰلِكَ    | Here          | هَهُنَا     |
| Those       | أُولَٰئِكَ | Most merciful | ٱلرَّحْمَنُ |
| Three       | ثَلَاثَةٌ  | Angel         | مَلَكٌ      |
| Thirty      | ثَلَاثُونَ |               |             |

In the masc. plural of the Preterite and Imperative and the apocopated form of the Aorist ٱ is written but not pronounced; as, لَمْ يَأْتُوا . اَعْلَمُوا . جَلَسُوا .

All nouns having و side by side may drop one in writing but not in pronunciation دُودٌ . كُؤُوسٌ . كُؤُوسٌ . دُؤُودٌ .

|        |                                         |      |
|--------|-----------------------------------------|------|
| مِمَّا | when followed by مَا (relative) becomes | مِنْ |
| عَمَّا | ”                                       | مَّا |
| أَلَّا | ”                                       | لَّا |
| إِلَّا | ”                                       | لَا  |
| إِمَّا | ”                                       | مَا  |

Note. The ت as a rule does not occur as the final letter of a noun except it is a root letter as بَيْتٌ house, حُوتٌ whale, تَوْتٌ mulberry, سَكُونٌ quietness. Exceptions بِنْتُ daughter, أُخْتُ sister. The ت is called اَلتَّاءُ الْمَبْسُوطَةُ . اَلتَّاءُ الْمَرْبُوطَةُ never occurs as the final letter of a verb.



## PARTS OF SPEECH. أَقْسَامُ الْكَلَامِ

*There are three parts of Speech in Arabic:*

- I. The Verb **الْفِعْلُ**.
- II. The Noun **الْإِسْمُ**.
- III. The Particle **الْحَرْفُ**.

*The إِسْمُ includes:*

- (a). The Noun.
- (b). The Pronoun.
- (c). The Adjective.
- (d). The Adverb.
- (e). The Participles.
- (f). Some Interjections.

*The حَرْفُ includes:*

- (a). The Preposition **حَرْفُ جَرٍّ**.
- (b). The Conjunction **حَرْفُ عَطْفٍ**.
- (c). Some Interjections **حُرُوفُ آلِنِدَاءِ**.
- (d). Some Interrogatives **حُرُوفُ آلِاسْتِفْهَامِ**.
- (e). Other Particles **حُرُوفُ التَّوَكِيدِ وَالنَّدْبَةِ**.

## SERVILE LETTERS. حُرُوفُ الزِّيَادَةِ

These letters are used to inflect the noun and conjugate the verb.

They are ten in number and together form the word **سَأَلْتُمُونِيهَا**. "You have asked me about them", i. e. the

Servile letters. All increase in verbs or nouns is effected by these letters, the only exception being the doubling of the middle or last radical of the root as **تَقَدَّمَ**. **إِحْمَرَّ**. **جَوَّال**. **صَيَّاح**.

Words are modified in meaning by prefixes, suffixes and by the insertion of letters; most words in the language may thus be referred to significant roots, consisting of three or four letters. The various modifications in form are spoken of as the “measures of words”. The typical root employed to represent such changes is **فَعَلَ**.

These measures, which are peculiar to verbs and nouns, are the following:

*Verbs.*

(I). Triliteral verbs have six measures:

(1) **فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ** (2) **فَعَلَّ يَفْعُلُ** (3) **فَعِلَ يَفْعَلُ**  
 (4) **فَعَلَّ يَفْعَلُ** (5) **فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ** (6) **فَعِلَ يَفْعِلُ**

(II). Derived verbs from the triliteral have ten measures:

(1) **فَعَّلَ** (2) **فَاعَلَ** (3) **أَفْعَلَ** (4) **تَفَعَّلَ** (5) **تَفَاعَلَ**  
 (6) **إِنْفَعَلَ** (7) **إِفْتَعَلَ** (8) **إِفْعَلَّ** (9) **إِسْتَفْعَلَ** (10) **إِفْعَوْعَلَ**

(III). The quadriliteral verb has the measure:

**فَعَّلَلَ يَفْعَعِلُ**

(IV). Derived verbs from the quadriliteral have three measures:

(1) **تَفَعَّلَلَ يَتَفَعَعِلُ** (2) **إِفْعَلَّلَ يَفْعَعِلُ** (3) **إِفْعَلَّلَ يَفْعَعِلُ**

*Nouns.*

(V). The measures of the derived nouns.

(VI). The trilateral primitive nouns have ten measures:

فَعْل (1)    فُعْل (2)    فِعْل (3)    فَعْل (4)    فَعْل (5)  
فَعْل (6)    فُعْل (7)    فُعْل (8)    فَعْل (9)    فَعْل (10)

(VII). The quadrilateral primitive nouns have five measures:

فَعْل (1)    فُعْل (2)    فِعْل (3)    فَعْل (4)    فَعْل (5)

(VIII). The quinqueliteral nouns have four measures:

فَعْل (1)    فُعْل (2)    فِعْل (3)    فَعْل (4)

(IX). The measures of the plurals.

## THE VERB. الفعل

*The verb in its simplest form is of two kinds.*

- I. Trilateral مَجْرَدٌ ثَلَاثِيٌّ as فَعَلَ To do.
  - II. Quadrilateral مَجْرَدٌ رُبَاعِيٌّ as دَحَرَجَ To roll.
- (The latter are comparatively few in number).

*Both these root forms may be increased by one, two, or three letters and thus produce Derived Forms.*

The root letters are called حُرُوفٌ أَصْلِيَّةٌ and may be either Strong or Weak (the verb being named Strong or Weak according to the absence or presence of these letters).

The letters of increase are called حُرُوفٌ رَائِدَةٌ.

Verbs may be either Transitive مُتَعَدٍّ or Intransitive لَازِمٌ.

Intransitive Verbs may be made Transitive by:

- (a) the use of a preposition;
- (b) the prefixing of Hemzeh;
- (c) doubling the medial radical; as,

|                   |          |          |       |
|-------------------|----------|----------|-------|
| To bring          | جَاءَ بِ | To come  | جَاءَ |
| To cause to sleep | نَوَّمَ  | To sleep | نَامَ |
| To raise          | أَقَامَ  | To rise  | قَامَ |



Some verbs are both Transitive and Intransitive as:

|                        |           |                      |        |
|------------------------|-----------|----------------------|--------|
| To build, to live long | عَمَّرَ   | To come              | جَاءَ  |
| To do good             | أَحْسَنَ  | To fear              | خَافَ  |
| To make or be distant  | أَبْعَدَ  | To snatch            | حَطَفَ |
| To raise, to stay      | أَقَامَ   | To separate          | فَصَلَ |
| To learn               | تَعَلَّمَ | To be poor           | عَالَ  |
|                        |           | To possess, to reign | مَلَكَ |

The ordinary paradigm verb is **فَعَلَ** for the Triliteral and **فَعْلَلَ** for the Quadriliteral.

**فَعَلَ** is the third person sing. masc. of the Preterite. As the root form of the verb, it is the simplest and is consequently used as the standard of comparison or "measure" (**وَزْنٌ**) for all verbs and Derivative Nouns.

It is usually rendered into English by the Infinitive. The first letter of any Triliteral verb is called its **فَاء**, the second its **عَيْن**, and the third its **لَام**; and in the Quadriliteral the second **لَام** is called **الْثَانِيَّةُ**.

*Inflection.* The verb is inflected to express Voice, Mood, Tense, Number, Person and Gender.

*Voice.* There are two Voices, the Active and the Passive. The Active is called **صِيغَةُ الْمَعْلُومِ** "the known" because the agent of the verb is known as,

Zaid beat the man **ضَرَبَ زَيْدٌ الرَّحْلَ**.

The Passive Voice is called **صِيغَةُ الْمَجْهُولِ** "The unknown" because the agent is unknown; as,

The man was beaten ضَرَبَ الرَّجُلُ.

The Active Verb is called اَلْفِعْلُ اَلْمَعْلُومُ.

The Passive اَلْفِعْلُ اَلْمَجْهُولُ.

[ *Moods.* The moods of the verb are three viz: — the Indicative, the Imperative and the Subjunctive. The Imperative is derived from the Imperfect Tense of the Indicative. The Subjunctive may be used in various senses i.e. Jussive, Hortative, Conditional etc.

*Tenses.* The Indicative Mood has both Perfect and Imperfect Tenses. The Subjunctive has only the Imperfect Tense. The verb strictly speaking has not Tenses but forms which express states. }

Action not time is indicated; one a finished act, the Perfect; and the other an unfinished act, the Imperfect whose completion may be in the immediate present or in the near or far distant future. The Perfect Action includes all past tenses of other languages, the Imperfect includes all imperfect tenses.

By prefixing ل to the Imperfect a present signification is imparted to the action of the verb, and by prefixing س or سَوْفَ a near or far distant future is respectively indicated.

Note. It is more accurate to speak of the Preterite and Aorist Tenses. The former to express a known finished act; the latter to express an indefinite and unfinished one.

*Numbers.* There are three numbers: the singular **الْمَفْرَدُ**, the dual **الْمُتَنَّى**, and the plural **الْجَمْعُ**.

*Persons.* There are three persons: the first **الْمُتَكَلِّمُ** "the speaker", the second **الْمُخَاطَبُ** "the person addressed", and the third **الْغَائِبُ** "the absent."

*Genders.* There are two genders: the masc. **الْمَذَكَّرُ** and the fem. **الْمَوْثَّةُ**.

The numbers, persons, and genders are expressed by means of Personal Pronouns joined to the different forms of the verb.

### THE ANNEXED PRONOUNS. **الضَّمَائِرُ الْمُتَّصِلَةُ**

The Pronouns which are united to the verb in the Nom. Case in the process of its inflexion are six, **نَا، نَ، ا، و، ي، ت**.

|                                             |            |
|---------------------------------------------|------------|
| 1st person sing. masc. or fem. Preterite    | <b>تُ</b>  |
| 2nd       ,,       ,,       masc.           | <b>تَ</b>  |
| ,,       ,,       ,,       fem.             | <b>تِ</b>  |
| Fem. plural for all Persons and Tenses      | <b>نَ</b>  |
| Masc. plural all forms                      | <b>و</b>   |
| 1st person plural Preterite                 | <b>نَا</b> |
| 2nd person fem. sing. Aorist and Imperative | <b>يَ</b>  |
| For the dual                                | <b>ا</b>   |

Of these **نَا، نَ، ت** are strong pronouns and the rest (**ا، و، ي**) weak.

When the strong pronouns are joined to a verb its

لام is made silent ضَرَبْتُ, and when the weak pronouns are joined to a verb the final letter of the verb takes a vowel homogeneous to the annexed weak pronoun ضَرَبُوا; but in the verbs ending in a weak letter the homogeneous vowel is implied on the dropped final letter as غَرَّوْا for غَرَّوَا.

Note. The First Personal Pronoun in the Aorist Sing. and Plural, the second person sing. of the Aorist, and Imperative, and the third person sing. masc. and fem. of the Aorist and Preterite are regarded as “hidden” مُسْتَتِرَةٌ in the verb, but when the noun follows the verb of the third person the latter is regarded as not containing a pronoun as ضَرَبَ زَيْدٌ الرَّجُلَ.

### Simple Form of the Triliteral Verb Sound. Active Voice.

#### THE PRETERITE. الْمَاضِي

| Plural.                |       | Dual.             |       | Singular.                |       |
|------------------------|-------|-------------------|-------|--------------------------|-------|
| Fem.                   | Masc. | Fem.              | Masc. | Fem.                     | Masc. |
| فَعَلُوا فَعَلْنَ      |       | فَعَلَا فَعَلَتَا |       | فَعَلَ فَعَلَتْ 3rd Per. |       |
| فَعَلْتُمْ فَعَلْتُنَّ |       | فَعَلْتُمَا       |       | فَعَلْتَ فَعَلْتِ 2nd „  |       |
| فَعَلْنَا              |       |                   |       | فَعَلْتُ 1st „           |       |

#### THE AORIST. الْمُضَارِعُ

|                        |  |                         |  |                            |  |
|------------------------|--|-------------------------|--|----------------------------|--|
| يَفْعَلُونَ يَفْعَلْنَ |  | يَفْعَلَانِ يَفْعَلَانِ |  | يَفْعَلُ يَفْعَلُ 3rd Per. |  |
| تَفْعَلُونَ تَفْعَلْنَ |  | تَفْعَلَانِ             |  | تَفْعَلُ تَفْعَلِينَ 2nd „ |  |
| نَفْعَلُ               |  |                         |  | أَفْعَلُ 1st „             |  |



## THE IMPERATIVE. الْأَمْرُ

| Plural.             |              | Dual.       |              | Singular.                             |              |
|---------------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|---------------------------------------|--------------|
| <i>Fem.</i>         | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i>                           | <i>Masc.</i> |
| افْعَلُوا افْعَلْنَ |              | افْعَلَا    |              | افْعَلْ افْعَلِي 2 <sup>nd</sup> Per. |              |

### Passive Voice.

## THE PRETERITE.

| Plural.                |              | Dual.             |              | Singular.                            |              |
|------------------------|--------------|-------------------|--------------|--------------------------------------|--------------|
| <i>Fem.</i>            | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i>       | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i>                          | <i>Masc.</i> |
| فَعِلُوا فَعِلْنَ      |              | فَعِلَا فَعِلْتَا |              | فَعِلْ فَعِلْتَ 3 <sup>rd</sup> Per. |              |
| فَعِلْتُمْ فَعِلْتُنَّ |              | فَعِلْتُمَا       |              | فَعِلْتَ فَعِلْتِ 2 <sup>nd</sup> „  |              |
| فَعِلْنَا              |              |                   |              | فَعِلْتُ 1 <sup>st</sup> „           |              |

## THE AORIST.

|                          |                           |                                          |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| يُفَعِّلُونَ يُفَعِّلْنَ | يُفَعِّلَانِ تُفَعِّلَانِ | يُفَعِّلُ تُفَعِّلُ 3 <sup>rd</sup> Per. |
| تُفَعِّلُونَ تُفَعِّلْنَ | تُفَعِّلَانِ              | تُفَعِّلُ تُفَعِّلِينَ 2 <sup>nd</sup> „ |
| نُفَعِّلُ                |                           | أُفَعِّلُ 1 <sup>st</sup> „              |

There are six measures of the Triliteral Verb depending for their arrangement upon the vowels with which the Medial Radical is pointed in the Preterite and Aorist.

صَرَبَ يَصْرِبُ

نَصَرَ يَنْصُرُ

عَلِمَ يَعْلَمُ

مَنَعَ يَمْنَعُ

فَضَلَ يَفْضُلُ

حَسِبَ يَحْسِبُ

I. فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ

II. فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ

III. فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ

IV. فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ

V. فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ

VI. فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ

The first and second measures are generally transitive and of most frequent occurrence therefore are called دَعَائِمُ الْأَبْوَابِ "principal forms".

In the first three measures the vowel of the ع of the Preterite differs from that of the Aorist, in the last three the vowel is the same.

In the fourth measure the ع or ج must be of the حُرُوفُ الْخَلْقِ but not every verb possessing these guttural letters is found in the measure.

The fourth measure is generally transitive.

The fifth measure is always intransitive and implies inherent qualities.

The sixth measure is rarely found, there being only about ten verbs and most of them begin with مِثَالُ وَادِي وَ.

## DERIVED FORMATIONS OF THE VERB.

The increase of letters is invariably accompanied by an increase or modification of the meaning of the root form. There are twelve Derived Forms but eight only are of frequent occurrence. They are inflected precisely as the root form. It is of the utmost importance that the student should acquire a perfect familiarity with the Derived Forms.

There is no branch of Arabic study which is of such extreme importance, as the verb in Arabic is not

simply the "Key-stone" of the "Arch of Speech" but the Arch itself.

The student should be able to recognize at a glance any verb of any formation and in whatever Tense and Mood it may be, together with its Derived Nouns.

In order to accomplish this, it is necessary to have a thorough knowledge of (a) the Rules for the formation of the verb **بِنَاءُ الْفِعْلِ**, (b) the changes which the weak letters undergo **الْإِعْلَالُ**, and (c) the subject of Insertion or Assimilation **الْأَدْغَامُ** which are accordingly treated of before the Weak Verbs.

## RULES FOR THE FORMATION OF THE VERB.

بِنَاءُ الْفَعْلِ

*The Preterite Active.* The vowels of the Preterite in the Active Voice (الْمَاضِيّ الْمَعْلُومُ) are fethahs فَعَلَ except in the medial radical of the trilateral, which may take any vowel فَعِلَ and the Servile Hemzeh ۱ in the five and six lettered verbs which is ۱. اِنْفَعَلَ اِنْتَعَلَ اِنْعَلَ اِسْتَفْعَلَ اِفْعَالَ اِفْعَوْعَلَ. (In certain verbs the vowels are implied رَمَى مَدَدَ قَوْمَ for رَمَى مَدَدَ قَوْمَ)

The *Preterite Passive* الْمَاضِي الْمَجْهُولُ is formed from the *Preterite Active* by giving 2 to the penultimate consonant and 1 to every vowelled letter preceding it.

|                  |               |
|------------------|---------------|
| تُفْعِلَ V.      | فُعِلَ I.     |
| أُفْعِلَ VI.     | فُوِعِلَ II.  |
| أُفْتُعِلَ VII.  | أُفْعِلَ III. |
| أُسْتَفْعِلَ IX. | تُفْعَلُ IV.  |

The *Aorist Active* **الْمُضَارِعُ الْمَعْلُومُ** is formed from the Preterite Active by prefixing one of the four letters ن ي ت ا. Servile Hemzeh is suppressed wherever it occurs.

The vowel of the prefix is َ except in the four lettered verbs فَعَّلَ, فَاعَلَ, أَفْعَلَ, فَعْلَلَ where it is ُ.

The penultimate consonant has َ except in the trilateral where it may be any of the three vowels, and in the fourth and fifth Derived Forms where it takes َ.

|                  |                 |               |
|------------------|-----------------|---------------|
| يَنْفَعِلُ VI.   | يَتَفَعَّلُ IV. | يَفْعَلُ      |
| يَفْتَعِلُ VII.  | يَتَفَاعَلُ V.  | يُفْعِلُ I.   |
| يَفْعَلُ VIII.   |                 | يُفَاعِلُ II. |
| يَسْتَفْعِلُ IX. |                 | يُفْعَلُ III. |
| يَفْعُوِعِلُ X.  |                 |               |

The *Aorist Passive* **الْمُضَارِعُ الْمَجْهُولُ** has the same form as the Aorist Active. Its vowels are ُ for the prefix and َ for the penultimate consonant.

|                 |               |
|-----------------|---------------|
| يُفْعَلُ III.   | يُفْعَلُ      |
| يُتَفَعَّلُ IV. | يُفْعَلُ I.   |
| يُتَفَاعَلُ V.  | يُفَاعَلُ II. |



يُفْعَلُ VIII.  
يُسْتَفْعَلُ IX.

يُنْفَعَلُ VI.  
يُفْتَعَلُ VII.

The Imperative Active (الْأَمْرُ) is formed from the 2<sup>nd</sup> per. Aorist Active by suppressing the characteristic letter of the Aorist  $\text{ز}$ , and if the following radical be silent Hemzeh is prefixed. The vowel of the Hemzeh is  $\text{ـَ}$  except in the trilateral which has  $\text{ـُ}$  on the  $\text{ع}$  (of the Aorist) where it takes  $\text{ـُ}$  and in the measure أَفْعَل where it retains  $\text{ـَ}$ .

|                  |               |               |             |
|------------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|
| انْفَعِلُ VI.    | أَفْعِلْ III. | تَفْعِلْ from | إَفْعَلْ    |
| اِنْتَعِلْ VII.  | تَفْعَلْ IV.  | تَفْعَلْ from | أُفْعَلْ    |
| اِنْفَعِلْ VIII. | تَفَاعِلْ V.  |               | فَعِلْ I.   |
| اِسْتَفْعِلْ IX. |               |               | فَاعِلْ II. |

The final vowel is apocopated.

This form of Imperative commands the 2<sup>nd</sup> person only of the Active Voice. To command the 1<sup>st</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> persons in the Active or Passive Voices  $\text{لِ}$  is prefixed to the Aorist and the final vowel is apocopated.

|              |              |
|--------------|--------------|
| لِيَفْعَلْ   | لِيَفْعَلْ   |
| لِيُنْفَعَلْ | لِيُنْفَعَلْ |

In verbs whose final radical is weak (نَاقِص), the weak letter is dropped in place of the vowel  $\text{أَعْطِ}$ ,  $\text{أَرْمِ}$ , and in the following five measures the  $\text{نِ}$  is dropped.

يَفْعَلَانِ تَفْعَلَانِ يَفْعَلُونَ تَفْعَلُونَ تَفْعَلِينَ

To express command in the Negative لَا with the Apocopated form of the Aorist is used.

لَا تَفْعَلْ.

## THE QUADRILITERAL VERB. الْفِعْلُ الرَّبَاعِيُّ

The Quadriliteral Verb has three derived formations.

The first derived form expresses the consequence of the quadriliteral and corresponds with the fourth derived form of the triliteral.

The second derived form implies great intensity and corresponds with the eighth of the triliteral, and the third derived form corresponds with the sixth of the triliteral.

| Passive.    |             |                 | Active.     |             |                  |
|-------------|-------------|-----------------|-------------|-------------|------------------|
| Aorist.     | Preterite.  | Noun of Action. | Imperative. | Aorist.     | Preterite.       |
| يُفَعَّلُ   | فُعِّلَ     | فَعْلَلَةٌ      | فَعِّلْ     | يُفَعِّلُ   | فَعَّلَ          |
| يُتَفَعَّلُ | تُفَعِّلُ   | تَفَعَّلُ       | تَفَعِّلْ   | يَتَفَعَّلُ | تَفَعَّلَ I.     |
| يُفَعَّلُ   | أُفَعِّلُ   | إِفْعِلَالٌ     | إِفْعِلِلْ  | يُفَعِّلُ   | إِفْعَلَّ II.    |
| يُفَعَّنَلُ | أُفَعَّنَلُ | إِفْعِنَالٌ     | إِفْعِنِلْ  | يَفَعَّنِلُ | إِفْعَنَلَّ III. |

There are some other quadriliterals which were originally triliterals, but a letter has been added to them in an irregular way (i. e. not in accordance with the recognized Derived Forms), and therefore they cannot be called مَزِيدَاتٌ ثَلَاثِيَّةٌ, nor are they pure quadriliterals because the letters are not all radicals. They are called مُلْحَقَاتٌ بِالرَّبَاعِيِّ Supplements of the Quadriliteral.

## Examples:

|                                |                     |
|--------------------------------|---------------------|
| To give to wear                | جَلَبَبَ (جَلْبَاب) |
| To stuff the crop              | حَوَّصَلَ           |
| To practise veterinary surgery | بَيَّطَرَ           |
| To overthrow                   | دَهَوَّرَ           |
| To wear a cap                  | قَلَنَسَ            |
| To make one cleave to dust     | جَنَدَلَ            |

## TABLE OF DERIVED FORMS.

| Noun of Object. | Noun of Agent. | Noun of Action.         | Imperative.  | Aorist Passive. | Aorist Active. | Preterite Passive. | Preterite Active. |                |
|-----------------|----------------|-------------------------|--------------|-----------------|----------------|--------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| مَفْعَلٌ        | مَفْعِلٌ       | تَفْعِيلًا وَتَفْعِلَةً | فَعِّلْ      | يُفَعَّلُ       | يُفَعِّلُ      | فَعِّلَ            | أَفَعَّلَ         | Trilateral.    |
| مُفَاعَلٌ       | مُفَاعِلٌ      | مُفَاعَلَةٌ وَفُعَالًا  | فَاعِلْ      | يُفَاعَلُ       | يُفَاعِلُ      | فُوعِلَ            | أَفْعَلَّ         |                |
| مَفْعَلٌ        | مَفْعِلٌ       | أَفْعَالًا              | أَفْعِلْ     | يَفْعَلُ        | يَفْعِلُ       | أَفْعَلَ           | أَفْعَلَّ         |                |
| مُتَفَعِّلٌ     | مُتَفَعِّلٌ    | تَفْعِلًا               | تَفْعَلْ     | يَتَفَعَّلُ     | يَتَفَعِّلُ    | تَفَعَّلَ          | أَتَفَعَّلَ       |                |
| مُتَفَاعِلٌ     | مُتَفَاعِلٌ    | تَفَاعَلًا              | تَفَاعَلْ    | يَتَفَاعَلُ     | يَتَفَاعِلُ    | تُفَوِّعِلَ        | أَتَفَعَّلَ       |                |
| مُتَفَعِّلٌ     | مُتَفَعِّلٌ    | أَنْفَعَالًا            | أَنْفَعِلْ   | يَنْفَعَلُ      | يَنْفَعِلُ     | أَنْفَعَلَ         | أَنْفَعَلَّ       |                |
| مُتَفَعِّلٌ     | مُتَفَعِّلٌ    | أَفْتَعَالًا            | أَفْتَعِلْ   | يَفْتَعَلُ      | يَفْتَعِلُ     | أَفْتَعَلَ         | أَفْتَعَلَّ       |                |
| مُتَفَعِّلٌ     | مُتَفَعِّلٌ    | أَفْعِلَالًا            | أَفْعِلْ     | يَفْعَلُ        | يَفْعِلُ       | أَفْعَلَ           | أَفْعَلَّ         |                |
| مُسْتَفَعِّلٌ   | مُسْتَفَعِّلٌ  | أَسْتَفْعِلَالًا        | أَسْتَفْعِلْ | يُسْتَفَعَّلُ   | يُسْتَفَعِّلُ  | أَسْتَفَعَّلَ      | أَسْتَفَعَّلَ     |                |
| مُتَفَعِّلٌ     | مُتَفَعِّلٌ    | تَفْعِلًا               | تَفْعَلْ     | يَتَفَعَّلُ     | يَتَفَعِّلُ    | تَفَعَّلَ          | أَتَفَعَّلَ       | Quadriliteral. |
| مُفَعِّنٌ       | مُفَعِّنٌ      | أَفْعِنَالًا            | أَفْعِنِ     | يَفْعِنُ        | يَفْعِنُ       | أَفْعِنَ           | أَفْعِنَ          |                |
| مُفَعِّلٌ       | مُفَعِّلٌ      | أَفْعِلَالًا            | أَفْعِلْ     | يَفْعَلُ        | يَفْعِلُ       | أَفْعَلَ           | أَفْعَلَّ         |                |

## PERMUTATION OR CHANGES OF THE WEAK LETTERS. اَلْعِلَّةُ

*The Weak Letters* are ا, و, ي. اَحْرَفُ الْعِلَّةِ.

*They may be:*

- (1) Changed for one Another.
- (2) Made Silent.
- (3) Dropped.

*The Hemzeh* اَلْهَمْزَةُ may be represented by any of the Weak Letters.

## CHANGES OF THE HEMZEH. اَعْلَالُ اَلْهَمْزَةِ

I. Hemzeh silent, preceded by Hemzeh vowelled is changed into the letter homogeneous to the vowel,  
اَئْمَنَ اَمِّنَ, اَوْمِنُ اُؤْمِنُ, اِئْمَانُ اِئْمَانُ.

II. Hemzeh silent, preceded by any other letter may be changed into the letter homogeneous to the vowel which precedes the Hemzeh, بِئْسَ بِيئِرَ, بُؤْسَ بُؤْسَ, رَأْسَ رَأْسَ.

III. Hemzeh final, preceded by either و or ي silent is sometimes changed into the preceding letter and incorporated with it, وَضُوْءٌ مَكْبِيٌّ, وَضُوْءٌ مَكْبِيٌّ.

*Other common and recognized changes in the Hemzeh are:*

The Aorist of يَرَى is يَرَى instead of يَرَى.

The Third Derivative of أَرَى is أَرَى instead of أَرَى.

The Imperatives of أَمَرَ, خَذَ, كَسَلَ are أَمَرَ, خَذَ, كَسَلَ.

” ” of أَتَى is أَتَى or أَتَى.

The Imperatives of **الْفَرْقُ** as **وَلِي رَقِي** retain the sound letter only **لِ رَقِي**.

**سَأَلْ** may be treated as the **أَجَوْفَ**.

**سَأَلْ يَسْأَلْ إِسْأَلْ**  
**سَأَلْ يَسْأَلْ سَلْ**

Page 25 - 30

## CHANGES OF THE WEAK LETTERS.

### إِعْلَالُ أَحْرَفِ الْعِلَّةِ

I. **و**, silent, preceded by **ـَ** is changed into **ي**, **مَوْعَاد مِيعَاد**.

**ي** silent, preceded by **ـُ** is changed into **و**, **مُنِير مَوْسِر**.

**ا** preceded by **ـُ** or **ـَ** is changed into **و** or **ي** respectively,

**شَاهِدَ** becomes in the Passive **شُوِّدَ**.

**مِفْتَاح** „ „ „ Plural **مِفَاتِيح**.

II. A weak letter when silent, preceded by a homogeneous vowel and followed by a silent letter is dropped **قَوْمَ قُمْ**, **بَيْنَ بَعِ**, **خَافَ خَفَ**.

III. **و**, and **ي** vowelled by **ـَ** and preceded by **ـَ** are changed into **ا**, **رَمَى رَمَى**, **قَامَ قَامَ**.

(a) If the **و**, of the **نَاقِص** occur after the third letter in a word it is always changed into **ي**, **أَرْضَوْتُ أَرْضَيْتُ**, **يَرْضَوْنَ يَرْضَيَانِ**.

(b) If the **و**, be preceded by **ـَ** it is always changed into **ي**, **رَضَوْا رَضَى**, **يَرْضَوْنَ يَرْضَى**.

IV. **و**, and **ي** when vowelled and preceded by a silent



letter, transfer their vowel to that letter يَبِيعُ يَبِيعُ letter, transfer their vowel to that letter يَبِيعُ يَبِيعُ; the weak letter is thereupon made homogeneous with the vowel يَخُوفُ يَخُوفُ, يَهَيَّبُ يَهَيَّبُ, يَهَابُ يَهَابُ. But in certain nouns the change is not made أَعْيُنُ, أَدُورُ.

V. When و and ي come together and the first in order is silent the و is changed into ي and incorporated سَيُودُ سَيُودُ, طَوِيُّ طَوِيُّ.

VI. و and ي when vowelled by ُ are dropped after transferring their vowel to the preceding letter رَضُوا رَضُوا.

VII. When the ي is vowelled by َ and preceded by َ it is always dropped, تَغْرِيْنُ تَغْرِيْنُ, تَرْمِيْنُ تَرْمِيْنُ but if the preceding vowel is ُ the ي is changed into و or the َ is transferred to the letter before بُعِ بُعِ, بُوعِ بُوعِ.

الْإِعْلَالُ is not permissable in Verbs of Wonder or in Nouns of Comparison as their measure must be always أَفْعَلُ.

### الْإِدْعَامُ. ASSIMILATION.

*Assimilation is the process by which one letter is attracted to the sound of another. The letter which has been assimilated is in certain cases incorporated into the other which is in consequence doubled.*

*The following conditions must hold.*

The two letters must be either I *Identical or Similar.*

II. *Side by side in the same word but not in the beginning.*

I. *Identical Letters*: Assimilation occurs in

(a) when the first is originally unvowelled as مَدُّ from مَدَدٌ;

(b) or is made silent by omitting the vowel مَدَّ from مَدَد, or by transferring the vowel يَمُدُّ from يَمْدُد.

II. *In Similar Letters*:

This happens most frequently in verbs on the measure اِفْتَعَلَ.

If the first radical is ط or ث or د the characteristic ت of the measure is changed into the letter preceding it, تَارَ إِثَارَ اِثْتَارَ, دَعَا إِدْعَا اِدْتَعَى, طَرَدَ إِطْرَدَ اِطْتَرَدَ.

If the first radical of the verb is ذ or ز the ت of the measure is changed into ذ or د or ز,

ذَكَرَ اِذْكَرَ اِذْتَكَّرَ, رَادَ اِرْدَادَ اِرْتَادَ.

If the first radical of the verb is ص, ض or ظ the ت is changed into ط, it may then be left or changed again into ص, ض or ظ, ظَلَمَ اِظْلَمَ اِضْطَجَعَ, ظ, ضَبَرَ اِضْطَبَرَ, ضَرَبَ اِضْطَرَبَ.

In the مِثَال the و or ی is changed into ت,

وَحَدَّ اِتَّحَدَ (اِوْتَحَدَ) يَسُرَّ اِتَّسَّرَ (اِيتَسَّرَ).

In the measure اِنْفَعَلَ, if the first radical is ن the ن is changed into م, مَكَى اِنْمَكَى اِنْمَكَى, مَكَى اِنْمَكَى اِنْمَكَى.

When the annexed pronoun is ت preceded by د as فَعَدْتُ the د is omitted in pronunciation.

*Assimilation in two words* occurs when the first ends with a silent letter and the second begins with the

same letter as قُلْ لَءَ but if the second letter is dissimilar, assimilation is optional مَلَّيْ or مَلَّيْ.

### FORMS OF THE VERB IN RESPECT TO ITS ROOT LETTERS.

تَقَاسِيْمُ الْفِعْلِ بِاعْتِبَارِ هَيْئَةِ حُرُوفِهِ الْأَصْلِيَّةِ

The verb as we have seen is named in accordance with the nature of its root letters as Strong or Weak:

A: *Strong*.

When it is void of Weak Letters, Hemzeh and Doubling.

(Whole) أَلْسَالِمُ.

B: *Weak*.

I. When it is void of Weak Letters and contains Hemzeh or Doubling.

(Sound) أَلَصَّحِيْحُ.

II. When it contains Weak Letters.

(Weak) أَلْبُعْتُ.

When two weak letters come together in the root the verb is called لَفِيفٌ مَّقْرُونٌ (لَفَّ to fold) (قُرِنَ to be joined) but if a strong letter intervenes, the verb is called لَفِيفٌ مَّفْرُوقٌ (فُرِقَ to be separate).

When the verb begins with و or ي it is called مِثَالٌ as يَسِرَ, وَقَفَ.

When the medial radical is weak it is called أَجَوَفٌ (Hollow) as قَالَ.

When the final radical is weak it is called نَائِص (Defective) as رَمَى.

The verb with َ in its root is called مَهْمُوز (Hemzated).

The verb beginning with Hemzeh is called مَهْمُوزُ الْفَاء.

The verb whose medial radical is Hemzeh is called مَهْمُوزُ الْعَيْنِ.

The verb which ends with Hemzeh is called مَهْمُوزُ اللَّامِ.

|                                              |                |                 |
|----------------------------------------------|----------------|-----------------|
| قَتَلَ                                       | ثَلَاثِي       | } (a) سَالِم    |
| دَخَرَ                                       | رُبَاعِي       |                 |
| مَدَّ                                        | ثَلَاثِي       | } (b) صَحِيح    |
| زَلَزَلَ                                     | رُبَاعِي       |                 |
| أَكَلَ                                       | أَلْفَاء       |                 |
| سَأَلَ                                       | أَلْعَيْنِ     |                 |
| قَرَأَ                                       | أَلَّلَامِ     |                 |
| أَلْفَاء (أَلْمِثَال)                        | وَعَدَ يَسُرَّ | } (c) مُعْتَدِل |
| أَلْعَيْنِ (أَلْأَجْوَف)                     | قَالَ بَاعَ    |                 |
| أَلَّلَامِ (أَلْنَائِص)                      | غَزَا رَمَى    |                 |
| أَلْعَيْنِ وَأَلَّلَامِ (أَلْفَيْف مَقْرُون) | شَوَى طَوَى    |                 |
| أَلْفَاء وَأَلَّلَامِ (أَلْفَيْف مَفْرُوق)   | وَقَى وَفَى    |                 |

### أَلْمِثَالُ

Verbs beginning with , having َ on the ع of the Aorist drop the , in the Aorist, Imperative and Maṣḍar.

وَعَدَ يَعِدُ عِدَّةٌ عِدٌّ  
وَرِثَ يَرِثُ رِثٌ

In the Maṣḍar a ة final is added to compensate for the و, which has been dropped.

Some verbs drop the و, although they have َ on the ع of the Aorist وَصَعَ يَصَعُ, وَدَعَ يَدَعُ, وَسَعَ يَسَعُ, وَقَعَ يَقَعُ, وَدَرَ يَدُرُ, وَطَى يَطُؤُ.

The Maṣḍars of these exceptions also take the final ة.

### THE HOLLOW VERB. الْأَجَوَفُ

When نَا, نَ or تْ (Strong Pronouns in the Nom. Case) are annexed to the أَجَوَفُ verb (i. e. when the ل of the verb has to be silent) the weak letter is dropped. قَامْتُ قُمْتُ, خَافْنَا خِفْنَا, يَبِيعُنَ يَبِيعَنَ.

The same change occurs in the third, sixth, seventh and ninth Derivative Formations.

انْقَادَ انْقَدْنَا, اسْتَقَامَ اسْتَقَمْنَا, أَجَارَ أَجَرْنَا, اجْتَارَ اجْتَرْنَا

The third and ninth Derivative Formations of the أَجَوَفُ add a final ة in the Maṣḍar for the weak letter which is dropped اِقَامَةٌ, اسْتِقَامَةٌ.

If the ع in the Aorist of the Triliteral has َ the ف in the Preterite after dropping the weak letter takes َ قَامَ يَقُومُ قُمْتُ, قَالَ يَقُولُ قُلْتُ; if the ع have ِ or ُ the ف must have ِ خَافَ يَخَافُ خِفْتُ, بَاعَ يَبِيعُ بِعْتُ.

In the Derivative Formations the vowel of the ف remains unchanged:



I. In the Preterite Passive of the Trilateral أَجَوْف the , when present is changed into ي and the preceding َ into ِ, قَالَ (قَوْل) قِيلَ, بَاعَ (بَيْع) بِيْعَ.

The vowel of the ف in the Trilateral of the Passive Voice should be ِ but when the ف in the Active Voice has َ then the former takes ِ,

|                   |                       |          |
|-------------------|-----------------------|----------|
| (Passive بُعِيتُ) | بَاعَ يَبِيعُ بَيْعًا | (Active) |
| „ صُنْتُ          | صَانَ يَصُونُ صُنًى   | „        |

II. In the sixth and seventh Derived Forms the Hemzeh takes ِ and the , when present is changed into ي, انْقَادَ (انْقَاد) انْقِيدَ, اِعْتَادَ (اِعْتَاد) اِعْتِيدَ.

### THE DEFECTIVE VERB. النَّاقِضُ

When the , plural pron. and the ي sing. fem. pron. second pers. are annexed to a Defective verb in the Aorist its weak letter is dropped.

If the ع have ِ it remains and if ِ or َ it has to agree with the , or ي respectively:

|                        |            |            |
|------------------------|------------|------------|
| 3rd person plur. masc. | يَكْشَوْنَ | يَكْشَوْنَ |
| 2nd „ sing. fem.       | تَغْزِيْنَ | تَغْزِيْنَ |
| 2nd „ sing. masc.      | تَرْمِيْنَ | تَرْمِيْنَ |

The ل of the Defective Trilateral (نَاقِض) reverts to its original form when an annexed pronoun is joined to it, غَزَا غَزَوْتُ. رَمَيْتُ رَمَيْتُ; but in verbs of more than

three letters it is changed into **ي** irrespective of its original form.

If the **ع** have **ـ** in the Preterite the weak letter is dropped in the third person fem. sing. and dual,

غَزَا غَزَتْ غَزَتَا رَمَى رَمَتْ رَمَتَا

The weak letter is dropped in the Aorist when preceded by **حَرْفُ جَزْمٍ** (particle of Apocopation), and it is also dropped in the Imperative which retains the vowel of the **ع** **لَمْ يَرَمْ اِرَمْ ع**.

### VERBS WITH TWO WEAK LETTERS. **الْلَفِيفُ**

I. The first letter of the **لَفِيفٌ مَّفْرُوقٌ** behaves as the **وَلَّى يَلِي مِثَال**.

II. The third letter of the **لَفِيفٌ** verbs behave as the **وَقَى تَقِيَنَّ تَوْقِيَنَّ نَاقِص**.

The Imperative of **لَفِيفٌ مَّفْرُوقٌ** verbs retain one letter only, **وَلَّى لِ وَقَى فِ وَتَى قِ**.

### THE NOUN OF ACTION. **الْمَصْدَرُ**

Verbs beginning with **و**, having **ـ** on the **ع** of the Aorist drop the **و** and affix **ة** instead **وَعْدٌ عِدَّة**.

In the third and ninth Derivative Formations of the Hollow Verb **اَجْوَفَ** the weak letter is dropped and **ة** affixed, **اَقَامَ اَقْوَامَ اِقَامَةً اِسْتَقَامَ اِسْتِقْوَامَ اِسْتِقَامَةً**.

The Defective Verbs (نَاقِص) which insert ا before the last radical, change the weak letter into Hemzeh, اِنْقَضَى اِنْقِضَا، اِجْتَلَى اِجْتِلَا، اِجْتَلَا.

In the fourth and fifth Derived Forms the 2 of the measure is changed into 3 and the و when present into ى, then the ى is dropped because of two silent letters i. e. (نُونُ التَّنْوِينِ and ى) coming together,

تَرْجَى تَرْجُو تَرْجَى تَرْجَ، تَسَامَى تَسَامُو تَسَامَ.

These rules also apply to many nouns, as اَدَلٍ، كِسَاءٌ، رِدَاءٌ.

#### ACTIVE PARTICIPLE OR NOUN OF AGENT.

اسْمُ الْفَاعِلِ

The Noun of Agent of the Triliteral Hollow Verb changes the weak letter into ى (Hemzeh) قَاوِلٌ قَائِلٌ، بَايِعٌ بَائِعٌ.

The Noun of Agent of the Triliteral ناقِص drops the weak letter in the Nominative and Genitive Cases, and retains ى رَامِى رَامٍ، غَاوِى غَاوٍ، غَاوٍ غَاوٍ.

#### PASSIVE PARTICIPLE OR NOUN OF OBJECT.

اسْمُ الْمَفْعُولِ

The Noun of Object of the Triliteral Hollow Verb:

I. drops the و of the measure;

II. makes the weak letter silent by transferring its vowel to the preceding vowelless consonant;

III. and the preceding vowel homogeneous; as,

صَانَ مَصُونٌ مَصُونٌ, بَاعَ مَبْيُوعٌ مَبْيُوعٌ

Exceptions to this rule are the uncontracted forms:

مَقْرُولٌ, مَقْرُودٌ, مَدْيُونٌ, مَدْرُوفٌ, مَكْشُوطٌ.

The Noun of Object of the Defective Verbs (نَائِص) which have not َ on the ع of the Aorist, change the و of the measure into ى and the preceding vowel is made َ then the two ى are incorporated;

رَمَى مَرْمُومٌ مَرْمُومٌ, حَشَى مَكْشُومٌ مَكْشُومٌ.

The Derived Forms of the نَائِص verbs drop their final letter in pronunciation when accompanied by the tanween مُصْطَفًى.

The same rule applies to nouns ending with ا

فَتًى originally فَتًى  
عَصًى " عَصًى

نَ , نَ

نُونُ التَّوَكِيدِ ن. THE CORROBORATIVE

The Energetic Mood is formed by annexing نَ to the Aorist and Imperative after oaths, requests, prohibitions, questions.

The final vowel of the verb is changed into َ لَا تَفْعَلَنَّ لَا تَفْعَلَنَّ.

When a weak letter has been dropped because of the concurrence of two silent letters it is restored on

the final letter being vowelled قُمْ قَوْمَنَّ، اِزْمِ اِزْمِيَنَّ

The نَ، نْ are sometimes separated from the verb either by ن sign of fem. or ي، و، ا weak pronouns in Nominative Case.

In the first instance ا is placed between the ن fem. and ن of assurance اِضْرِبَنَّ اِضْرِبَنَّ

In the second instance the weak pronoun is dropped except the ا and the ل of the verb retain their vowel تَضْرِبَنَّ (تَضْرِبُونَنَّ).

The Defective verbs having َ on the ع retain these letters اِخْشَوَنَّ، اِزْصِيَنَّ

The نْ does not occur after the ا.

### THE AORIST WITH التَّوَكِيدُ نْ

|             |             |             |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| يَفْعَلَنَّ | يَفْعَلَانِ | يَفْعَلَنَّ |
| تَفْعَلَنَّ | تَفْعَلَانِ | تَفْعَلَنَّ |
| أَفْعَلَنَّ |             |             |

#### IMPERATIVE.

|             |             |             |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| اِفْعَلَنَّ | اِفْعَلَانِ | اِفْعَلَنَّ |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|

#### WITH نْ

|             |       |             |
|-------------|-------|-------------|
| يَفْعَلَنَّ | ..... | يَفْعَلَنَّ |
| تَفْعَلَنَّ | ..... | تَفْعَلَنَّ |
| أَفْعَلَنَّ |       |             |

#### IMPERATIVE.

|             |       |             |
|-------------|-------|-------------|
| اِفْعَلَنَّ | ..... | اِفْعَلَنَّ |
|-------------|-------|-------------|



## نُونُ الْوَقَايَةِ. OF PRECAUTION.

To prevent the last letter of the verb from taking - when followed by ي of the first person the ي becomes نِي.

It is also used with the "Particles that Resemble Verbs" (الْحُرُوفُ الْمَشَبَّهَةُ بِالْأَفْعَالِ) اَنَّ, اِنَّ, لَيْتَ, لَكِنَّ, لَعَلَّ (الْحُرُوفُ الْمَشَبَّهَةُ بِالْأَفْعَالِ) and with the particles:

Near, With لَدُن From عَنْ From, of. مِنْ

PRETERITE ACTIVE.

| 1st PERSON. |           | 2nd PERSON. |            | 3rd PERSON. |           |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|------------|-------------|-----------|
| Plural.     | Singular. | Plural.     | Singular.  | Plural.     | Singular. |
| فَعَلْنَا   | فَعَلْتُ  | فَعَلْتُمَا | فَعَلْتُمْ | فَعَلُوا    | فَعَلُوا  |
| مَدَدْنَا   | مَدَدْتُ  | مَدَدْتُمَا | مَدَدْتُمْ | مَدَدُوا    | مَدَدُوا  |
| أَكَلْنَا   | أَكَلْتُ  | أَكَلْتُمَا | أَكَلْتُمْ | أَكَلُوا    | أَكَلُوا  |
| سَأَلْنَا   | سَأَلْتُ  | سَأَلْتُمَا | سَأَلْتُمْ | سَأَلُوا    | سَأَلُوا  |
| قَرَأْنَا   | قَرَأْتُ  | قَرَأْتُمَا | قَرَأْتُمْ | قَرَأُوا    | قَرَأُوا  |
| وَعَدْنَا   | وَعَدْتُ  | وَعَدْتُمَا | وَعَدْتُمْ | وَعَدُوا    | وَعَدُوا  |
| يَسَرْنَا   | يَسَرْتُ  | يَسَرْتُمَا | يَسَرْتُمْ | يَسَرُوا    | يَسَرُوا  |
| خَفْنَا     | خَفْتُ    | خَفْتُمَا   | خَفْتُمْ   | خَفُوا      | خَفُوا    |
| رَمِينَا    | رَمَيْتُ  | رَمَيْتُمَا | رَمَيْتُمْ | رَمَوْا     | رَمَوْا   |
| خَشِينَا    | خَشِيتُ   | خَشِيتُمَا  | خَشِيتُمْ  | خَشَوْا     | خَشَوْا   |
| وَفِينَا    | وَفَيْتُ  | وَفَيْتُمَا | وَفَيْتُمْ | وَفَوْا     | وَفَوْا   |
| طَوِينَا    | طَوَيْتُ  | طَوَيْتُمَا | طَوَيْتُمْ | طَوَوْا     | طَوَوْا   |

# AORIST ACTIVE.

| 1st PERSON.      |             | 2nd PERSON.   |            | 3rd PERSON. |               |           |
|------------------|-------------|---------------|------------|-------------|---------------|-----------|
| Plural Singular. | Plural.     | Dual.         | Singular.  | Plural.     | Dual.         |           |
| نَفَعْتُ         | نَفَعْنَا   | نَفَعْتَانِ   | نَفَعْتَ   | نَفَعُوا    | نَفَعْتُمَا   | يَفْعَلُ  |
| نَمَدْتُ         | نَمَدْنَا   | نَمَدْتُمَا   | نَمَدْتَ   | نَمَدُوا    | نَمَدْتُمَا   | يَمُدُّ   |
| نَاكَلْتُ        | نَاكَلْنَا  | نَاكَلْتُمَا  | نَاكَلْتَ  | نَاكَلُوا   | نَاكَلْتُمَا  | يَاكُلُ   |
| نَسَالْتُ        | نَسَالْنَا  | نَسَالْتُمَا  | نَسَالْتَ  | نَسَالُوا   | نَسَالْتُمَا  | يَسَالُ   |
| نَقَرْتُ         | نَقَرْنَا   | نَقَرْتُمَا   | نَقَرْتَ   | نَقَرُوا    | نَقَرْتُمَا   | يَقْرَأُ  |
| نَعَدْتُ         | نَعَدْنَا   | نَعَدْتُمَا   | نَعَدْتَ   | نَعَدُوا    | نَعَدْتُمَا   | يَعِدُّ   |
| نَيْسَرْتُ       | نَيْسَرْنَا | نَيْسَرْتُمَا | نَيْسَرْتَ | نَيْسَرُوا  | نَيْسَرْتُمَا | يَيْسِرُ  |
| نَكَافُتُ        | نَكَافُنَا  | نَكَافْتُمَا  | نَكَافْتَ  | نَكَافُوا   | نَكَافْتُمَا  | يَكَافُفُ |
| نَرْمِي          | نَرْمِينَا  | نَرْمِيْتُمَا | نَرْمِيْتَ | نَرْمِينَا  | نَرْمِيْتُمَا | يَرْمِي   |
| نَكْشِي          | نَكْشِينَا  | نَكْشِيْتُمَا | نَكْشِيْتَ | نَكْشِينَا  | نَكْشِيْتُمَا | يَاكْشِي  |
| نَفِي            | نَفِينَا    | نَفِيْتُمَا   | نَفِيْتَ   | نَفِينَا    | نَفِيْتُمَا   | يَفِي     |
| نَطْوِي          | نَطْوِينَا  | نَطْوِيْتُمَا | نَطْوِيْتَ | نَطْوِينَا  | نَطْوِيْتُمَا | يَطْوِي   |

سَالِمٌ

مُضَاعَفٌ

مَهْمُوزُ الْفَاءِ

» الْعَيْنِ

» اللَّامِ

مِثَالُ وَائِي

مِثَالُ يَائِي

اجوف

فائق

»

لَفِيْفٌ مَقْرُونٌ

» مَقْرُونٌ

## IMPERATIVE ACTIVE.

| Plural.   | Dual.    | Singular. |                    |
|-----------|----------|-----------|--------------------|
| افْعَلْنَ | افْعَلَا | افْعَلْ   | سَالِم             |
| اُمْدُنْ  | مُدَّا   | مُدِّ     | مَضَاعَف           |
| كُنْ      | كُلَّا   | كُلِّ     | مَهْمُوزُ الْفَاءِ |
| سَلْنَ    | سَلَا    | سَلِّ     |                    |
| اسْأَلْنَ | اسْأَلَا | اسْأَلْ   | » الْعَيْنِ        |
| اقْرَأْنَ | اقْرَأَا | اقْرَأْ   | » اللَّامِ         |
| عِدْنَ    | عِدَّا   | عِدِّ     | مِثَالِ وَاوٍ      |
| اُوسِرْنَ | اُوسِرَا | اُوسِرْ   | مِثَالِ يَائِيٍّ   |
| خَفْنَ    | خَافَا   | خَافِ     | أَجَوْفَ           |
| ارْمِينَ  | ارْمِيَا | ارْمِ     | نَاقِصَ            |
| اخْشِينَ  | اخْشِيَا | اخْشِ     | »                  |
| فِيْنَ    | فِيَا    | فِي       | لَفِيْفَ مَفْرُوقَ |
| اطْوِينَ  | اطْوِيَا | اطْوِ     | » مَقْرُونَ        |

## PRETERITE PASSIVE.

| 1st PERSON.      |          | 2nd PERSON. |            | 3rd PERSON. |          |
|------------------|----------|-------------|------------|-------------|----------|
| Plural Singular. |          | Dual.       |            | Plural.     |          |
| Plural Singular. |          | Dual.       |            | Plural.     |          |
| فَعَلْنَا        | فُعِلْتُ | فَعِلْتُمَا | فُعِلْتُمْ | فُعِلُوا    | فُعِلُوا |
| بُعْنَا          | بُعْتُ   | بُعْتُمَا   | بُعْتُمْ   | بُعُوا      | بُعُوا   |
| صِنَّا           | صِنْتُ   | صِنْتُمَا   | صِنْتُمْ   | صِنُوا      | صِنُوا   |
|                  |          |             |            | صِينَا      | صِينَا   |
|                  |          |             |            | صِينُوا     | صِينُوا  |
|                  |          |             |            | صِينُوا     | صِينُوا  |

## AORIST PASSIVE.

|         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| فُعِلْ  | فُعِلْ  | فُعِلْ  | فُعِلْ  | فُعِلْ  | فُعِلْ  |
| تُبَاعْ | تُبَاعْ | تُبَاعْ | تُبَاعْ | تُبَاعْ | تُبَاعْ |
| يُصَانْ | يُصَانْ | يُصَانْ | يُصَانْ | يُصَانْ | يُصَانْ |
| فُعِلْ  | فُعِلْ  | فُعِلْ  | فُعِلْ  | فُعِلْ  | فُعِلْ  |
| تُبَاعْ | تُبَاعْ | تُبَاعْ | تُبَاعْ | تُبَاعْ | تُبَاعْ |
| يُصَانْ | يُصَانْ | يُصَانْ | يُصَانْ | يُصَانْ | يُصَانْ |
| فُعِلْ  | فُعِلْ  | فُعِلْ  | فُعِلْ  | فُعِلْ  | فُعِلْ  |
| تُبَاعْ | تُبَاعْ | تُبَاعْ | تُبَاعْ | تُبَاعْ | تُبَاعْ |
| يُصَانْ | يُصَانْ | يُصَانْ | يُصَانْ | يُصَانْ | يُصَانْ |



## PRETERITE ACTIVE.

| 1st PERSON. |           | 2nd PERSON. |           | 3rd PERSON. |           |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|-----------|-------------|-----------|
| Plural.     | Singular. | Plural.     | Singular. | Plural.     | Singular. |
| أَمْنًا     | أَمْنٌ    | أَمْنَتُمَا | أَمْنَتِ  | أَمْنُوا    | أَمْنٌ    |
| لَوْمَنَا   | لَوْمٌ    | لَوْمَتُمَا | لَوْمَتِ  | لَوْمُوا    | لَوْمٌ    |
| رَايَنَا    | رَايَةٌ   | رَايَتُمَا  | رَايَتِ   | رَايُوا     | رَايٌ     |
| بَرَّتْنَا  | بَرَّتْ   | بَرَّتُمَا  | بَرَّتِ   | بَرَّتُوا   | بَرَّتٌ   |
| يَعْنَا     | يَعْنٌ    | يَعْنَتُمَا | يَعْنَتِ  | يَعْنُوا    | يَعْنٌ    |
| عَزَوْنَا   | عَزَوَتْ  | عَزَوْتُمَا | عَزَوَتِ  | عَزَوْا     | عَزَوٌ    |
| حَيَّتْنَا  | حَيَّتْ   | حَيَّتُمَا  | حَيَّتِ   | حَيَّوْا    | حَيٌّ     |



## IMPERATIVE ACTIVE.

| Plural.         | Dual.           | Singular.      |
|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|
| اَلْمُؤْمِنَاتُ | اَلْمُؤْمِنَتَا | اَلْمُؤْمِنَةُ |
| رَبَّنَا        | رَبَّيَا        | رَبِّي         |
| اِبْرَاءُ       | اِبْرَاءَا      | اِبْرَائِي     |
| بِيعُوا         | بِيعَا          | بِيعِي         |
| اَغْزُوا        | اَغْزُوا        | اَغْزِي        |
| اَحْيُوا        | اَحْيَا         | اَحْيِي        |

## MEANINGS OF THE DERIVED FORMS.

## فَعَّلَ I

I. *This measure makes Intransitive Verbs Transitive and Transitive Verbs Causative.* (مُتَعَدِّيَةً).

|                  |         |              |        |
|------------------|---------|--------------|--------|
| To deliver       | نَجَّى  | To escape    | نَجَا  |
| To make secure   | سَلَّمَ | To be secure | سَلِمَ |
| To multiply      | كَثَّرَ | To abound    | كَثُرَ |
| To put to flight | هَرَّبَ | To flee      | هَرَبَ |

II. *Expresses Intensity* (لِلكَثْرَةِ).

I cut the rope in pieces

قَطَّعْتُ الْكَبَدَ

I shattered the glass

كَسَّرْتُ الزُّجَاجَ

He wounded himself severely

جَرَحَ جِسْمَهُ

Many camels died

مَوْتَتِ الْاِبِلُ

Many sheep lambed

وَلَدَتِ الْغَنَمُ

|                                                        |                               |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Many trees blossomed                                   | فَرَّخَ الشَّجَرُ             |
| X Many camels kneeled down                             | بَرَكَّتِ النَّعَمُ           |
| X I shut many doors                                    | عَلَقْتُ أَبْوَابًا           |
| "We have made the earth bring<br>forth many fountains" | فَجَّرْنَا الْأَرْضَ عُيُونًا |

### III. Makes a Verb of a Noun لَا تَخَذِ الْعِلْمَ مِنَ الْأِسْمِ

|                     |                           |
|---------------------|---------------------------|
| To pitch a tent     | (تَخَيَّمَ خَيْمَةً) tent |
| To paint            | (صَوَّرَ صُورَةً) picture |
| To petrify          | (حَجَّرَ حَجَرًا) stone   |
| To collect troops   | (جَيَّشَ جَيْشًا) army    |
| To cast a horoscope | (نَجَّمَ نَجْمًا) star    |
| To gild             | (ذَهَبَ ذَهَبًا) gold     |
| To make dusty       | (غَبَّرَ غُبَارًا) dust   |
| To plaster          | (كَلَسَ كَلْسًا) lime     |
| " "                 | (جَصَّ جَصًّا) cement     |
| To specify          | (نَوَّعَ نَوْعًا) kind    |
| To assimilate       | (جَنَسَ جِنْسًا) genus    |
| To soil             | (تَرَبَّ تَرَابًا) dust   |

## II فَاعِلٌ

This measure is invariably *Transitive* and conveys the idea of:

I. *Reciprocal Action* between the *Agent* and *Object* of the Verb.

|               |         |              |         |
|---------------|---------|--------------|---------|
| To fight with | ضَارَبَ | To accompany | رَافَقَ |
|---------------|---------|--------------|---------|

|               |          |                        |         |
|---------------|----------|------------------------|---------|
| To converse   | حَادَثَ  | To smite               | لَاطَمَ |
| To address    | خَاطَبَ  | To quarrel with        | خَاصَمَ |
| To fight with | حَارَبَ  | To summon              | حَاكَمَ |
| To share „    | شَارَكَ  | To live peaceably with | سَالَمَ |
| To fight „    | فَانَلَّ | To correspond „        | كَاتَبَ |
| To accompany  | صَاحَبَ  |                        |         |

× II. *Competition* اِلْتِمَاعَالِيَّةٌ.

|                                |                              |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| To compete with in running     | جَارَى                       |
| To compete with in (knowledge) | فَاخَرَ فِي (الْعِلْمِ)      |
| To compete with in wrestling   | صَارَعَ                      |
| To compete with in writing     | جَارَيْتُهُ فِي الْكِتَابَةِ |
| I tried to overcome him in     |                              |

argument غَالِبْتُهُ فِي الْجِدَالِ  
To emulate (honour) شَارَفَ

|               |         |                  |          |
|---------------|---------|------------------|----------|
| To circumvent | مَاكَرَ | To induce to err | غَاوَى   |
| To deceive    | خَادَعَ | To ensnare       | كَأَيْدَ |

III. *Dealing.* Some verbs on this measure express the action of the state implied in the Trilateral اَلْمُعَامَلَةُ.

|                    |         |               |        |
|--------------------|---------|---------------|--------|
| To deal kindly     | لَاطَفَ | To be kind    | لَطَفَ |
| To deal gently     | لَايَنَ | To be gentle  | لَانَ  |
| To deal roughly    | خَاشَنَ | To be rough   | خَشَنَ |
| To deal pleasantly | أَنَسَ  | To be affable | أَنَسَ |

IV. *Simple Action of* فَعَلَ (بِمَعْنَى اَلثَّلَاثِي).

|          |         |             |         |
|----------|---------|-------------|---------|
| To bless | بَارَكَ | To continue | دَاوَمَ |
|----------|---------|-------------|---------|



To be hypocritical in religion    ذَافَقَ    To travel    سَافَرَ

( V. Repetition المُرَاجَعَةُ.

To try to do a thing repeatedly    حَاوَلَ

To return frequently    عَاوَدَ

To demand repeatedly    طَالَبَ

To put off repeatedly    مَاطَلَ

To review    رَاجَعَ

( VI. The meaning of أَفْعَلَ (بِمَعْنَى أَفْعَلَ).

To resemble    شَابَهُ = شَابَهُ

May God give you health    عَافَاكَ اللَّهُ = أَعْفَاكَ اللَّهُ

To lend or borrow    دَايَنَ = أَدَانَ

VII. Some Triliteral Intransitive verbs which require a preposition to make them Transitive are expressed on this measure without the preposition.

He sat with the prince    جَالَسَ الْأَمِيرَ, جَلَسَ مَعَ الْأَمِيرِ

He wrote to him    كَاتَبَهُ, كَتَبَ لَهُ

To converse    كَلَّمَ    He attacked him    وَاقَعَهُ

To address    خَاطَبَ    To fall    (وَقَعَ)

( VIII. فَاعَلَ when formed from the Noun of Time means to transact business in that time.

Day    يَوْمَ    To hire by the day    يَاوَمَ

Night    لَيْلَ    „ „ „ „ night    لَيَّالَ

Month    شَهْرَ    „ „ „ „ month    شَاهَرَ

Year    عَامَ    „ „ „ „ year    عَاوَمَ

Hour    سَاعَةَ    „ „ „ „ hour    سَاوَعَ

|        |        |                        |         |
|--------|--------|------------------------|---------|
| Summer | صَيْف  | To hire for the summer | صَايَفَ |
| Winter | شِتَاء | „ „ „ „ winter         | شَاتَى  |

IX. فَاعِلٌ is sometimes formed from the names of the members of the body.

|           |        |                     |          |
|-----------|--------|---------------------|----------|
| Fore-arm  | سَاعِد | to help             | سَاعَدَ  |
| Upper-arm | عَضَد  | „ „                 | عَاَصَدَ |
| Back      | ظَهْر  | to aid              | ظَاهَرَ  |
| Waist     | أَزَّر | to strengthen       | آزَرَ    |
| Shoulder  | كَتِف  | to walk by the side | كَاتَفَ  |
| Waist     | خَصَرَ | „ „ „ „ „           | خَاَصَرَ |
| Side      | جَنْب  | „ stand „ „ „       | جَانَبَ  |
| Neck      | عُنُق  | „ embrace           | عَانَقَ  |
| Face      | وَجْه  | „ meet face to face | وَاَجَهَ |
| Lip       | شَفَة  | „ speak with        | شَاَفَهَ |

### أَفْعَلَ III

I. Triliteral Intransitive Verbs generally become either Transitive or Causative on this measure.

|                        |          |                 |        |
|------------------------|----------|-----------------|--------|
| To cause to come down  | أَنْزَلَ | To come down    | نَزَلَ |
| To cause to enter      | أَدْخَلَ | To enter        | دَخَلَ |
| To bring in            | أَخْضَرَ | To be present   | حَضَرَ |
| To cause to be distant | أَبْعَدَ | To be distant   | بَعَدَ |
| To fulfil              | أَتَمَّ  | To be fulfilled | تَمَّ  |

II. *If they are originally Transitive they may take two Objects instead of one and three if they had two.*

|                                       |                                     |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| I put a ring upon him                 | الْمِسْتَهُ خَاتَمًا                |
| I shewed him Zaid standing            | أَرَيْتُهُ زَيْدًا وَاقِفًا         |
| He saw Zaid standing                  | رَأَى زَيْدًا وَاقِفًا              |
| I informed Zaid that Amr was standing | أَعْلَمْتُ زَيْدًا عَمْرًا وَاقِفًا |

III. *Finding* لِلْجُودَانِ.

|                               |                    |
|-------------------------------|--------------------|
| I found him or it good        | أَحْسَنْتُهُ       |
| I found him praiseworthy      | أَحْمَدْتُهُ       |
| He found the matter great     | أَكْبَرَ الْأَمْرَ |
| He found the matter important | أَعْظَمَ الْأَمْرَ |

IV. *Change* لِلتَّغْيِيرِ.

|                                 |                      |
|---------------------------------|----------------------|
| The land became sterile         | أَجْدَبَتِ الْأَرْضُ |
| The land became desolate        | أَفْقَرَتِ الْأَرْضُ |
| The water became putrid         | أَفْتَنَّ الْمَاءُ   |
| The man became humpbacked       | أَحْدَبَ الرَّجُلُ   |
| The dog suffered from the mange | أَجْرَبَ الْكَلْبُ   |

V. *Motion to* لِلْقَصْدِ.

|                        |          |                |          |
|------------------------|----------|----------------|----------|
| To approach (face)     | أَتَبَلَ | To go to Nejd  | أَنْجَدَ |
| To retreat (turn back) | أَدْبَرَ | To go to Yemen | أَيْمَنَ |

VI. *Abundance* لِلْكَثْرَةِ.

|                            |                    |
|----------------------------|--------------------|
| He inflicted severe wounds | أَثَخَنَ جِرَاحَهُ |
| He gave him much to do     | أَشْغَلَهُ         |

VII. *To be in season, the proper time* لِلْحَيْنُونَةِ.

The crops became ripe for harvesting أَحْصَدَ الزَّرْعُ

The child attained the age for weaning أَنْطَمَ الْوَلَدُ

The foal became fit for riding أَرْكَبَ الْوَهْزُ

To be in spring أَرْبَعَ To be in autumn أَخْرَفَ

To be in summer أَصَافَ To be in winter أَشْتَى

VIII. The following Verbs have the same meaning in both forms فَعَلَ and أَنْفَعَلَ.

To light ضَاءَ أَضَاءَ To commit crime جَرَمَ أَجْرَمَ

To shed blood هَرَقَ أَهْرَقَ To string سَلَكَ أَسْلَكَ

To ripen (fruit) يَنَعَ أَيَّنَعَ

تَفَعَّلَ IV

I. *Consequence of the first Derivative* لِمُطَاوَعَةِ فَعَّلَ.

He taught عَلَّمَ He learned تَعَلَّمَ

He sent forward قَدَّمَ He advanced تَقَدَّمَ

He cut in pieces قَطَعَ It was cut تَقَطَّعَ

He scattered فَرَّقَ It was scattered تَفَرَّقَ

He justified بَرَّرَ He was justified تَبَرَّرَ

He made innocent بَرَّأَ He was counted innocent تَبَرَّأَ

II. *Appropriation* لِلاتِّخَاذِ.

To take a wife تَزَوَّجَ To take a stone as a

To take a son تَبَنَّى pillow تَوَسَّدَ حَبْرًا

To take a garment تَرَدَّى To take a body تَجَسَّدَ

To take dinner تَغَدَّى To take possession of تَمَلَّكَ

|                     |                    |                    |           |
|---------------------|--------------------|--------------------|-----------|
| To take nourishment | تَغْدَى            | To gird on a sword | تَقَلَّدَ |
| To take a name      | تَسَمَّى           | To take arms       | تَسَلَّحَ |
| To take under the   |                    | To enslave, serve  | تَعَبَّدَ |
| arm                 | تَأَبَّطَ (إِبْطَ) | To entrust         | تَوَلَّى  |
|                     |                    | To serve           | تَخَدَّمَ |

### III. Gradation لِلتَّدرِجِ

To proceed by degrees

تَدَرَّجَ

He learned science, branch  
after branch

تَعَلَّمَ الْعِلْمَ فَرْعًا فَرْعًا

He had a military training

تَدَرَّبَ فِي الْفُنُونِ الْعَسْكَرِيَّةِ

To advance step by step

تَقَدَّمَ (قَدَمَ)

To walk gradually

تَمَشَّى

+ The well was filled by degrees  
(To be filled)

تَمَلَّأَ الْبَيْتُ

إِمْتَلَأَ

To be elevated

تَرَفَّى

To be trained

تَخَرَّجَ

To watch continuously

تَرَقَّبَ

To pursue (heel عَقِبَ)

تَعَقَّبَ

He attended to the matter continually

تَدَبَّرَ الْأَمْرَ

(As though we said)

كَأَن يُدَبِّرُ الْأَمْرَ

To fall behind gradually

تَخَلَّفَ

To be strengthened by degrees

تَقَوَّى

To act with deliberation

تَثَبَّتَ

To continue expecting

تَوَقَّعَ

To improve

تَحَسَّنَ

To follow persistently

تَتَبَعَ



IV. *Change* لِلتَّحْوِيلِ.

The matter was changed

تَغَيَّرَ الْأَمْرُ

The question was transferred

تَحَوَّلَتِ الْمَسْأَلَةُ

The clay became stone

تَحَاوَرَ الطِّينُ

The water became muddy

تَكَدَّرَ الْمَاءُ

To become hard

تَصَلَّبَ

The water froze

تَجَلَّدَ الْمَاءُ

The affairs improved

تَحَسَّنَتِ الْأَحْوَالُ

V. *Affectation* لِلتَّكْلِيفِ.

The coward affected courage

تَشَجَّعَ الْجَبَانُ

The sick one simulated patience  
and endurance

تَجَلَّدَ الْمَرِيضُ

The sorrowful one affected patience

تَصَبَّرَ الْكَرِيمُ

To be manly

تَرَجَّلَ

Many verbs on this measure may have this meaning when used in certain senses, as

The boy affected politeness before

the prince

تَدَابَّ الْغُلَامُ أَمَامَ الْأَمِيرِ

## تَفَاعَلَ V

I. *Expresses the consequence of* فَاعَلَ (لِطَاوَعَةٍ فَاعَلَ).*It conveys the idea of Reciprocal Action between the Agents of the Verb.*

Zaid and Amr became partners

تَشَارَكَ زَيْدٌ وَعَمْرُو

|                                       |           |
|---------------------------------------|-----------|
| To help one another                   | تَعَاوَنَ |
| To love one another                   | تَحَابَّ  |
| To greet one another (reconciliation) | تَصَافَحَ |
| To be neighbours                      | تَجَاوَرَ |
| To covenant together                  | تَعَاهَدَ |
| To accompany one another              | تَصَاحَبَ |
| To exchange greetings                 | تَبَارَكَ |
| To consult together                   | تَأَمَّرَ |

## II. *Feigning* لَلتَّظَاهَرِ.

|                |           |                    |           |
|----------------|-----------|--------------------|-----------|
| To feign death | تَمَاوَتْ | To feign blindness | تَعَاىَ   |
| „ „ occupation | تَشَاغَلَ | „ „ sickness       | تَمَارَضَ |
| „ „ ignorance  | تَجَاهَلَ |                    |           |

## III. *Increase* لَلتَّكَاثَرِ.

|                             |                                  |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| The evil increased          | تَفَاعَمَ الشَّرُّ               |
| The clouds became dense     | تَكَاثَفَ الْغَيْمُ              |
| Afflictions pressed upon me | تَتَابَعَتْ عَلَيَّ الْمَصَائِبُ |
| Many people kept coming     | تَوَارَدَ الْقَوْمُ              |
| The enemy increased         | تَكَاثَرَ الْعَدُوُّ             |
| To be closely packed        | تَرَاكَمَ                        |

## IV. *Repetition of the act* لَلتَّكَرُّارِ وَتَوَعُّدِ الْفِعْلِ.

|                    |           |                      |           |
|--------------------|-----------|----------------------|-----------|
| To fall one by one |           | To scoff             | تَلَاعَبَ |
| (leaves)           | تَسَاوَطَ | To divert oneself    | تَلَاهَى  |
| To sway            | تَمَايَلَ | To be affectionate   | تَعَاطَفَ |
| To waddle          | تَهَادَى  | To return by degrees | تَرَاجَعَ |

To follow a pro-  
fession

تَعَاطَى

To hold aloof

تَقَاعَدَ

## انْفَعَلَ VI

*Expresses the Consequence of فَعَلَ and is always Passive.*

|                                 |                                      |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| The ship was wrecked            | انْكَسَرَتِ السَّفِينَةُ             |
| The house fell down             | انْهَدَمَ الْبَيْتُ                  |
| The rope was cut                | انْقَطَعَ الْكَبْلُ                  |
| The writing was effaced         | امْحَتْ الْكِتَابَةُ (انْمَحَتْ)     |
| The water was poured out        | انْصَبَ الْمَاءُ                     |
| The prophet was troubled        | انزعج النَّبِيُّ                     |
| The army was defeated           | انْغَلَبَ الْجَيْشُ                  |
| He was gathered to his fathers  | انضمَّ إِلَى آبَائِهِ                |
| The cloth was folded            | انطوى الْقِمَاشُ                     |
| The light was extinguished      | انطفأَ النَّوْرُ                     |
| The disciples went to the house | انصرفَ التَّلَامِيذُ إِلَى الْبَيْتِ |

## اِنْعَلَّ VII

*This form is generally Passive or Reflexive.*

I. It expresses the consequence of فَعَلَ (الْمُطَاوَعَةُ فَعَلَ).

|           |        |                     |        |
|-----------|--------|---------------------|--------|
| To gather | جَمَعَ | To be gathered      | اجتمعَ |
| To mix    | مَزَجَ | To be mixed         | امتزجَ |
| To spread | نَشَرَ | To be spread (news) | انتشرَ |
| To spread | مَدَّ  | do.                 | امتدَّ |

|            |        |                |            |
|------------|--------|----------------|------------|
| To burn    | حَرَقَ | To be burnt    | اُحْتَرَقَ |
| To restore | رَدَّ  | To be restored | اُرْتُدَّ  |

## II. Reflexive لَلَاذِخَانِ. i.e. رَسَدَ

|                   |            |                             |            |
|-------------------|------------|-----------------------------|------------|
| To gather wood    | اُحْتَطَبَ | To take an apprentice       | اُصْطَنَعَ |
| To engage a cook  | اُطْبِخَ   | To milk                     | اُحْتَلَبَ |
| To take hold of   | اُسْتَلَمَ | To take a servant           | اُخْتَدِمَ |
| To follow a craft | اُحْتَرَفَ | To gain                     | اُكْتَسَبَ |
| To buy            | اُشْتَرَى  | To bake bread (for oneself) | اُخْتَبَزَ |

## III. Meaning of تَفَاعَلَ.

|                    |            |                   |            |
|--------------------|------------|-------------------|------------|
| To fight together  | اُفْتَتَلَ | To divide between | اُفْتَسَمَ |
| To strive together | اُخْتَصَمَ | To meet together  | اُلتَقَى   |

## اُفْعَلٌ VIII

### Fixed Colours and Defects (لِلْأَلْوَانِ وَالْعُيُوبِ).

|             |             |                |           |
|-------------|-------------|----------------|-----------|
| To be red   | اُحْمَرَّ   | To be brown    | اُسْمَرَ  |
| To be black | اُسْوَدَّ   | To be blue     | اُزْزَقَّ |
| To be green | اُخْضَرَ    | To be one-eyed | اُعْوَرَ  |
| To be white | اُأَبْيَضَّ | To be crooked  | اُعْوَجَّ |

## اُسْتَفْعَلٌ IX

### I. Request لِلطَّلَبِ.

|                    |              |                 |              |
|--------------------|--------------|-----------------|--------------|
| To ask forgiveness | اُسْتَغْفَرَ | To seek to copy | اُسْتَنْسَخَ |
|--------------------|--------------|-----------------|--------------|

|                     |              |                    |              |
|---------------------|--------------|--------------------|--------------|
| To ask permission   | اِسْتَأْذَنَ | To seek help       | اِسْتَعَانَ  |
| To borrow something | اِسْتَعَارَ  | To seek protection | اِسْتَجَارَ  |
| To borrow „         | اِسْتَقْرَضَ | To seek reinforce- |              |
| To borrow money     | اِسْتَدَانَ  | ments              | اِسْتَنْجَدَ |

## II. *Finding and Believing* اِلِلْوِجْدَانِ وَالْاِعْتِقَادِ.

|                                   |                          |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| He found his answer good          | اِسْتَحْسَنَ جَوَابَهُ   |
| He found the house large          | اِسْتَكْبَرَ الدَّارَ    |
| He believed the oath to be lawful | اِسْتَحَدَّ الْقَسَمَ    |
| He found the matter important     | اِسْتَعَظَمَ الْأَمْرَ   |
| He found the boy lovable          | اِسْتَحَبَّ الْغُلَامَ   |
| He found the army great           | اِسْتَكْثَرَ الْجَيْشَ   |
| He found his intellect small      | اِسْتَصْغَرَ عَقْلَهُ    |
| I found thy disposition sweet     | اِسْتَحْلَيْتُ طِبَاعَكَ |
| I found his speech vile           | اِسْتَقْبَحْتُ كَلَامَهُ |
| He believed in his generosity     | اِسْتَجَادَهُ            |
| He despised him                   | اِسْتَحَفَّ بِهِ         |
| I found study wearisome           | اِسْتَثْقَلْتُ الدَّرْسَ |

## III. *Submission* اِلِلتَّسْلِيمِ وَالْاِتِّخَاذِ.

|                           |              |                    |              |
|---------------------------|--------------|--------------------|--------------|
| To surrender              | اِسْتَسْلَمَ | To take as captive | اِسْتَأْسَرَ |
| To take or become a slave | اِسْتَعْبَدَ |                    |              |
| To take or become a slave | اِسْتَرْقَى  |                    |              |

## IV. *Change* اِلِلتَّحَوُّلِ.

|                             |                         |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| The crooked became straight | اِسْتَقَامَ الْمَعْوَجُ |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|



The clay became hard

اسْتَحْجَرَ الطِّينُ

To be transformed

اسْتَحَالَ

اِنْفَعَلَ

X

*This form intensifies the meaning of اِنْفَعَلَ.*

To be intensely red

احْمَرَّ

To be white

اَبْيَضَّ

اِنْفَعَوْلَ

XI

*Intensity and Beginning اِلِلْمُبَالَغَةِ وَالْاِبْتِدَاءِ.*

To be humpbacked

اَحْدَوَدَبَ

To become rough

اَحْشَوْشَنَ

It was about to rain

اِخْلَوْلَقَتْ السَّمَاءُ اَنْ تَمْطُرَ

The fruit became ripe

اِخْلَوْلَى التَّمَرُ

The man stooped

اِحْقَوْقَفَ ظَهْرُ الرَّجُلِ

The earth became covered with verdure

اِعْشَوْشَبَتِ الْاَرْضُ

اِنْفَعَوْلَ

XII

*Expresses great Intensity.*

To be heavy

اِعْلَوَدَ

To be long or last long

اِخْرَوَطَ

# مشتقات الفعل

THE FOLLOWING NOUNS ARE DERIVED FROM THE VERB: —

| NAMES.                          |  | MEASURES.                     |                                              |
|---------------------------------|--|-------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
|                                 |  | TRILITERAL.                   | DERIVED.                                     |
| Noun of Action.                 |  | Various.                      | Special.                                     |
| Noun of Unity.                  |  | فَعْلَةٌ                      | to Masdar.                                   |
| Noun of Species.                |  | فِعْلَةٌ                      | As Noun of Unity with qualifying expression. |
| Noun of Action with م.          |  | مَفْعَلٌ                      | م...عَل                                      |
| Noun of Agent.                  |  | فَاعِلٌ                       | م...عِل                                      |
| Adjective Resembling the Agent. |  | Various.                      | م...عِل                                      |
| Noun of Superiority.            |  | أَفْعَلٌ                      | . . . . .                                    |
| Noun of Excess.                 |  | Various.                      | . . . . .                                    |
| Noun of Object.                 |  | مَفْعُولٌ                     | م...عَل                                      |
| The Measures                    |  | . . . . .                     | . . . . .                                    |
| Noun of Time and Place.         |  | مَفْعَلٌ                      | م...عَل                                      |
| Noun of Instrument.             |  | مِفْعَلٌ مِفْعَالٌ مِفْعَلَةٌ | . . . . .                                    |

## THE NOUN OF ACTION. الْمَصْدَرُ

The word مَصْدَر is the Noun of Place from صَدَرَ to arise.

It is so called because it is regarded as the source of the verb and the derivative nouns. It expresses mere action, state, or being of the verb, and is unlimited by subject, object, or time; as

beating ضَرْبٌ sleeping نَوْمٌ ease سَهْوَةٌ

The Noun of Action is never made feminine; but if it should express number or kind, it is rendered into dual or plural; as

I struck him

I struck him

twice

ضَرْبَتُهُ ضَرْبَتَيْنِ

blows

ضَرْبَتُهُ ضَرْبَاتٍ

It is often used with its own verb to strengthen the meaning of the verb; as

I beat him

I killed him

severely

ضَرْبَتُهُ ضَرْبًا

outright

قَتَلَتْهُ قَتْلًا

I fled outright

هَرَبْتُ هَرَبًا

It is sometimes used as an adjective, and as a common noun; as

a righteous man

رَجُلٌ عَدْلٌ

a holy spirit

رُوحٌ قُدْسٌ

letter

تَكْرِيرٌ

building

بِنَاءٌ

It is formed from both transitive and intransitive verbs.

From trilateral verbs it is irregular in its formation. Some twenty-three measures are in common use. A verb may have several Nouns of Action especially if it has dif-

ferent shades of meaning which may be indicated by the different vowels employed on the ع of the preterite.

The following measures are the most common:

|           |                                                 |                |
|-----------|-------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| فَعَلَ    | is formed from transitive verbs on the measures | فَعَلَ, فَعِلَ |
| فُعُولُ   | „ „ „ intransitive „ „ „ „                      | فَعَلَ         |
| فَعَلَ    | „ „ „ „ „ „ „ „                                 | فَعِلَ         |
| فَعَالَةٌ | are                                             | فَعَلَ         |
| فُعُولَةٌ | „ „ „ „ „ „ „ „                                 | فَعَلَ         |

فَعَالَةٌ expresses trades and offices.

فُعُولُ expresses ailments.

فَعَالَن expresses violent or continuous motion.

فَعِيلُ expresses change of place.

فُعِيلُ, فُعَالُ express sounds.

فُعَالُ expresses flight and refusal.

فُعَلَةٌ expresses colour in the abstract.

In the derived forms of the verb and the quadrilateral special measures are employed:

(See glossary).

|                  |                        |                        |                        |
|------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| فَعَلَ takes     | تَفَعَّلَ or تَفَعَّلَ | تَسَلَّمَ to make safe | تَسَلَّمَ or تَسَلَّمَ |
| قَدَّمَ to offer | تَقَدَّمَ „ تَقَدَّمَ  | سَلَّمَ „ arm, equip   | تَسَلَّمَ „ تَسَلَّمَ  |

Verbs weak on the medial radical (الْأَجَوَفُ) take the measure تَفَعَّلَ only:

|                          |           |                       |           |
|--------------------------|-----------|-----------------------|-----------|
| نَوَّمَ to make to sleep | تَنَوَّمَ | قَوَّمَ to straighten | تَقَوَّمَ |
| بَيَّضَ „ whiten         | تَبَيَّضَ | هَيَّجَ „ agitate     | تَهَيَّجَ |
| سَوَّدَ „ blacken        | تَسَوَّدَ | سَيَّجَ „ fence       | تَسَيَّجَ |

|                      |           |                          |           |
|----------------------|-----------|--------------------------|-----------|
| تَشِيدَ to establish | تَشِيدَ   | تَحْوِيلَ to change into | تَحْوِيلَ |
| قَيْدَ ,, bind       | تَقْيِيدَ |                          |           |

Defective Verbs and those whose final radical is hemzeh take the measure تَفْعِلَةٌ only; as

|                         |            |                        |            |
|-------------------------|------------|------------------------|------------|
| زَكَّى to justify       | تَزْكِيَةٌ | سَوَّى to equalize     | تَسْوِيَةٌ |
| سَلَّى ,, divert (mind) | تَسْلِيَةٌ | هَيَّأ ,, prepare      | تَهْيِئَةٌ |
| سَمَّى ,, name          | تَسْمِيَةٌ | هَنَّا ,, congratulate | تَهْنِئَةٌ |
| قَوَّى ,, strengthen    | تَقْوِيَةٌ | جَرَأَ ,, apportion    | تَجْرِئَةٌ |

فَاعِلٌ takes the measure فُعَالٌ or مُفَاعَلَةٌ; as

قَاتَلَ to fight قِتَالٌ or مُقَاتَلَةٌ warfare.

حَارَبَ ,, ,, (حِرَابٌ) or مُحَارَبَةٌ warfare.

ضَارَبَ ,, ,, (بِضْرَابٍ) or مُضَارَبَةٌ.

خَالَفَ ,, oppose خِلَافٌ or مُخَالَفَةٌ opposition.

نَاقَضَ ,, contradict (نِقَاضٌ) or مُنَاقَضَةٌ contradiction.

سَالَمَ ,, make peace with (سِلَامٌ) or مُسَالَمَةٌ.

جَاهَدَ ,, wage war against infidels جِهَادٌ or مُجَاهَدَةٌ.

جَادَلَ ,, dispute جِدَالٌ or مُجَادَلَةٌ disputation.

(Not every verb has both forms in use).

Verbs which begin with servile ة (تَفَاعَلَ) have

2 on the penultimate consonant; as

|                             |                     |
|-----------------------------|---------------------|
| تَقَدَّمَ to advance        | تَقَدَّمَ progress. |
| تَعَجَّبَ ,, wonder         | تَعَجَّبَ wonder.   |
| تَقَاتَلَ ,, fight together | تَقَاتَلَ           |
| تَظَاهَرَ ,, pretend        | تَظَاهَرَ pretence. |



|                       |                        |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| تَصَوَّرَ to imagine  | تَصَوُّر imagination.  |
| تَوَاضَعَ „ be humble | تَوَاضُع humility.     |
| تَدَاخَلَ „ interfere | تَدَاخُل interference. |
| تَدَخَّرَجَ „ roll    | تَدَخَّرَج rolling.    |

Derived forms of the verb beginning with  $\text{أ}$ ,  $\text{إ}$ , and  $\text{ع}$ , and the quadriliteral, insert an  $\text{ا}$  before the final radical and give  $\text{ـ}$  to every vowelled letter preceding the  $\text{ا}$ .

The penultimate consonant takes  $\text{ـ}$ ; as

|                                   |                           |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| أَحْسَنَ to do good               | إِحْسَان charity.         |
| أَكْرَمَ „ honour                 | إِكْرَام honour.          |
| أَسْرَفَ „ squander               | إِسْرَاف prodigality.     |
| أَقْنَعَ „ convince               | إِقْنَاع convincing.      |
| أَنْقَادَ „ be led                | إِنْقِيَاد being led.     |
| أَنْكَسَرَ „ be defeated, broken  | إِنْكَسَار defeat.        |
| اتَّحَدَ „ be united              | اتِّحَاد unity.           |
| اتَّخَذَ „ take possession        | اتِّخَاذ assumption.      |
| أَسْوَدَ „ be black               | أَسْوَدَاد blackness.     |
| أَسْتَعَدَّ „ make oneself ready  | إِسْتِعْدَاد preparation. |
| أَسْتَقَامَ „ be upright          | إِسْتِقَامَة uprightness. |
| أَسْتَفْهَمَ „ seek to understand | إِسْتِفْهَام              |
| أَتَمَّ „ fulfil                  | إِتْمَام fulfilment.      |
| أَعْلَنَ „ reveal                 | إِعْلَان revelation.      |
| أَلْهَمَ „ inspire                | إِلْهَام inspiration.     |
| آمَنَ „ believe                   | إِيْمَان faith.           |

|                            |                          |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| إِنْطَلَقَ to depart       | إِنْطِلَاق departure.    |
| إِنْقَلَبَ „ be overthrown | إِنْقِلَاب overthrow     |
| إِبْتَدَأَ „ begin         | إِبْتِدَاء commencement. |
| اجْتَهَدَ „ be diligent    | اجْتِهَاد diligence.     |
| أَحْمَرَّ „ be red         | أَحْمَرَار redness.      |
| اسْتَعْمَلَ „ use          | اسْتِعْمَال use.         |
| اسْتَفَادَ „ profit        | اسْتِفَادَة profit.      |
| اسْتَحَقَّ „ be worthy     | اسْتِحْقَاق merit.       |

It will be seen from the foregoing examples that the Noun of Action is very frequently used as a noun.

### NOUN OF UNITY. مَصْدَرُ الْمَرَّةِ

The Noun of Unity expresses the doing of an action once (مَرَّةً).

If is formed from triliteral verbs on the measure فَعْلَة i. e. by affixing the ة of unity to the Noun of Action on the measure فَعَلَ; as

I struck him one blow ضَرَبْتُهُ ضَرْبَةً.

The act of

|          |          |           |          |         |          |
|----------|----------|-----------|----------|---------|----------|
| helping  | نَصْرَةً | killing   | قَتْلَةً | dying   | مَوْتَةً |
| sitting  | قَعْدَةً | rejoicing | فَرَحَةً | fleeing | فِرَّةً  |
| drinking | شَرْبَةً | once.     |          |         |          |

In the derived forms of the verb the Noun of Unity is expressed on the measure of the ordinary Maṣdar with ة affixed; as

I honoured him once أَكْرَمْتُهُ أَكْرَامَةً.

When the ordinary Maṣḍar ends with ة as in the derived forms of the أَجَوَفَ a word to limit its meaning is placed after it; as

I raised him once only أَقْبَمْتُهُ إِقَامَةً وَاحِدَةً

I pitied him once رَحِمْتُهُ رَحْمَةً لَا غَيْرَ

I invited him once only دَعَوْتُهُ دَعْوَةً فَقَطْ

The dual and plural are formed in the usual way after suppressing the final ة; as

I struck him blows ضَرَبْتُهُ ضَرْبَاتٍ

I struck him two blows ضَرَبْتُهُ ضَرْبَتَيْنِ

### NOUN OF SPECIES. مَصْدَرُ النَّوعِ

The Noun of Species expresses the manner of doing the action which is indicated by the verb.

Triliteral verbs have the measure فَعْلَةٌ; as

I rode like the prince رَكِبْتُ رَكْبَةَ الْأَمِيرِ

I took a quick walk مَشَيْتُ مَشِيَّةً مُسْتَعْجَلَةً

He died miserably مَاتَ مَيِّتَةً أَلْشَقِيَّ

He walked righteously سَارَ سَيْرَةَ الْبَارِّ

He shouted like a lion صَرَخَ صِرْخَةَ الْأَسَدِ

The mode or style of

|         |          |          |          |          |          |
|---------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| sitting | جَلَسَةً | laughing | ضَحْكَةً | standing | وَقْفَةً |
| sitting | قَعْدَةً | running  | رَكْضَةً | throwing | صِرْعَةً |

Derived forms of the verb have the same measure as  
1) the Noun of Unity or 2) the Noun of Action followed by some qualifying expression.

- 1) I departed like the fearing one **اِنْطَلَقْتُ اِنْطِلَاقَةَ الْخَائِفِ**  
 I looked about like a fawn **اِنْتَفَتْتُ اِنْتِفَاتَةَ الظَّبْيِ**  
 I praised God piously **سَبَّحْتُ اللَّهَ تَسْبِيحَةَ اَلْتَّقِي**
- 2) I loved him like a brother **اَحْبَبْتُهُ مَكَبَّةَ الْاَخِ لِاَخِيهِ**  
 I fought with him courageously **قَاتَلْتُهُ مُقَاتِلَةَ الشَّجَاعِ**  
 He trembled as with fear **ارْتَعَدَ ارْتِعَادَ الْخَائِفِ**

### NOUN OF ACTION WITH **اَلْمَصْدَرُ الْمِيمِيُّ م**

The Noun of Action with **م** has the same meaning as the ordinary **Maṣdar**.

Triliteral Verbs have the measure **مَفْعَل**; as

|         |                |          |                |         |                |
|---------|----------------|----------|----------------|---------|----------------|
| Selling | <b>مَبَاع</b>  | Speaking | <b>مَنْطَق</b> | Seeing  | <b>مَرَأَى</b> |
| Growth  | <b>مَنْبَت</b> | Taste    | <b>مَذَاق</b>  | Hearing | <b>مَسْمَع</b> |
| Result  | <b>مَال</b>    | Clothing | <b>مَلْبَس</b> | Beating | <b>مَضْرَب</b> |
|         |                | Falling  | <b>مَوْقِع</b> | Return  | <b>مَعَاد</b>  |

Verbs beginning with **و** and having **ع** on the of the Aorist take the measure **مَفْعَل**; as

**مَوْرَث يَرِثُ** inheriting. **وَرِثَ** to inherit | **مَوْعِد يَعِدُ** to promise **وَعَدَ**  
**مَوْصِل يَصِلُ** joining. **وَصَلَ** „ join | **مَوْقِف يَقِفُ** „ stand **وَقَفَ**

The following words are exceptions to the preceding rule:

|         |               |           |                |         |                |
|---------|---------------|-----------|----------------|---------|----------------|
| Walking | <b>مَسِير</b> | Coming    | <b>مَاجِي</b>  | Old age | <b>مَشَيْب</b> |
| Ending  | <b>مَصِير</b> | Returning | <b>مَرْجِع</b> |         |                |

In all verbs of more than three letters the Noun of Action with م takes the measure of the Noun of Object; as

|            |           |           |             |              |            |
|------------|-----------|-----------|-------------|--------------|------------|
| Rending    | مُزِقّ    | Trusting  | مُتَكَلِّ   | Spacious     | مُتَّسِع   |
| Praying    | مُصَلِّي  | Deducing  | مُسْتَخْرِج | Recalling    | مُسْتَرَدّ |
| Proceeding | مُنْبِثِق | Overthrow | مُنْقَلَب   | Equalization | مُعَدِّل   |
| Stooping   | مُنْكَنِي | End       | مُنْتَهِي   | Opening      | مُنْفَتَح  |
| Taking     | مُتَّخِذ  | Deserving | مُسْتَحَقّ  | Wavering     | مُتَقَلِّب |
| Summary    | مُجْمَل   | Neglect   | مُتَهَاوِن  |              |            |

A ة is sometimes added; as

|             |           |             |          |        |           |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|----------|--------|-----------|
| Exhortation | مَوْعِظَة | Hunger      | مَجَاعَة | Fear   | مَخَافَة  |
| Consent     | مَرَضَاة  | Humiliation | مَذَلَّة | Excuse | مَعْدَرَة |
| Pardon      | مَغْفَرَة |             |          |        |           |

## THE NOUN OF AGENT OR ACTIVE PARTICIPLE.

### إِسْمُ الْفَاعِلِ

The Noun of Agent expresses intermittent action only, and is formed from both transitive and intransitive verbs.

For trilaterals its measure is فَاعِل; as

|        |                |        |                |
|--------|----------------|--------|----------------|
| قَاتِل | one who kills. | قَائِل | one who says.  |
| ضَارِب | „ „ strikes.   | آكِل   | „ „ eats.      |
| رَام   | „ „ throws.    | مَادّ  | „ „ stretches. |
| جَالِس | „ „ sits.      | سَائِل | „ „ asks.      |



|                       |                     |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| بَائِع one who sells. | غَار one who raids. |
| وَاعِد „ „ promises.  | وَال „ „ rules.     |

Verbs of more than three letters change the letter of the Aorist into مُ and vowel the penultimate consonant with =

|                           |                                       |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| مُقَدِّم offerer.         | مُسَالِم peaceful.                    |
| مُكْسِن benefactor.       | مُتَعَلِّم learner.                   |
| مُتَزَلِّل quaking.       | مُتَكَارِب mutual [warfare.           |
| مُنْكَسِر broken.         | مُكْتَبِل endurer.                    |
| مُدْخِر roller.           | مُكْرَدِّج pressing [(crowds).        |
| مُكَمَّر red.             | مُسْتَكْسِن approver.                 |
| مُكْدَوِّب hump- [backed. | مُقْشَعِّر shudder- [ing with horror. |

#### THE ADJECTIVE RESEMBLING THE AGENT.

##### الصِّفَةُ الْمُشَبَّهَةُ بِاسْمِ الْفَاعِلِ

The Adjective resembling the Agent is an Adjective of quality, and is generally formed from neuter verbs on the measures فَعْلٌ يَفْعَلُ, فَعِلٌ يَفْعَلُ. These verbs express inherent and permanent qualities in persons or things, and therefore the adjectives where derived from them possess similar qualities. They are formed from trilateral verbs on various measures as follows:

## Measures.

## فَعْل

|       |        |       |            |        |         |
|-------|--------|-------|------------|--------|---------|
| عَذْب | sweet. | شَيْخ | aged.      | رَطْب  | tender. |
| سَهْل | easy.  | صَعْب | difficult. | ثَبْتُ | firm.   |

## فِعْل

|       |          |     |       |       |          |
|-------|----------|-----|-------|-------|----------|
| جِلْف | uncouth. | دِق | thin. | خِصْب | fertile. |
|-------|----------|-----|-------|-------|----------|

## فُعْل

|     |         |       |       |       |        |
|-----|---------|-------|-------|-------|--------|
| حُر | free.   | دُون  | mean. | حَلْو | sweet. |
| مُر | bitter. | صَلْب | hard. | سُخْن | hot.   |

## فَعَل

|       |        |        |            |       |           |
|-------|--------|--------|------------|-------|-----------|
| حَدَث | youth. | عَرَب  | unmarried. | حَسَن | handsome. |
| بَطَل | hero.  | ذَكِيس | impure.    |       |           |

## فُعِل

|       |         |       |            |       |         |
|-------|---------|-------|------------|-------|---------|
| دَنَس | soiled. | عَسِر | difficult. | حَشِن | rough.  |
| فَرِح | joyous. | وَسِج | dirty.     | قَذِر | filthy. |

## أَفْعَل

|         |            |         |        |         |              |
|---------|------------|---------|--------|---------|--------------|
| أَصْفَر | yellow.    | أَخْضَر | green. | أَزْرَق | blue.        |
| أَحْمَر | red.       | أَسْوَد | black. | أَبْيَض | white.       |
| أَعْرَض | blue-eyed. | أَصَم   | deaf.  | أَعْقَد | tongue-tied. |
| أَعْرَج | lame.      | أَعْمَى | blind. | أَخْرَس | dumb.        |

## فَيَعِل

|        |           |        |         |        |        |
|--------|-----------|--------|---------|--------|--------|
| سَيِّد | lord.     | ضَيِّق | narrow. | لَيِّن | soft.  |
| طَيِّب | pleasant. | جَيِّد | good.   | مَيِّت | dying. |

## Measures.

## فَعِيل

|              |               |                    |
|--------------|---------------|--------------------|
| قَدِيمٌ old. | مَلِيحٌ good. | نَظِيفٌ clean.     |
| عَظِيمٌ „    | جَدِيدٌ new.  | ظَرِيفٌ beautiful. |

## فَعَال

|                     |                  |                 |
|---------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| شَجَاعٌ brave.      | حَصَانٌ chaste.  | جَبَانٌ coward. |
| عَيَّاءٌ incurable. | جَوَادٌ liberal. |                 |

## فُعَال

|                |                |                      |
|----------------|----------------|----------------------|
| ذُعَافٌ fatal. | ضَخَامٌ large. | عُضَالٌ distressing. |
| زُعَافٌ „      | شُجَاعٌ brave. | عُقَامٌ „            |

## فَعْلَان

|                    |                       |                    |
|--------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| سَكْرَانٌ drunken. | عَرْقَانٌ perspiring. | عَطْشَانٌ thirsty. |
| غَضَبَانٌ angry.   | شَبَعَانٌ satisfied.  | ظَبَّانٌ „         |

## فَاعِل

|                 |                 |                   |
|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| طاهر lukewarm.  | بَارِدٌ cold.   | حَارٌّ hot.       |
| خَاصٌّ special. | عَامٌّ general. | حَازِمٌ resolute. |

(See glossary).

فَعْلَان is commonly used to express hunger, thirst, and their opposites.

أَفْعَل expresses colour, defect, blemishes, and points of beauty.

From verbs of more than three letters the Adjective resembling the Agent is formed on the measure of the Noun of Agent.

## Derived Forms.

- |      |             |               |            |              |
|------|-------------|---------------|------------|--------------|
| I.   | مُغَرِّد    | singing bird. |            |              |
| II.  | مُرَّاء     | hypocrite.    |            |              |
| III. | مُكْسِن     | benefactor.   | مُضِرّ     | injurious.   |
|      | مُخْلِص     | sincere.      | مُضِيّر    | shining.     |
|      | مُظْلِم     | dark.         | مُسِنّ     | old (age).   |
|      | مُقْدِس     | penniless.    | مُشْرِق    | shining.     |
|      | مُهْمِل     | neglectful.   | مُمْكِن    | possible.    |
|      | مُؤْمِن     | believer.     | مُنْصِف    | just.        |
|      | مُصِيب      | right.        |            |              |
| IV.  | مُتَجَبِّر  | tyrant.       | مُتَقَلِّب | fickle.      |
|      | مُتَجَعِّد  | wrinkled.     | مُتَوَسِّط | moderate.    |
|      | مُتَكَبِّر  | proud.        | مُتَادِّب  | polite.      |
|      | مُتَمَدِّن  | civilized.    | مُتَرَدِّد | irresolute.  |
|      | مُتَجَبِّد  | frozen.       | مُتَوَحِّش | barbarian.   |
|      | مُتَعَبِّد  | religious.    |            |              |
| V.   | مُتَكَاسِل  | lazy.         | مُتَظَاهِر | pretender.   |
|      | مُتَهَاوِن  | neglectful.   |            |              |
| VI.  | مُنْكَحَرِف | deviating.    | مُنْدَرَس  | obliterated. |
|      | مُنْخَفِض   | lowered.      | مُنْكَصِر  | limited.     |
| VII. | مُحْتَرِس   | precautious.  | مُخْتَلِف  | different.   |
|      | مُكْتَفٍ    | content.      | مُكْتَتِب  | vexatious.   |
|      | مُسْتَوٍ    | straight.     | مُعْتَدِل  | temperate.   |
|      | مُتَضِع     | humble.       |            |              |

|       |                           |                        |
|-------|---------------------------|------------------------|
| VIII. | مُسَوَّدَ black.          | مُكَمَّدَ opaque.      |
|       | مُكَمَّرَ red.            |                        |
| IX.   | مُسْتَكِيلَ impossible.   | مُسْتَدِيرَ round.     |
|       | مُسْتَعِدَّ ready.        | مُسْتَبِدَّ arbitrary. |
|       | مُسْتَقِيمَ upright.      | مُسْتَهْزِئَ scornful. |
| X.    | مُكْدَرِدَبَ hump-backed. |                        |

Note: Very few of these adjectives are formed from the first and second derived forms, because most of the latter are transitive.

Measures:

فَعَّلَ

|                           |                         |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُرْفَرَفَ fluttering.    | مُتَمَتِّمَ stammering. |
| مُوسِّسَ suggesting evil. |                         |

I تَفَعَّلَ

|                             |                           |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| مُتَفَلِّسَ philosophizing. | مُتَفَطِّرَ self-admirer. |
| مُتَلَلِّئَ shining.        |                           |

II اِفْعَلَّلَ

|                             |                       |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
| مُكْفَهَّرَ intensely dark. | مُشْمَخِرَ very high. |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------|

### The Comparison of Adjectives.

THE NOUN OF SUPERIORITY. اِسْمُ اَلْفَضِيلِ

Both the Comparative and Superlative degrees are formed from trilateral verbs on the measure اَفْعَلَّ.

The Comparative degree is expressed by مِنْ following the measure; as

More accomplished than اَفْضَلُ مِنْ



The Superlative degree is expressed by prefixing the article to the measure, as **الْأَفْضَلُ**, or by putting the measure in construction with the noun qualified; as

He is a most accomplished man **هُوَ أَفْضَلُ رَجُلٍ**

When the article is prefixed to the measure it agrees with the noun in gender and number; as

The most excellent men **الرِّجَالُ الْأَفْضَلُ**

The most handsome women **النِّسَاءُ الْكُسْنِيَّاتُ**

The two richest men **الرَّجُلَانِ الْأَغْنِيَانِ**

The largest tree **الشَّجَرَةُ الْكُبْرَى**

When in construction with a definite noun, it may agree with the noun in gender and number or remain masculine singular.

Hind is the most accomplished of women

**عِنْدَ أَفْضَلِ النِّسَاءِ** or **هِنْدٌ فَضْلَى النِّسَاءِ**

These are the two tallest men

**هَذَانِ أَطْوَلُ الرِّجَالِ** or **هَذَانِ أَطْوَلَا الرِّجَالِ**

These are the worst men

**هَؤُلَاءِ أَدْنِيَاءُ النَّاسِ** or **هَؤُلَاءِ أَدْنَى النَّاسِ**

(The fem. of **أَفْعَلُ** is **فُعْلَى**).

Comparatives formed from transitive verbs and verbs of loving, hating, etc. prefix the preposition **لِ** to the object; as

He seeks knowledge more  
than you

**هُوَ أَطْلَبُ لِلْعِلْمِ مِنْكَ**

When formed from verbs of knowing etc. they take the preposition ب with the object; as

He knows the truth better  
than you

هُوَ أَعْرَفُ بِالْحَقِّ مِنْكُمْ

Comparatives formed from intransitive verbs retain their preposition; as

هُوَ أَزْهَدُ فِي الدُّنْيَا وَأَسْرَعُ إِلَى الْخَيْرِ وَأَبْعَدُ عَنِ الشَّرِّ وَأَقْرَبُ مِنَ الْحَقِّ وَأَصْبِرُ عَلَى النَّوَائِبِ.

He is more abstemious in worldly things, prompter to good, further from sin, nearer the truth, and more patient in afflictions.

Some adjectives from the very nature of the ideas they express do not admit of comparison, as those derived from the verbs.

To die مَاتَ to pass away فَنِيَ to live حَيِيَ.

Adjectives which express colour, defect, and points of beauty do not admit of comparison on this measure because they have already the form أَفْعُل without reference to degree.

Defective Verbs الْأَفْعَالُ النَّاقِصَةُ as كَانَ, أَمْسَ, صَارَ and verbs which do not admit of conjugation as لَيْسَ, حَبَدًا do not form adjectives of comparison.

The Noun of Superiority has invariably the meaning of the Noun of Agent.

Verbs of more than three letters and those which express colour, defect etc. take the Noun of Action in

the accusative case preceded by an adjective derived from another verb to express comparison; as

He is speedier than they, هُوَ أَشَدُّ إِسْرَاعًا مِنْهُمْ  
and less diligent than his brother. وَأَقْلُّ إِجْتِهَادًا مِنْ أَخِيهِ

He is a keener observer  
than his companions. وَأَدَقُّ مُلَاحَظَةً مِنْ رَفَقَائِهِ

He is more famous than his  
parents. هُوَ أَوْسَعُ شُهْرَةً مِنَ وَالِدَيْهِ

He is nearer to God, of quicker perception than others  
and of more refined manners.

هُوَ أَكْثَرُ إِقْتِرَابًا إِلَى اللَّهِ، وَأَسْرَعُ إِدْرَاكًا مِنْ سِوَاهِ وَأَدْنَى إِقْتِرَابًا  
مِنَ الْأَدَبِ.

He is redder (or blacker) and lamer.

هُوَ أَشَدُّ حُمْرَةً (أَوْ سَوَادًا) وَأَكْثَرُ عَرَجًا.

### THE NOUN OF EXCESS. اِسْمُ الْمُبَالَغَةِ

This derived noun has the meaning of the Noun of Agent to which is added the idea of intensity.

It has various measures, the most important of which are the following:

|           |         |           |           |           |           |
|-----------|---------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| فَعْلَةٌ  | فَعِيلٌ | فَعُولٌ   | فَعِيلٌ   | فَعَالَةٌ | فَعَّالٌ  |
| فَاعِلَةٌ | فُعُلٌ  | مِفْعِيلٌ | مِفْعَالٌ | فَعِلٌ    | فَاعُولٌ  |
|           |         |           |           |           | فَعُولَةٌ |

|          |               |          |                |
|----------|---------------|----------|----------------|
| غَفَّارٌ | the Pardoner. | تَوَّابٌ | the Forgiving. |
| تَهَارٌ  | „ Subduer.    | بَسَّامٌ | smiling.       |

فَيَّاض the Bountiful.

جَوَّال „ traveller.

خَوَّان „ treacherous.

غَدَّار „

(See glossary).

بَرَّاق bright.

عَلَّام learned.

مَنَّان benefactor.

صَوَّام fasting person.

### THE MEASURES فَعُول and فَعِيل

These two forms are common to the Noun of Agent and Noun of Object; so that at one time they would denote activity; as

patient صَابِر = صَبُور sick مَرِيض

and at another passivity; as

an apostle رَسُول wounded جَرِيح

When فَعُول indicates the Noun of Agent and فَعِيل the Noun of Object and are accompanied by their substantives they have the same form for masculine and feminine; as

a wounded man رَجُلٌ جَرِيح a patient man رَجُلٌ صَبُور  
 „ „ woman اِمْرَاةٌ جَرِيح „ „ woman اِمْرَاةٌ صَبُور

but if فَعُول indicates the Noun of Object and فَعِيل the Noun of Agent, or if their nouns are not mentioned they add ة for the feminine; as

a woman intrusted with an important mission اِمْرَاةٌ رَسُوْلَةٌ

a sick woman اِمْرَاةٌ مَرِيضَةٌ

Adjectives which are peculiar to the feminine fall under this rule, and some adjectives on the measure فَاعِل; as

|           |         |                    |         |      |        |
|-----------|---------|--------------------|---------|------|--------|
| pregnant  | حَامِل  | barren             | عَاقِر  | thin | ضَامِر |
| wet nurse | مُرْضِع | mother with infant | مُطْفِل |      |        |

## THE NOUN OF OBJECT OR PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.

### إِسْمُ الْمَفْعُولِ

Triliterals have the measure مَفْعُول; as

|          |             |          |          |          |           |
|----------|-------------|----------|----------|----------|-----------|
| مَضْرُوب | beaten      | مَكْنُوب | loved    | مَرْوِي  | reported  |
| مَقْتُول | killed      | مَنْظُور | seen     | مَبْلُول | wet       |
| مَرْكُوب | ridden      | مَدْفُون | buried   | مَمْدُود | stretched |
| مَسْئُول | responsible | مَوْعُود | promised | مَأْثُور | tracked   |
|          | asked       | مَرْمِي  | thrown   | مَرْضِي  | pleased   |
| مَوْقِي  | protected   | مَبِيع   | sold     | مَقُول   | spoken    |
| مَطْوِي  | folded      | مَغْرُور | raided   |          |           |
| مَضُون   | guarded     |          |          |          |           |

In all other forms of the verb the Noun of Object follows the measure of the Noun of Agent, substituting َ for the ِ of the penultimate consonant; as

|             |          |            |            |
|-------------|----------|------------|------------|
| مُهَدَّب    | educated | مُصَالَح   | reconciled |
| مُتَرَجِّى  | hoped    | مُتَقَاضِى | demanding  |
| مُسْتَعْدَم | employed | مُصْلَح    | rectified  |
|             |          | مُكْتَسَب  | gained     |



The measure **فَعَلَ** has sometimes the meaning of the Noun of Object:

|        |                |           |             |
|--------|----------------|-----------|-------------|
| وَلَدَ | child.         | مَوْلُودٌ | born.       |
| عَدَدٌ | number.        | مَعْدُودٌ | counted.    |
| سَلَبٌ | booty.         | مَسْلُوبٌ | spoiled.    |
| جَلَبٌ | imported goods | مَجْلُوبٌ | brought.    |
| قَدَرٌ | fate           | مَقْدُورٌ | determined. |
| نَسَقٌ | order          | مَنْسُوقٌ | arranged.   |

When the Noun of Object is formed from the names of the members of the body, it means to be diseased in that member; as

|                 |                  |               |                   |
|-----------------|------------------|---------------|-------------------|
| colic           | بَطْنٌ مَبْطُونٌ | heart disease | مَقْرُودٌ فُؤَادٌ |
| chest complaint | مَصْدُورٌ صَدْرٌ |               |                   |

## THE NOUN OF PLACE AND TIME.

### إِسْمُ الْمَكَانِ وَالزَّمَانِ

The Noun of Place and Time is formed from both transitive and intransitive verbs.

Triliterals have the measure **مَفْعَل** the same as the Noun of Action with م: —

|          |            |          |                     |
|----------|------------|----------|---------------------|
| مَنْجَى  | escape     | مَدْخَنٌ | chimney             |
| مَأْوَى  | settlement | مَزَارٌ  | place of pilgrimage |
| مَجَازٌ  | bridge     | مَصَبٌ   | mouth of a river    |
| مَطْبَخٌ | kitchen    | مَغْطَسٌ | wash-basin          |
| مَذْبَحٌ | altar      | مَحْفَلٌ | meeting-place       |

|          |                 |          |                 |
|----------|-----------------|----------|-----------------|
| مَلْجَأٌ | refuge.         | مَقْعَدٌ | seat            |
| مَرْعَى  | pasture         | مَثْنَى  | fold            |
| مَنْبَعٌ | source          | مَنَامٌ  | sleep           |
| مَخْرَجٌ | exit            | مَكْتَبٌ | study           |
| مَحْطٌ   | platform        | مَقْتَلٌ | slaughter-house |
| مَقَامٌ  | standing        | مَرَصِدٌ | observatory     |
| مَرْسَعٌ | hall, theatre   | مَجْمَعٌ | gathering-place |
| مَشْرَبٌ | watering trough | مَقَرٌّ  | abode           |
| مَنْهَلٌ | „ for camels    | مَنْظَرٌ | sight           |
| مَصْدَرٌ | source          |          |                 |

The ع of the measure is vowelled with َ in verbs whose first radical is weak **الْمُعْتَلَّةُ الْفَاءُ** and in verbs whose ع in the Aorist is sound and vowelled with َ as;

|                     |               |                 |          |
|---------------------|---------------|-----------------|----------|
| a place             | مَوْضِعٌ      | a place of mire | مَوْحِلٌ |
| „ „ of standing     | مَوْقِفٌ      | „ „ aimed at    | مَقْصِدٌ |
| „ „ „ putting       | مَوْضِعٌ      | „ „ of fracture | مَكْسِرٌ |
| „ „ „ lying cattle  | مَرِيضٌ       | „ „ „ falling   | مَوْقِعٌ |
| „ „ „ exhibition    | مَعْرُضٌ      | „ „ „ gaming    |          |
| „ „ „ sitting       |               | by lots         | مَيْسِرٌ |
| (assembly) مَجْلِسٌ | „ „ „ smiling |                 | مَسِيْمٌ |

Some nouns take َ although the ع of the Aorist has ِ; as

Time or place of

|                     |          |         |          |
|---------------------|----------|---------|----------|
| Ascent              | مَطْلِعٌ | sunset  | مَغْرِبٌ |
| Place of Pilgrimage | مَنْسِكٌ | sunrise | مَشْرِقٌ |

|                        |         |               |         |
|------------------------|---------|---------------|---------|
| prostration in prayer, |         | residence     | مَسْكَن |
| mosque                 | مَسْجِد | growing place |         |
| slaughter              | مَبْجَز | (plant)       | مَنْبِت |
| falling (anything)     | مَسْقُط | separation    | مَفْرَق |

The plural is formed by inserting ا after the second radical and vowelling the following letter with -; as

|              |          |          |          |
|--------------|----------|----------|----------|
| refuges      | مَآوٍ    | pastures | مَرَاعٍ  |
| goings forth | مَخَارِج | altars   | مَذَابِج |

The affix ة is dropped.

A ة is sometimes added to the measure to express abundance of the thing implied; as

A place abounding in

|            |        |            |        |            |        |
|------------|--------|------------|--------|------------|--------|
| مَكْتَبَةٌ | books  | مَآسِدَةٌ  | lions  | مَفْعَاةٌ  | snakes |
| مَضْبَعَةٌ | hyenas | مَقْبَرَةٌ | graves | مَذَابَّةٌ | wolves |

At other times the ة has no special signification; as

|                           |            |                      |            |
|---------------------------|------------|----------------------|------------|
| Halting place (residence) | مَنْزِلَةٌ | cave                 | مَغَارَةٌ  |
| on the right hand         | مَيْمَنَةٌ | destruction (desert) | مَهْلَكَةٌ |
| on the left hand          | مَيْسَرَةٌ | light-house          | مَنَارَةٌ  |
| court of judgment         | مَحْكَمَةٌ | station              | مَحْطَةٌ   |
| school                    | مَدْرَسَةٌ |                      |            |

The following are exceptional: —

|                              |                |
|------------------------------|----------------|
| Time of birth                | وَلَدَ مِيلَاد |
| for performance of an action | مِيقَات        |
| appointed time or place      | مِيعَاد        |
| for fulfillment of promise   |                |

From verbs of more than three letters it is formed  
as the Noun of Action with م: —

|                 |             |                         |           |
|-----------------|-------------|-------------------------|-----------|
| place (abode)   | مَقَام      | departure               | مُنْصَرَف |
| hospital        | مُسْتَشْفَى | gathered together, room | مُجْتَمِع |
| prayer (Church) | مُصَلَّى    | meeting-place           | مُلْتَقَى |
| abode           | مُسْتَقَرَّ | slope                   | مُنْكَدَر |

### NOUN OF INSTRUMENT. اِسْمُ الْآلَةِ

The Noun of Instrument is applied to anything which  
is used in performing the action of the verb; as

bellows نَفَخَ from مِنفَاخ to blow

curtain سَتَرَ ,, سِتَار ,, cover

It is formed from derived and primitive nouns.

The derived nouns are taken from trilateral transitive  
verbs only and have three regular measures: —

مِفْعَل I      مِفْعَال II      مِفْعَلَة III

The plural is formed in the same manner as the  
Noun of Place and Time, i.e. by inserting ا after the  
second radical and vowing the third with َ :

The plural of مِفْعَل and مِفْعَلَة is مَفَاعِل

The plural ,, مِفْعَال is مَفَاعِيل

مِفْعَل

مِسْعَر fire-brand.

مِكْبَس hand-press.

مِقْبَض handle.

مِقْلَى frying-pan.

مِقْص scissors.

مِرْزُون provision-bag.

|            |                  |            |                |
|------------|------------------|------------|----------------|
| مِلْقَطٌ   | tongs.           | مِنْخَسٌ   | goad, spur.    |
| مِخْقَنٌ   | syringe.         | مِسْنٌ     | grind-stone.   |
| مِفْعَالٌ  |                  |            |                |
| مِرْمَارٌ  | flute.           | مِقْدَافٌ  | oar.           |
| مِسْبَارٌ  | nail.            | مِسْبَارٌ  | probe.         |
| مِخْرَاثٌ  | plough.          | مِقْرَاضٌ  | scissors.      |
| مِنْفَاحٌ  | bellows.         | مِفْتَاحٌ  | key.           |
| مِشْرَاطٌ  | lancet, scalpel. |            |                |
| مِفْعَلَةٌ |                  |            |                |
| مِقْلَبَةٌ | pen-case.        | مِغْرَفَةٌ | ladle.         |
| مِسْطَرَةٌ | ruler.           | مِخْرَطَةٌ | lathe.         |
| مِظَلَّةٌ  | umbrella.        | مِصِيدَةٌ  | trap.          |
| مِنْطَقَةٌ | girdle, belt.    | مِرْمَاةٌ  | small arrows.  |
| مِصْفَاةٌ  | filter.          | مِرْمَلَةٌ | sand-sifter.   |
| مِشْنَقَةٌ | gallows.         | مِخْبَرَةٌ | inkstand.      |
| مِخْدَةٌ   | pillow.          | مِرْآةٌ    | looking-glass. |

The following are primitive nouns:

|              |                    |             |             |
|--------------|--------------------|-------------|-------------|
| حَرْبَةٌ     | spear.             | شَبَكَةٌ    | net.        |
| مُخْلٌ       | lever, crow-bar.   | نِيرٌ       | yoke.       |
| حَدَّاءَةٌ   | double headed axe. | سَهْمٌ      | arrow.      |
| دَلْوٌ       | bucket.            | فَخٌّ       | trap.       |
| قُفْلٌ       | lock               | قِرْبَةٌ    | water-skin. |
| طَبْلٌ       | drum               | كَلْبَتَانٌ | pincers.    |
| مَنْجَنِيْقٌ | catapult.          |             |             |



## THE PRIMITIVE NOUN. الْأَسْمُ الْأَجَامِدِ

The Primitive Noun is one which cannot be referred to any verbal root; it may have three, four, or five letters.

There are ten measures of primitive trilateral nouns:

|              |                  |       |                 |
|--------------|------------------|-------|-----------------|
| Camel        | فِعْلٌ إِبِلٌ 6  | Heart | فَعْلٌ قَلْبٌ 1 |
| Shoulder     | فَعْلٌ كَتِفٌ 7  | Lock  | فُعْلٌ قُفْلٌ 2 |
| Grapes       | فَعْلٌ عِنَبٌ 8  | Load  | فِعْلٌ حِمْلٌ 3 |
| Arm          | فَعْلٌ عَضْدٌ 9  | Horse | فَعْلٌ فَرَسٌ 4 |
| Sparrow-hawk | فَعْلٌ صُرَدٌ 10 | Neck  | فُعْلٌ عُنُقٌ 5 |

A letter may be dropped from the primitive trilateral noun, as أَبٌ for أَبُو; the dropped letter is generally و, as in أَخٌ, أَبٌ, إِبْنٌ, حَمٌ, دَمٌ, إِسْمٌ, عَدٌ; it may, however, be ه or ي, as يَدٌ يَدَيَّ, إِسْتَسَتْه, فَمٌ فَوْهٌ; the dropped letter is replaced by ا (ā) or ة, as سَنَةٌ, صَلَةٌ, إِبْنٌ, إِسْمٌ.

## THE GENDER OF NOUNS. الْجِنْسُ

Nouns are of two genders:

I Masculine مُدَكَّرٌ, II Feminine مُؤَنَّثٌ.

Feminine Nouns are of two kinds:

(a) Animate مُؤَنَّثٌ حَقِيقِيٌّ, as اِمْرَأَةٌ woman.

(b) Inanimate مُؤَنَّثٌ مَجَارِيٌّ or مُؤَنَّثٌ حَقِيقِيٌّ as الشَّمْسُ the Sun.

Feminine Nouns are further subdivided into:

I Feminine by form مُؤَنَّثٌ لَفْظِيًّا, having as their suffixes ة, آ, or ي (signs of feminine); as

|          |           |         |         |        |           |
|----------|-----------|---------|---------|--------|-----------|
| Mercy    | رَحْمَةٌ  | Claim   | دَعْوَى | Desert | صَحْرَاءُ |
| Virtuous | فَاضِلَةٌ | Drunken | سَكْرَى | Red    | حُمْرَاءُ |

II Feminine by meaning مُؤَنَّثٌ مَعْنَوِيًّا; as

|       |        |      |        |      |          |
|-------|--------|------|--------|------|----------|
| Earth | أَرْضٌ | Soul | نَفْسٌ | Mary | مَرْيَمٌ |
|-------|--------|------|--------|------|----------|

## FEMININE NOUNS. الْأَسْمَاءُ الْمَوْثِقَةُ

Feminine Nouns comprise:

I All nouns ending with any of the three signs of the feminine (1) ة, (2) آ, and (3) ي, except they be masculine proper nouns.

(1) Nouns and Adjectives made feminine by ة are:

(a) The Noun of Agent, as جَاهِلَةٌ جَاهِلٌ ignorant.

(b) All measures of the Noun of Attribute except سَيِّدَةٌ سَيِّدٌ lord, and فَعْلَانٌ and أَفْعَلٌ, as فَرِحَةٌ فَرِحَ joyful (but حُمْرَاءُ أَحْمَرٌ red سَكْرَى سَكْرَانٌ drunken).

(c) Nouns on the measure فَعِيلٌ indicating the Noun of Agent, as سَرِيعَةٌ سَرِيعٌ hasty كَرِيمَةٌ كَرِيمٌ generous.

(d) The Noun of Object, as مَكْسُورَةٌ مَكْسُورٌ broken مَبِيعَةٌ مَبِيعٌ sold.

(e) Nouns on the measure فَعُولٌ indicating the Noun of Object, as رَسُولَةٌ رَسُولٌ apostle رَكُوبَةٌ رَكُوبٌ beast for riding.

(f) Some common Nouns, as كَلْبَةٌ كَلْب dog  
 غَزَالَةٌ غَزَال gazelle مَلِكَةٌ مَلِك king.

Note. Irregular Plurals of irrational objects are treated as feminine singular; as

|                    |                             |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|
| Hard hearts        | قُلُوبٌ قَاسِيَةٌ           |
| Stern judges       | قُضَاةٌ قَسَاةٌ             |
| Capable teachers   | مُعَلِّمُونَ مُسْتَعِدُّونَ |
| Beautiful books    | كُتُبٌ جَمِيلَةٌ            |
| Capable intellects | عُقُولٌ مُسْتَعِدَّةٌ       |
| Strong men         | رِجَالٌ أَقْوِيَاءُ         |

(2) Nouns on the measure أَفْعَلٌ signifying colour or defect are made feminine by آء, i. e. they take the measure فَعْلَاءُ; as

|             |                    |     |                    |
|-------------|--------------------|-----|--------------------|
| Yellow      | أَصْفَرٌ صَفْرَاءُ | Red | أَحْمَرٌ حُمْرَاءُ |
| Hump-backed | أَحْدَبٌ حَدَبَاءُ |     |                    |

(3) Nouns on the measure أَفْعَلٌ, having the signification of the superlative degree, are made feminine by يَ, i. e. they take the measure فُعْلَى, as

|                |                        |               |                        |
|----------------|------------------------|---------------|------------------------|
| Most excellent | الْأَفْضَلُ الْفُضْلَى | Most handsome | الْأَحْسَنُ الْحُسْنَى |
| Greatest       | الْأَعْظَمُ الْعُظْمَى | Greatest      | الْأَكْبَرُ الْكُبْرَى |
| First          | الْأَوَّلُ الْأُولَى   | Smallest      | الْأَصْغَرُ الصُّغْرَى |
| *Worse         | الْأَدْنَى الدُّنْيَى  |               |                        |

\*When the يَ is preceded by اَ it is written اِ, as

دُنْيَا, غُلْيَا. Exceptions are اَلْخُلْيَا for اَلْخُلْوَى the sweetest اَلْقَصْوَى for اَلْقَصِيَا the farthest.

## II Names of females; as

Mary مَرْيَمَ Hind هِنْدَ Zaynab زَيْنَبَ

## III Common nouns and adjectives which denote females, as

|           |         |              |        |
|-----------|---------|--------------|--------|
| Wet-nurse | مُرْضِع | Divorced     | طَالِق |
| Pregnant  | حُبْلَى | Giving birth | وَلَدٌ |
| Mother    | أُم     | Sister       | أُخْتُ |

## IV Names of countries, towns and tribes; as

|           |           |       |        |
|-----------|-----------|-------|--------|
| Jerusalem | الْقُدْسُ | Jaffa | يَافَا |
| Syria     | الشَّامُ  | Egypt | مِصْرُ |
| Koreish   | قُرَيْشُ  |       |        |

## V Names of fire and winds; as

|                         |                          |            |                |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|------------|----------------|
| Wind                    | رِيحٌ                    | North wind | شَمَالٌ        |
| Hot South-westerly wind | هَيْفٌ                   | South wind | جَنُوبٌ        |
| Pestilential hot wind   | سَبُومٌ                  | East wind  | صَبَا          |
| Hot night wind          | حَرُورٌ                  | West wind  | دَبُورٌ        |
| Blazing fire            | سَعِيرٌ, لَاطِى, صَلَاةٌ | Fire       | فَارٌ          |
|                         |                          | Hell-fire  | سَقَرٌ جَحِيمٌ |

## VI Double members of the body; as

|             |        |      |        |      |         |
|-------------|--------|------|--------|------|---------|
| Heel        | عَقِبٌ | Foot | رَجْلٌ | Hand | يَدٌ    |
| Palm (hand) | كَفٌّ  | Ear  | أُذُنٌ | Arm  | ذِرَاعٌ |
| Shoulder    | كَتِفٌ | Eye  | عَيْنٌ | Hip  | وَرِكٌ  |

also

|       |       |      |       |
|-------|-------|------|-------|
| Tooth | سِنَّ | Womb | رَحِم |
| Liver | كَبِد | Rib  | صِلَع |

Exceptions are:

|        |         |       |         |      |       |
|--------|---------|-------|---------|------|-------|
| Cheek  | خَدَّ   | Elbow | مَرْفِق | Side | جَنْب |
| Finger | إِصْبَع | Maw   | كَرْش   |      |       |

The following nouns are of the feminine gender although they have a masculine termination:

|                           |         |                |                         |
|---------------------------|---------|----------------|-------------------------|
| Wine                      | خَمَر   | Scorpion       | عَقْرَب                 |
| Well                      | بَيْتْر | Hare           | أَرْنَب                 |
| Cup                       | كَاس    | Eye            | عَيْن                   |
| House                     | دَار    | Water-wheel    | مَنْجَنُون              |
| Bucket                    | دَلْو   | Catapult       | مَنْجَنِيْق             |
| Leopard                   | فَهْد   | Sun            | الشَّمْس                |
| Viper                     | أَفْعَى | Staff          | عَصَا                   |
| Destination (traveller's) | نَوَى   | Shoe           | نَعْل                   |
| Bow                       | قَوْس   | Razor          | مُوسَى <i>fem. ter.</i> |
| Ship                      | فُلْكَ  | Hyena          | ضَبْع                   |
| Earth                     | أَرْض   | Metre (Poetry) | عَرُوض                  |
| Soul                      | نَفْس   | Coat of mail   | دِرْع                   |
| Right hand, oath          | يَمِين  | Mill           | رَحَى <i>fem. ter.</i>  |
| Market                    | سُوق    | Eagle          | عُقَاب                  |
| Axe                       | فَأْس   | War            | حَرْب                   |
|                           |         | Paradise       | الْفِرْدَوْس            |



The following nouns may be used either in the masculine or feminine gender:

|                         |          |              |               |
|-------------------------|----------|--------------|---------------|
| Corn measure            | صَاع     | Arm          | عَضْد         |
| Hinder-part             | عَجَز    | Booth, shop  | حَانُوت       |
| Horse, mare             | فَرَس    | Lance        | رُمَح         |
| Nape of Neck            | قَفَا    | Knife        | سِكِّين       |
| Mirage                  | آل       | Peace        | سِلْم         |
| Musk                    | مِسْك    | Heaven, sky  | سَّمَاء       |
| Salt                    | مِلْح    | Iron pestle  | فِهْر         |
| Letters of the alphabet |          | White honey  | صَرْب         |
| Article of dress        | إِزَار   | Honey        | عَسَل         |
| State, Condition        | حَال     | Spider       | عَنْكَبُوت    |
| Natural disposition     | طِبَاع   | Cooking-pot  | قَدْر         |
| Night-journey           | سُرَى    | Shin-bone    | كِرَاع        |
| Power                   | سُلْطَان | Night        | لَيْل         |
| Thumb or great toe      | إِبْهَام | Intestine    | مَعَى , مَعَى |
| Peace, reconciliation   | صُلْح    | Large bucket | ذَنْوَب       |
| Forenoon                | ضَحَى    | Breast       | تَدَى         |
| Wedding                 | عُرْس    | Wing         | جِنَاح        |
| Neck                    | عُنُق    | Way          | سَبِيل        |
| Tongue                  | لِسَان   | Weapon       | سِلَاح        |
| Fox                     | ثَعْلَب  | Barley       | شَعِير        |
| Well                    | قَلِيب   | Way          | صِرَاط        |
| Road                    | طَرِيق   | Gold         | ذَهَب         |

## NUMBER. اَلْعَدَدُ

There are three Numbers:

- |             |          |
|-------------|----------|
| I. Singular | مُفْرَدٌ |
| II. Dual    | مُثَنَّى |
| III. Plural | جَمْعٌ   |

### THE DUAL.

The dual adds اَنِ to the singular for the nominative, and يَنِ for the genitive, as two men رَجُلَانِ, رَجُلَيْنِ.

Nouns of three letters, ending with ا or ي, restore the ا or ي to its original form; as

|       |                 |      |                 |
|-------|-----------------|------|-----------------|
| Staff | عَصَا عَصَوَانِ | Mill | رَحَى رَحَيَانِ |
| Youth | فَتَى فَتَيَانِ |      |                 |

If the ا or ي occurs after the third letter it is changed to ي; as

|          |                       |                   |                     |
|----------|-----------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| Bustard  | حُبَارَى حُبَارَيَانِ | Butt for shooting | مَرْمَى مَرْمَيَانِ |
| Pregnant | حُبْلَى حُبْلَيَانِ   |                   |                     |

Nouns ending with آ (sign of fem.) change the Hemzeh into و; as

|     |                        |        |                        |
|-----|------------------------|--------|------------------------|
| Red | حُمْرَاءَ حُمْرَاوَانِ | Desert | صَحْرَاءَ صَحْرَاوَانِ |
|-----|------------------------|--------|------------------------|

but if the آ is a root letter it must be left; as

Good reader      قَرَّاءَ قَرَّاءَانِ

If the آ is not the sign of fem. it may be changed into و, or left; as

Dress كِسَاءٍ كِسَاءَانِ كِسَاوَانِ Heaven سَمَاءٍ سَمَاءَانِ سَمَاوَانِ  
Mantle رِدَاءٍ رِدَاءَانِ رِدَاوَانِ

Triliteral nouns which have dropped a weak letter restore it in the dual if it is restored when joined to a pronoun; as

Brother أَخٌ أَخَوَانِ أَخَاوَانِ Hand يَدٌ يَدَانِ يَدَاوَانِ  
Father أَبٌ أَبَوَانِ أَبَاوَانِ Blood دَمٌ دَمَكِ دَمَانِ  
Father-in-law حَمٌ حَمَوَانِ حَمَاوَانِ

### THE PLURAL. الْجَمْعُ

The Plural is of two kinds:

I. Regular جَمْعٌ سَالِمٌ.

II. Irregular or Broken جَمْعٌ مُكْسَرٌ.

The Regular Plural is again divided into:

I. The Regular Masculine Plural جَمْعٌ الْمَذَكَّرِ السَّالِمِ

II. The Regular Feminine Plural جَمْعٌ الْمَوْنَتِ السَّالِمِ

The Regular Plural is thus called because the singular form remains unchanged; the omission of ة (sign of fem.) is not considered as breaking the form.

### THE REGULAR MASCULINE PLURAL.

The Regular Masculine Plural is formed by adding وَنٌ to the singular for the nominative case, and يْنَ for the accusative and genitive cases; as

Believers مُؤْمِنٌ مُؤْمِنُونَ مُؤْمِنِينَ

Nouns and adjectives which may take the regular masculine plural are:

I. The Proper Noun **اَلْعَلَمُ** when

(a) rational (b) void of ة (fem) (c) not a compound noun (as **عَبْدُ اَللّٰهِ**).

II. The Common Noun **اِسْمُ اَلْجِنْسِ** when

(a) rational (b) void of ة (fem) (c) in the diminutive form, as **رَجُلٌ رَّجِيْلٌ رَّجِيْلُوْنَ**.

III. Adjectives derived from verbs when

(a) rational (b) void of ة (fem) (c) not on the measures **اَفْعَلُ** feminine **فَعْلَاءُ** and **فَعْلَانُ** feminine **فَعْلَى** nor on the measures **فَعِيْلٌ** and **فَعُوْلٌ** when the sing. form of masculine and feminine is the same.

The following nouns are exceptions:

|           |                            |          |                        |
|-----------|----------------------------|----------|------------------------|
| The Earth | <b>اَرْضُ اَرْضُوْنَ</b>   | Children | <b>اِبْنُ بَنُوْنَ</b> |
| Worlds    | <b>عَالَمُ عَالَمُوْنَ</b> | Years    | <b>سَنَةُ سِنُوْنَ</b> |
| Relations | <b>اَهْلُ اَهْلُوْنَ</b>   | Hundreds | <b>مِئَةُ مِثْوَنَ</b> |

and **عِشْرُوْنَ** to **تِسْعُوْنَ**, twenty, thirty to ninety.

Derived Adjectives whose final letter is **ى** or **ي** drop the weak letter; and if the preceding vowel is **ـِ** this **ـِ** remains, but, if not, it agrees with the following letter; as

Proper Name

**مُصْطَفَى مُصْطَفَوْنَ**

One who exacts to the full

**مُتَوَفَّى مُتَوَفَوْنَ**

Archer

**رَامِي رَامُوْنَ**

## THE REGULAR FEMININE PLURAL.

The Regular Feminine Plural is formed by adding **آت** to the singular; the **ة** sign of feminine when present, is dropped.

Nouns which take the regular feminine plural are:

I. Proper names of women; as **فَاطِمَةُ فَاطِمَات**.

II. Every noun or adjective ending with **ة** whether masculine or feminine; as

Proper Name **طَلْحَةَ طَلْحَات**

A very learned man **عَلَّامَةُ عَلَّامَات**

An ignorant woman **جَاهِلَةُ جَاهِلَات**

A wise woman **حَكِيمَةُ حَكِيمَات**

III. Nouns ending with **ى** or **ة** signs of feminine except those on the measures **أَفْعَلُ فَعْلَى** fem. **فَعْلَانُ** fem. **نَعْلَاءُ**; as

The best **أَفْضَلُي أَلْفُضَلَيَات**

Inner part of hoof **خَلْقَاءُ خَلْقَاوَات**

Deserts **صَحْرَاءُ صَحْرَاوَات** Deserts **بَيْدَاءُ بَيْدَاوَات**

IV. Such common nouns as refer to irrational beings and inanimate objects when in the diminutive form; as

Small coins **دِرْهَمُ دُرَيْهَمَات** Small camels **جَمَلُ جُمَيْلَات**

V. Adjectives referring to irrational beings of the male sex, as

Neighing horses **خَيْلُ صَاهِلَات** Wild beasts **وَحُوشُ مُفْتَرِسَات**



Departing ones      مُنْطَلِقَات

When the common noun is mentioned with the adjective the ة is added to the singular form of the adjective; as

Neighing horses      خَيْلٌ صَاهِلَةٌ      Departing camels      جِمَالٌ مُنْطَلِقَةٌ

Wild beasts      وَحُوشٌ مُفْتَرِسَةٌ      Open eyes      عَيْنُونَ مَفْتُوحَةٌ

Listening ears      آذَانٌ مُصْغِيَةٌ

VI. The Noun of Action consisting of more than three letters; as

Offerings      تَقْدِيْمَات      Supplications      تَوْسَلَات

Confessions      اِعْتِرَافَات

VII. Every foreign noun of which no other form of plural is known; as

Pasha      بَاشَا بَاشَرَات      Telegrams      تَلِغْرَافَات

Primitive nouns which have not their middle radical weak and are on the measure فَعْلَةٌ take َ on the ع in the plural; as

Page, face of      Rose      وَرْدَةٌ وَرَدَات

anything      صَنْفَحَةٌ صَفَحَات

but if the ع is weak it is left unvowelled; as

Meadow      رَوْضَةٌ رَوْضَات      Egg      بَيْضَةٌ بَيْضَات

Nut      جَوْرَةٌ جَوْرَات

If the noun is on the measure فُعْلَةٌ, it may be left unvowelled; as

Darkness      ظُلْمَةٌ ظُلُمَات      Piece      قِطْعَةٌ قِطْعَات

or, it may have a vowel homogeneous to the vowel preceding, as **ظُلُمَاتٍ قِطَعَاتٍ**.

The following take the regular feminine plural although not coming under the rules previously stated.

I. The words:

|               |          |      |           |
|---------------|----------|------|-----------|
| Heaven        | سَّمَاءَ | Bath | حَمَّامٍ  |
| Judicial roll | سِجِّيلٍ | Tent | سَرَادِقٍ |

II. **إِبْنِ عَرَسٍ**, **إِبْنِ آوَى** make their plurals:

|         |                |         |              |
|---------|----------------|---------|--------------|
| Weasels | بَنَاتُ عَرَسٍ | Jackals | بَنَاتُ آوَى |
|---------|----------------|---------|--------------|

III. **أُم** mother, if rational, takes **أُمَّهَاتٍ** for plural; if irrational, it takes **أُمَمَاتٍ**.

IV. Words preceded by **ذَاتُ** take **ذَوَاتُ** for plural; as

|         |                               |            |                           |
|---------|-------------------------------|------------|---------------------------|
| Hornets | <b>ذَوَاتُ الْأَذْنَابِ</b> , | Quadrupeds | <b>ذَوَاتُ أَرْبَعٍ</b> , |
|         | <b>ذَاتُ الذَّنَبِ</b>        |            | <b>ذَاتُ أَرْبَعٍ</b>     |

THE IRREGULAR OR BROKEN PLURAL.

**جَمْعُ التَّكْسِيرِ**

The Irregular Plural is formed by:

- (a) changing the vowels, as **أُسْدٌ أُسْدٌ** (plur.) lions.
- (b) rejecting letters, as **رُسُلٌ رُسُولٌ** (plur.) apostles.
- (c) adding letters, as **رَجُلٌ رِجَالٌ** (plur.) men.

There are twenty-nine measures of the irregular plural of substantives and adjectives derived from trilateral roots, and some nine measures of substantives and adjectives possessing four or more letters. A list

is given in the glossary with their singulars and meanings.

There are two other forms of the Irregular Plural namely:

(a). The Plural of Paucity جَمْعُ الْقِلَّةِ. (b). Plural of Multitude جَمْعُ الْكَثَرَةِ.

The Plural of Paucity indicates the numbers three to ten inclusive. It comprises:

(a). The Regular Plurals. (b). The following four measures of the Irregular Plurals.

|        |                         |       |                       |
|--------|-------------------------|-------|-----------------------|
| Ribs   | 1 أَفْعَلٌ أَضْلَعُ     | Lads  | 3 فِعْلَةٌ فِتْيَةٌ   |
| Loaves | 2 أَفْعَلَةٌ أَرْغَفَةٌ | Nails | 4 أَفْعَالٌ أَظْفَارُ |

The last measure is commonly found among the trilaterals. The first and last measures may be made plural again, then they come under the plural of multitude.

|      |                    |       |                      |
|------|--------------------|-------|----------------------|
| Ribs | أَضْلَعُ أَضَالِعُ | Nails | أَظْفَارُ أَظَافِيرُ |
|------|--------------------|-------|----------------------|

These two measures and their equivalents are called صِيغَةُ مُنْتَهَى الْجُمُوعِ.

When a noun has only one form of plural it necessarily indicates paucity and multitude; as

|                   |            |       |           |
|-------------------|------------|-------|-----------|
| Men               | رَجَالٌ    | Necks | أَعْنَاقُ |
| Hearts Affections | أَفْئِدَةٌ |       |           |

The Plural of Multitude indicates any number from ten to infinity.

## THE RELATIVE ADJECTIVE. النَّسَبَةُ

I. The Relative Adjective is formed by affixing **يَ** to the noun, after stripping it of the ة sign of fem. and the signs of dual and plural when present; as

Manly **رَجُلٌ رَجُلِيّ**      Belonging to the Kibla **الْقِبْلَةُ قِبْلِيّ**

Earthly **أَرْضٌ أَرْضِيّ**      Nazarene **نَاصِرَةٌ نَاصِرِيّ**

Solar **شَمْسٌ شَمْسِيّ**      Belonging to the two sacred cities  
(Mecca and Medina) **حَرَمَانٌ حَرَمِيّ**

Mental **عَقْلٌ عَقْلِيّ**      Belonging to al-Irakain  
(Basrah and Koofah) **الْعِرَاقَانِ عِرَاقِيّ**

Egyptian **مِصْرٌ مِصْرِيّ**      Belonging to Moslems **مُسْلِمُونَ مُسْلِمِيّ**

Domestic (house) **بَيْتٌ بَيْتِيّ**      Relating to dates **تَمْرٌ تَمْرِيّ**

From Mecca **مَكَّةٌ مَكِّيّ**      Ecclesiastical **الْكَنِيسَةُ كَنَسِيّ**

II. Singular Nouns with dual or plural forms (but not dual or plural significations) retain them; as

Hamdūn **حَمْدُونٌ حَمْدُونِيّ**      Zeidān **زَيْدَانٌ زَيْدَانِيّ**

Hamdān **حَمْدَانٌ حَمْدَانِيّ**      Zeidūn **زَيْدُونٌ زَيْدُونِيّ**

Anmar **أَنْمَارٌ أَنْمَارِيّ**

III. The Hemzeh of the feminine termination **ة** is changed into **و**, but if the Hemzeh represents an original weak letter such change is optional; as

Virgin **عَذْرَاءٌ عَذْرَاوِيّ**      Green **خَضْرَاءٌ خَضْرَاوِيّ**

Black beetle **خُنْفَسَاءٌ خُنْفَسَاوِيّ**      Red **حُمْرَاءٌ حُمْرَاوِيّ**

|         |                           |
|---------|---------------------------|
| Robe    | كِسَاءِ كِسَاوِي كِسَائِي |
| Heaven  | سَمَاءِ سَمَاوِي سَمَائِي |
| Garment | رِدَآءِ رِدَاوِي رِدَائِي |

IV. ا, ي (Aleph) or ي final, in a three or four lettered noun, is generally changed into و, and sometimes an ا is inserted before the و; the letter which precedes the و, is thereupon vowelled with َ; as

|           |                   |           |                              |
|-----------|-------------------|-----------|------------------------------|
| Youth     | فَتَى فَتَوِي     | Pregnant  | حُبْلَى حُبْلَوِي حُبْلَاوِي |
| Millstone | رَحَى رَحَوِي     | Sorrowful | شَحِي شَحَوِي or شَحِي       |
| Mote      | قَذَى قَذَوِي     | Judge     | قَاضِي or قَاضَوِي قَاضَوِي  |
| Staff     | عَصَى عَصَوِي     | High      | عَلِي عَلَوِي                |
| Meaning   | مَعْنَى مَعْنَوِي | Earth     | دُنْيَا دُنْيَوِي دُنْيَاوِي |

but if the ي be preceded by a sound letter silent no change occurs; as

Gazelle طَبْيِ طَبْيِي

V. ي when preceded by a silent weak letter is changed into و; as

|        |             |      |           |
|--------|-------------|------|-----------|
| Living | حَي حَيَوِي | Fold | طَي طَوِي |
|--------|-------------|------|-----------|

VI. ا, ي (Aleph), and ي are dropped when they occur after the fourth letter, and when the second letter of a four lettered noun is vowelled; as

|           |                     |                   |                         |
|-----------|---------------------|-------------------|-------------------------|
| Frenchman | فُرَنْسَا فُرَنْسِي | High              | مُسْتَعْلِي مُسْتَعْلِي |
| Bustard   | حُبَارِي حُبَارِي   | River in Damascus | بَرْدَى بَرْدَوِي       |

VII. َ on the middle radical of a trilateral noun becomes ِ; as



King                      مَلِكٌ مَلَكِيٌّ                      Liver                      كَبِدٌ كَبَدِيٌّ

VIII. When the **ل** is a weak letter, words on the measure **فَعِيلٌ** drop the first **ي** and change the second into **و**; whereupon the **ع** is vowelled with **ـَـ**; as

High                      عَلِيٌّ عَلَوِيٌّ

IX. Words on the measure **فَعِيلَةٌ** drop the **ي** and change the vowel of the **ع** to **ـَـ**; as

Church                      كَنِيسَةٌ كَنَسِيٌّ                      Enactment                      فَرِيضَةٌ فَرَضِيٌّ

Exceptions: —

Nature                      طَبِيعَةٌ طَبِيعِيٌّ                      Truth                      حَقِيقَةٌ حَقِيقِيٌّ

Disposition                      سَلِيقَةٌ سَلِيقِيٌّ

X. Nouns which have dropped a weak letter generally restore it, and any letter which has been substituted for the dropped letter is omitted; as

Language                      لُغَةٌ لُغَوِيٌّ                      Father                      أَبٌ أَبَوِيٌّ

Gum                      لِثَّةٌ لِثَوِيٌّ                      Blood                      دَمٌ دَمَوِيٌّ

Hundred                      مِئَةٌ مِئَوِيٌّ                      Son                      ابْنٌ ابْنَوِيٌّ

Hand-maiden                      أَمَةٌ أَمَوِيٌّ                      Brother                      أَخٌ أَخَوِيٌّ

Year                      سَنَةٌ سَنَوِيٌّ                      Hand                      يَدٌ يَدَوِيٌّ

To-morrow                      غَدٌ غَدَوِيٌّ                      Father-in-law                      حَمٌ حَمَوِيٌّ

Lip                      شَفَةٌ شَفَوِيٌّ شَفَهِيٌّ

Exceptions: —

Sister                      أُخْتُ أُخْتِيٌّ                      Daughter                      بِنْتُ بِنْتِيٌّ

Name                      اِسْمٌ اِسْمِيٌّ

XI. **يَ** and **يَّة** final in nouns of more than three letters are dropped; as

Chair

كُرْسِيَّ كُرْسِيَّ

Native of Alexandria

الْأَسْكَندَرِيَّةُ إِسْكَندَرِيَّ

XII. In compound proper nouns the **يَ** of relation is generally affixed to the second word **الْعَجَزُ**, leaving the first **الْصَدْرُ** unchanged; as

Native of Bethlehem

بَيْتُ لَحْمٍ بَيْتَ لَحْمِيَّ

„ of Bethel

بَيْتُ إِيلَ بَيْتَ إِيلِيَّ

XIII. Sometimes it is formed from the first word; as

A native of Ramallah

رَامُ آلِهِ رَامِيَّ

Name of a poet

إِمْرُؤُ الْقَيْسِ إِمْرِيَّ

Proper names of men

مَعْدِي كَرَبَ مَعْدَوِيَّ تَابَطُ شَرًّا تَابِطِيَّ

and at other times a process called **النَّحْتُ** (cutting) is employed, as in the proper names

عَبْدَرِيَّ

عَبْدُ الدَّارِ

عَبْدُ الشَّمْسِ عَبْشِيَّ

عَبْقَسِيَّ

عَبْدُ الْقَيْسِ

أَرْيُوسُ بَاغُوسُ أَرْيُوبَاغِيَّ

حَضْرَمِيَّ

حَضْرَمَوْتُ

عَبْدُ اللَّهِ

مَرْدُوسِيَّ

إِمْرُؤُ الْقَيْسِ

تَيْمُ اللَّهِ

XIV. The following words are formed irregularly:

Spiritual

رُوحٌ رُوحَانِيَّ

Names

صَنْعَاءُ صَنْعَانِيَّ

Divine

رَبِّ رَبَّانِيَّ

of

أَلَرِّي أَلَرِّي

Nazarene

نَاصِرَةٌ نَصْرَانِيَّ

towns

طَائِيَّ طَائِيَّ

(Christian)

tribes

From Yemen

يَمَنُ يَمَانِيَّ

and

Countries.

أُمَيَّةُ أُمَوِيَّ

|              |                      |                                                     |   |                            |              |
|--------------|----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|---|----------------------------|--------------|
| Materialist  | دَهْرٌ دَهْرِيٌّ     | Names<br>of<br>towns<br>tribes<br>and<br>Countries. | { | الْبَحْرَيْنِ بَحْرَانِيٌّ |              |
| From Tihamah | تِهَامَةٌ تِهَامِيٌّ |                                                     |   | سَلِيمٌ                    | سَلَمِيٌّ    |
| Bedouin      | بَادِيَةٌ بَدَوِيٌّ  |                                                     |   | نُبَاطِيٌّ                 | الْأَنْبَاطُ |

### ABSTRACT NOUNS OF QUALITY. أَسْمَاءُ الْكَيْفِيَّةِ

|                  |                  |             |                   |
|------------------|------------------|-------------|-------------------|
| God-head         | الْإِلَهِيَّةُ   | Manhood     | رُجُلِيَّةٌ       |
| Humanity         | إِنْسَانِيَّةٌ   | Substance   | مَاهِيَّةٌ        |
| Lordship         | الرُّبُوبِيَّةُ  | Totality    | جَمْعِيَّةٌ       |
| Capability of    | { مَفْهُومِيَّةٌ | Christendom | النَّصْرَانِيَّةُ |
| being understood |                  | Judaism     | الْيَهُودِيَّةُ   |

The termination رُوتٌ has a similar signification:

|          |           |          |           |
|----------|-----------|----------|-----------|
| Divinity | لَاهُوتٌ  | Humanity | نَاسُوتٌ  |
| Kingdom  | مَلَكُوتٌ | Pride    | جَبَرُوتٌ |

### THE DIMINUTIVE. التَّصْغِيرُ

I. For triliteral nouns the measure of the diminutive is فُعَيْلٌ. It is formed by inserting ي after the second radical, vowelling the first with َ and the second with ِ; as

|          |                 |     |                  |
|----------|-----------------|-----|------------------|
| Mountain | جَبَلٌ جُبَيْلٌ | Man | رَجُلٌ رُجَيْلٌ  |
|          |                 | Dog | كَلْبٌ كَلْبِيٌّ |

II. In nouns of more than three letters, the letter which follows the ي of the measure takes َ except it be one of the three signs of the feminine, or ِ of the

|                  |                    |                                         |
|------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| plural, or       | آن                 | serve in a proper noun or adjective; as |
| Dirham           | دِرْهَم دُرَيْهِم  | Black (fem.) سَوْدَاءُ سَوَيْدَاءُ      |
| Bird             | عَصْفُور عَصَافِير | Companions أَصْحَابُ أَصْيَحَابُ        |
| Castle           | قَلْعَة قَلْعَة    | Man's name سَلْمَانُ سَلَيْمَانُ        |
| Proper fem. name | سَلْمَى سَلَيْمَى  | Drunken سَكْرَانُ سَكِيرَانُ            |

III. The regular masc. and fem. plurals, and the plural of paucity form their diminutives regularly; as

|                     |                         |                            |
|---------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| Believers           | مُؤْمِنُونَ مُؤْمِنُونَ | Ribs أَضْلَعُ أَضْلَعُ     |
| Zaids               | زَيْدُونَ زَيْدُونَ     | Nails أَظْفَارُ أَظْفَارُ  |
| Hinds (proper name) | هَيْدَاتُ هَيْدَاتُ     | Loaves أَرْغَفَة أَرْغَفَة |
| Roses               | وَرْدَاتُ وَرْدَاتُ     | Youths فِتْيَة فِتْيَة     |

IV. The plural of multitude reverts to the singular of its form and takes the regular masc. plural in the case of nouns denoting rational masc. beings and the regular fem. plural in the case of irrational beings; as

|            |                               |                           |
|------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| Poets      | شُعَرَاءُ شَاعِر شَوَاعِرُونَ |                           |
| She camels | نِيَاقُ نَوَاقَاتُ            | Camels جَمَالُ جَمِيلَاتُ |

V. Any letter which has been dropped from the original form of the noun is restored; as

|               |                  |       |                   |
|---------------|------------------|-------|-------------------|
| Father        | أَبُ أَبَى       | Blood | دَم (دَمُو) دَمَى |
| Brother       | أَخُ أَخَى       | Water | مَاءُ مَوِيَه     |
| Sheep or goat | شَاةُ شَوَاهِيَه |       |                   |

and any letter which has been substituted for the dropped letter is omitted, except it be ة fem.; as

|             |                    |         |                     |
|-------------|--------------------|---------|---------------------|
| Hand-maiden | أَمَةٌ أُمِّيَّةٌ  | Name    | إِسْمٌ سَمُو سُمِّي |
| Lip         | شَفَاةٌ شَفِيهَةٌ  | Mouth   | فَمٌ فَوَهٌ فُويَهٌ |
| Daughter    | بِنْتُ بَنِيَّةٍ   | Promise | عِدَّةٌ وَعِدَّةٌ   |
| Son         | إِبْنٌ بَنُو بَنِي | Effort  | جِدَّةٌ وَجَيْدَةٌ  |

VI. A noun with servile **ا** for its second letter is changed into **و**; as

|          |                   |        |                   |
|----------|-------------------|--------|-------------------|
| Horseman | فَارِسٌ فُورِسٌ   | Scribe | كَاتِبٌ كُوتِبٌ   |
| Poet     | شَاعِرٌ شُويِعِرٌ | Beater | ضَارِبٌ ضُويِرِبٌ |
| Seal     | خَاتَمٌ خُويْتَمٌ |        |                   |

VII. If the third or fourth letter is **و**, or **ا** not plural, this letter is changed into **ي**; as

|           |                      |            |                       |
|-----------|----------------------|------------|-----------------------|
| Satan     | شَيْطَانٌ شَيِيطَانٌ | Glutton    | أَكُولٌ أَكِيلٌ       |
| Sultan    | سُلْطَانٌ سُلِيطَانٌ | Mill-stone | رَحَى رَحِيَّةٌ       |
| Bird      | عُصْفُورٌ عُصِفِيرٌ  | Food       | طَعَامٌ طُعِيمٌ       |
| Handle    | عُرْوَةٌ عُرْيَةٌ    | Boy        | غُلَامٌ غُلِيمٌ       |
| Book      | كِتَابٌ كُتِبٌ       | Wolf       | سِرْحَانٌ سُرْيَحِينٌ |
| Old-woman | عَجُوزٌ عَجِيرٌ      | Brook      | جَدْوَلٌ جُدَيْلٌ     |
| Youth     | فَتَى فُتَيٌ         | Staff      | عَصَا عَصَيٌ          |

VIII. When the second letter is servile **ا** changed from **ا**, or its origin is unknown, it is changed into **و**; as

|       |               |         |                            |
|-------|---------------|---------|----------------------------|
| Ivory | عَاجٌ عُويَجٌ | Another | آخَرٌ (أُذْخَرٌ) أُوذِخِرٌ |
|-------|---------------|---------|----------------------------|

IX. A noun with a weak letter which has undergone change reverts to its original form; as

|      |                       |      |                       |
|------|-----------------------|------|-----------------------|
| Tusk | فَافٌ (نَيْبٌ) نَيْبٌ | Door | بَابٌ (بَوِبٌ) بَوِبٌ |
|------|-----------------------|------|-----------------------|



## Exceptions:

|       |                    |       |                           |
|-------|--------------------|-------|---------------------------|
| Feast | عِيد (عَوْد) عِيْد | Night | لَيْلَة (لَيْل) لَوَيْلَة |
|-------|--------------------|-------|---------------------------|

X. Nouns feminine by meaning (without signs of fem.) if of three letters only, restore the ة of fem.; as

|                    |                    |       |                  |
|--------------------|--------------------|-------|------------------|
| Eye                | عَيْنُ عَيْنَة     | Sun   | شَمْسُ شَمْسَة   |
| Hind (proper name) | هِنْدُ هِنْدَة     | House | دَارُ دَوَايِرَة |
| Tooth              | سِنُّ سُنَيْتَة    | Sheep | غَنَمُ غَنَيْمَة |
| but, Scorpion      | عَقْرَبُ عَقِيْرَب |       |                  |

## Exceptions:

|                    |                |         |                |
|--------------------|----------------|---------|----------------|
| Sandal             | نَعْلُ نَعِيْل | War     | حَرْبُ حَرْيَب |
| Bow                | قَوْسُ قُوَيْس | Arabs   | عَرَبُ عَرِيْب |
| Herd of she camels | دَوْدُ دَوَيْد | Cuirass | دِرْعُ دُرَيْع |

XI. In cases where ambiguity would arise between the masculine and feminine the ة is not affixed, as in the fem. cardinal numbers three to ten inclusive, and in nouns which have a singular ending in ة; thus

|      |                |      |                |
|------|----------------|------|----------------|
| Five | خَمْسُ خَمِيْس | Tree | شَجَرُ شَجِيْر |
|------|----------------|------|----------------|

XII. Nouns with more than four radical letters in their root reject all after the fourth; as

|        |                      |        |                        |
|--------|----------------------|--------|------------------------|
| Quince | سَفَرَجَلُ سَفِيْرَج | Spider | عَنْكَبُوْتُ عَنِيْكِب |
|--------|----------------------|--------|------------------------|

In compound nouns the first noun is made diminutive; as عَبْدُ اللَّهِ عَبِيْدُ اللَّهِ.

XIII. The diminutive cannot be applied to the names of God, or of high personages, to indeclinable nouns and names of such objects as do not admit of diminution; as

Glass زُجَاج Sunday الْأَحَد March آذار

XIV. The diminutive is applied to the following verbs and indeclinable nouns contrary to rule:

I. Verbs of wonder أُنْعَالُ التَّعَجُّبِ; as

How beautiful is the sky مَا أَحْسَنَ السَّمَاءَ

How sweet are the views of our countries

مَا أَحْيَلَى مَنَاظِرَ بِلَادِنَا

II. Relative Pronouns أَسْمَاءُ الْمَوْصُولِ; as

| Plur.                       | Dual.                     | Sing.                |       |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------|-------|
| اللَّذِيْنَ (الَّذِينَ)     | اللَّذِيَانِ (الَّذَانِ)  | اللَّذِيَّ (الَّذِي) | Masc. |
| اللَّتِيَّاتِ (اللَّوَاتِي) | اللَّتِيَانِ (اللَّتَانِ) | اللَّتِيَّ (الَّتِي) | Fem.  |

III. Demonstrative Pronouns أَسْمَاءُ الْإِشَارَةِ; as

| Far object.      | Middle Object. | Near Object. |       |
|------------------|----------------|--------------|-------|
| ذَٰلِكَ (ذَلِكَ) | ذَٰكَ (ذَاكَ)  | ذَٰ (ذَا)    | Masc. |
|                  | تَٰكَ (تَيْكَ) | تَٰ (تِي)    | Fem.  |

XV. The following nouns are formed irregularly:

|     |                        |      |                         |
|-----|------------------------|------|-------------------------|
| Sea | بَحْرٌ أُبَيْحِر       | Boys | صَبِيَّةٌ أُصْيِبِيَّةٌ |
| Man | رَجُلٌ رُوَيْحِل       | Lads | غِلْبَةٌ أُغْيَلِيَّةٌ  |
| Man | إِنْسَانٌ أُنْيَسِيَان |      |                         |

The diminutive is also used as a term of endearment and to express enhancement or contempt; as حُبَيْبٌ, كُتَيْبٌ, بَنَى, أَبَى, أَخَى.

|                  |         |                    |            |
|------------------|---------|--------------------|------------|
| The very best    | خَيْرٌ  | A great misfortune | دُورِيَّةٌ |
| A special friend | صَدِيقٌ | An enemy           | عَدُوٌّ    |

## THE NUMERALS. الْعَدَدُ

## THE CARDINAL NUMBERS. (أَصْلِيّ)

The cardinal numbers from 1 to 10 are:

| Fem.        | Masc.     | Fem.        | Masc.       |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|-------------|
| خَمْسَةٌ    | خَمْسٌ 5  | إِحْدَى     | أَحَدٌ } 1  |
| سِتَّةٌ     | سِتٌّ 6   | وَاحِدَةٌ   | وَاحِدٌ } 1 |
| سَبْعَةٌ    | سَبْعٌ 7  | إِثْنَتَانِ | إِثْنَانِ 2 |
| ثَمَانِيَةٌ | ثَمَانٍ 8 | ثَلَاثَةٌ   | ثَلَاثٌ 3   |
| تِسْعَةٌ    | تِسْعٌ 9  | أَرْبَعَةٌ  | أَرْبَعٌ 4  |
| عَشْرَةٌ    | عَشْرٌ 10 |             |             |

1 and 2 stand for the noun and agree with it in gender and number. They can only be used with the noun for emphasis, in which case they follow it; as رَجُلٌ وَاحِدٌ, رَجُلَانِ إِثْنَانِ.

3 to 10 take the fem. form when the objects numbered are masc., and the masc. form when the objects numbered are fem. They govern a broken plural of the objects numbered in the genitive, and when possible take the plural of paucity.

|             |                     |              |                   |
|-------------|---------------------|--------------|-------------------|
| Three women | ثَلَاثُ نِسَاءٍ     | Three men    | ثَلَاثَةُ رِجَالٍ |
| Five loaves | خَمْسَةُ أَرْغَفَةٍ | Seven fishes | سَبْعُ سَمَكَاتٍ  |

The cardinal numbers from 11 to 19 are:

| Fem.              | Masc.                | Fem.               | Masc.             |
|-------------------|----------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| ثَلَاثُ عَشْرَةَ  | ثَلَاثَةَ عَشَرَ 13  | إِحْدَى عَشْرَةَ   | أَحَدَ عَشَرَ 11  |
| أَرْبَعُ عَشْرَةَ | أَرْبَعَةَ عَشَرَ 14 | إِثْنَتَا عَشْرَةَ | إِثْنَا عَشَرَ 12 |

| Fem.              | Masc.                 | Fem.            | Masc.              |
|-------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| ثَمَانِي عَشْرَةَ | ثَمَانِيَةَ عَشَرَ 18 | خَمْسَ عَشْرَةَ | خَمْسَةَ عَشَرَ 15 |
| تِسْعَ عَشْرَةَ   | تِسْعَةَ عَشَرَ 19    | سِتَّ عَشْرَةَ  | سِتَّةَ عَشَرَ 16  |
|                   |                       | سَبْعَ عَشْرَةَ | سَبْعَةَ عَشَرَ 17 |

11 and 12. The gender of both numerals in 11 and 12 agrees with that of the objects numbered; as

|              |                               |            |                        |
|--------------|-------------------------------|------------|------------------------|
| Eleven women | إِحْدَى عَشْرَةَ أَمْرَأَةً   | Eleven men | أَحَدَ عَشَرَ رَجُلًا  |
| Twelve women | إِثْنَتَا عَشْرَةَ أَمْرَأَةً | Twelve men | إِثْنَا عَشَرَ رَجُلًا |

Note 1 and 2 wherever they occur agree in gender with the objects numbered; as

Forty-one ewes      إِحْدَى وَأَرْبَعُونَ نَعِجَةً

2 wherever it occurs is declined in the same manner as the dual; as

The twelve Apostles came      جَاءَ الْإِثْنَا عَشَرَ رَسُولًا  
I saw twelve does      رَأَيْتُ اثْنَتَيْ عَشْرَةَ ظَبْيَةً

13 to 19. The numeral 10 agrees in gender with the object numbered whilst the units take the reverse gender. Both numerals are indeclinable and have َ in all cases; as

Thirteen men      ثَلَاثَةَ عَشَرَ رَجُلًا      Thirteen women      ثَلَاثَ عَشْرَةَ أَمْرَأَةً

11 to 99 take the object numbered in the accus. sing.

The cardinal numbers 20 to 90 are:

|               |                |                          |
|---------------|----------------|--------------------------|
| سَبْعُونَ 70  | أَرْبَعُونَ 40 | عِشْرُونَ 20             |
| ثَمَانُونَ 80 | خَمْسُونَ 50   | أَحَدٌ وَعِشْرُونَ 21    |
| تِسْعُونَ 90  | سِتُّونَ 60    | إِثْنَانِ وَعِشْرُونَ 22 |
|               |                | ثَلَاثُونَ 30            |

20 to 90 are common to both genders and have وَنَ in the nom. and يْنِ in the genitive and accus. cases.

The numerals from 100 to 900 are:

|                      |                      |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| 100 مِائَةٌ          | 600 سِتُّ مِائَةٍ    |
| 200 مِائَتَانِ       | 700 سَبْعُ مِائَةٍ   |
| 300 ثَلَاثُ مِائَةٍ  | 800 ثَمَانِي مِائَةٍ |
| 400 أَرْبَعُ مِائَةٍ | 900 تِسْعُ مِائَةٍ   |
| 500 خَمْسُ مِائَةٍ   |                      |

100 is common to both genders and takes the object numbered after it in the genitive sing.

100 to 1000 take the noun after them in the genitive singular.

The numerals from 1000 upwards:

|                                 |                                   |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1000 أَلْفٌ                     | 100.000 مِائَةُ أَلْفٍ            |
| 2000 أَلْفَانِ                  | 200.000 مِائَتَا أَلْفٍ           |
| 3000 ثَلَاثَةُ آلَافٍ           | 300.000 ثَلَاثُمِائَةُ أَلْفٍ     |
| 4000 أَرْبَعَةُ آلَافٍ          | 400.000 أَرْبَعُمِائَةُ أَلْفٍ    |
| 5000 خَمْسَةُ آلَافٍ            | 500.000 خَمْسُمِائَةُ أَلْفٍ      |
| 11.000 أَحَدُ عَشَرَ أَلْفًا    | 1.000.000 أَلْفُ أَلْفٍ           |
| 12.000 اِثْنَا عَشَرَ أَلْفًا   | 2.000.000 أَلْفَا أَلْفٍ          |
| 13.000 ثَلَاثَةُ عَشَرَ أَلْفًا | 3.000.000 ثَلَاثَةُ آلَافٍ أَلْفٍ |

The thousands are put in the genitive plural after their units and the noun follows in the genitive sing.

Three thousand men ثَلَاثَةُ آلَافٍ رَجُلٍ

Ten thousand men عَشْرَةُ آلَافٍ رَجُلٍ



Numerals made up of thousands, hundreds, tens and units, may be compounded in two ways. (a) The thousands may be put first, followed by hundreds, units and tens or (b) this order may be reversed; as

أَرْبَعَةُ آلَافٍ وَسِتُّ مِائَةٍ وَاحِدٌ وَثَلَاثُونَ ٤ ٦ ٣ ١  
 أَحَدٌ وَثَلَاثُونَ وَسِتُّ مِائَةٍ وَأَرْبَعَةُ آلَافٍ

### THE ORDINAL NUMBERS. (تَرْتِيبِيّ)

The Ordinal Adjectives from first to tenth are:

| Fem.     | Masc.  |          | Fem.     | Masc.  |            |
|----------|--------|----------|----------|--------|------------|
| سَادِسَة | سَادِس | sixth.   | أَوَّلَى | أَوَّل | the first. |
| سَابِعَة | سَابِع | seventh. | ثَانِيَة | ثَانِي | second.    |
| ثَامِنَة | ثَامِن | eighth.  | ثَالِثَة | ثَالِث | third.     |
| تَاسِعَة | تَاسِع | ninth.   | رَابِعَة | رَابِع | fourth.    |
| عَاشِرَة | عَاشِر | tenth.   | خَامِسَة | خَامِس | fifth.     |

| Fem.             | Masc.         |             |
|------------------|---------------|-------------|
| حَادِيَة عَشْرَة | حَادِي عَشَرَ | eleventh.   |
| ثَانِيَة عَشْرَة | ثَانِي عَشَرَ | twelfth.    |
| ثَالِثَة عَشْرَة | ثَالِث عَشَرَ | thirteenth. |
| رَابِعَة عَشْرَة | رَابِع عَشَرَ | fourteenth. |
| خَامِسَة عَشْرَة | خَامِس عَشَرَ | fifteenth.  |

The ordinal numbers are formed on the measure of the noun of agent (except the first) and agree in gender with the noun.

The tens, hundreds, and thousands do not differ in form from the cardinal numbers.

11 to 19; the units of these take the article; as

The fifteenth **الْخَامِسَ عَشَرَ**.

20 and upwards, both the decades and the units take the article and are united by **وَ**; as

The thirty-fifth **الْخَامِسَ وَالْثَلَاثُونَ**.

### THE NUMERAL ADVERBS.

Once, twice, thrice etc are expressed by the words **مَرَّةً**, **دَفْعَةً**, **نَوْبَةً** once in the accusative:

Twice **نَوْبَتَيْنِ دَفْعَتَيْنِ مَرَّتَيْنِ**

Thrice **ثَلَاثَ دَفْعَاتٍ or ثَلَاثَ مَرَّاتٍ**

Seventy times **سَبْعِينَ نَوْبَةً or مَرَّةً**

Once and again **قَارَةً وَأُخْرَى**

The Distributive Numerals are:

One by one **وَاحِدًا or مَوْحَدًا or أَحَادًا**

Two by two **اِثْنَيْنِ or اِثْنَيْنِ or مَثْنَيْنِ or ثَنَاءً**

Three by three **ثَلَاثَةً or ثَلَاثَةً or ثَلَاثًا or مَثَلثًا**

Four by four, and soon **أَرْبَعَةً or مَرْبُوعًا or رُبَاعًا**

The Multiplicative Numerals:

Single **مُفْرَدًا** Pentagon, fivefold **مُخَمَّسًا**

Double, twofold **مُثْنَيْنِ** Hexagon, sixfold **مُسَدَّسًا**

Triangle, triple, threefold **مُثَلَّثًا** Heptagon, sevenfold **مُسَبَّعًا**

Square, quadruple, fourfold **مَرْبُوعًا** Octagon **مُثَمَّنًا**

The Adjectival Numerals are:

Treble, consisting of three ثَلَاثِي Dual, consisting of two ثَنَائِي  
 Quadruple „ „ four رُبَاعِي

Fractions are:

A half نِصْف A fourth رُبْع or رُبْع  
 A third ثُلُث or ثُلُث A tenth عَشْر or عَشْر

Above a tenth the fractions are expressed by the use of the words أَجْزَاءٌ مِنْ جُزْءٍ “parts of”; as

ثَلَاثَةٌ مِنْ سَبْعَةِ عَشَرَ أَجْزَاءً or only ثَلَاثَةٌ مِنْ سَبْعَةِ عَشَرَ جُزْأً.  
 وَاحِدٌ مِنْ أَحَدِ عَشَرَ أَجْزَاءً or only وَاحِدٌ مِنْ أَحَدِ عَشَرَ جُزْأً.

Approximate numbers are expressed by بَعْضٌ “a few” used with the units from three to nine, and نِيفٌ “a few more” used with the tens, hundreds and thousands.

### PERSONAL PRONOUNS. (الضَّمَائِرُ الشَّخْصِيَّةُ)

These are of two kinds:

- I. Annexed to the verb, noun, or particle.
- II. Separate.

The Annexed Pronouns are of three kinds:

- I. Those special to the nominative case, viz. أَنَا، تَنْ، هُوَ.
- II. Those common to the accusative and genitive, viz. كَ، هِ، يَ.

III. That common to the nominative, accusative and genitive, viz. لَ.

# ANNEXED PERSONAL PRONOUNS. الضَّمَائِرُ الْمُتَّصِلَةُ

## NOMINATIVE BASE.

| Plural. |       | Dual. |       | Singular. |            |
|---------|-------|-------|-------|-----------|------------|
| Fem.    | Masc. | Fem.  | Masc. | Fem.      | Masc.      |
| نَا     |       | نَا   |       | تُ        | 1st Person |
| تُنَّ   | تُمْ  | تُتَا | تِ    | تَ        | 2nd „      |
| نَ      | (ا)وْ | ا     | ...   |           | 3rd „      |

## ACCUSATIVE AND GENITIVE BASES.

|       |      |     |                |
|-------|------|-----|----------------|
| نَا   | نَا  | يِ  | (ن) 1st Person |
| كُنَّ | كُمْ | كِ  | كَ 2nd „       |
| هُنَّ | هُمْ | هَآ | هُ 3rd „       |

When these are annexed to a verb they are in the accus. case; to a noun or preposition in the genitive.

Our friend passed by and visited us صَدِيقُنَا مَرَّ بِنَا فَزَارَنَا

هُ and هُم become هِ and هِم after - or يِ as

According to their saying أَلْحَقَّ عَلَيْهِ عَلَى قَوْلِهِمْ He is wrong

When the affixed pronouns are united to the regular masc. plural and dual or when the latter nouns are in construction, the نَ and نِ are omitted; as

The strikers of Amr ضَارِبُوْ عَمْرٍُ His strikers ضَارِبُوْهُ

The two books of Zaid كِتَابَا زَيْدٍ His two books كِتَابَاهُ

In the third person masc. pl. of the preterite and aorist, and the imperative plural, the ا is dropped when a pronoun is affixed; as

They did not love him لَمْ يُحِبُّوهُ They did it فَعَلُوهُ (فَعَلُوا)  
Hear ye him اِسْمَعُوهُ

إِيَّا is a separate accusative particle and is used as a prefix for the affixed pronoun:

I. When a verb governs two accusatives; as

Give it to me اَعْطِنِي اِيَّاهُ Give it to him اَعْطِهِ اِيَّاهُ

It is not necessary to put اِيَّا before the second accus. pronoun when the two are not of the same person; thus we can say

You asked me about it سَأَلْتُمُونِيهَا Give it to me اَعْطِنِي اَعْطِنِيهِ  
I gave it to you اَعْطَيْتُكَ Ask me about it سَلْنِي اِيَّاهُ سَلْنِيهِ

but we cannot say,

I gave it to him اَعْطَيْتُهُ

II. When the accusative pronoun is separated from the verb; as

They will honour you يُكْرِمُونَكَ  
They will honour both Zaid and you يُكْرِمُونَ زَيْدًا وَاِيَّاكَ

III. Where the accusative precedes the verb; as

Thee we worship اِيَّاكَ نَعْبُدُ

IV. When preceded by اِلَّا; as

I love none else but thee لَا اُحِبُّ اِلَّا اِيَّاكَ

Note. The second person plural preterite when followed by an affixed pronoun introduces a ,; as

Ye did strike صَرَبْتُمْ Ye did strike me صَرَبْتُمُونِي



## SEPARATE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

## الضَّمَايِرُ الْمُنْفَصِلَةُ

## NOMINATIVE CASE.

| Plural.   |          | Dual.     |  | Singular. |               |
|-----------|----------|-----------|--|-----------|---------------|
| Fem.      | Masc.    | Common.   |  | Fem.      | Masc.         |
| نَكُنْ    |          | نَكُنْ    |  | أَنَا     | 1st Person    |
| أَنْتُنَّ | أَنْتُمْ | أَنْتُمَا |  | أَنْتِ    | أَنْتَ 2nd ,, |
| هُنَّ     | هُمْ     | هُمَا     |  | هِيَ      | هُوَ 3rd ,,   |

Note: In أَنَا 1st Person, and هِيَ هُوَ 3rd Person, the whole word is regarded as the pronoun; but in أَنْتُنَّ أَنْتُمْ أَنْتَ 2nd Person, and هُنَّ هُمْ هُمَا 3rd Person, أَنْ and هُ only are the pronouns:

|                       |                     |         |      |           |             |
|-----------------------|---------------------|---------|------|-----------|-------------|
| Particle of address = | تَ = حَرْفُ خِطَابٍ | pronoun | أَنْ | أَنْتَ    | 2nd Person. |
| Sign of dual =        | مَا                 | تُ =    | أَنْ | أَنْتُمَا |             |
| Sign of masc. plur. = | مَ                  | تُ =    | أَنْ | أَنْتُمْ  |             |
| Sign of fem. plur. =  | نَ                  | تُ =    | أَنْ | أَنْتُنَّ | 3rd Person. |
| Sign of dual =        | مَا . . . . .       | هُ =    | هُ   | هُمَا     |             |
| Sign of masc. plur. = | مَ . . . . .        | هُ =    | هُ   | هُمْ      |             |
| Sign of fem. plur. =  | نَ . . . . .        | هُ =    | هُ   | هُنَّ     |             |

The conjunctions و and ف when joined to هُوَ and هِيَ may deprive them of their first vowels; as

فَهِيَ , وَهِيَ , فَهُوَ , وَهُوَ

## ACCUSATIVE CASE.

| Plural.     |            | Dual.       | Singular. |          |           |
|-------------|------------|-------------|-----------|----------|-----------|
| Fem.        | Masc.      | Common.     | Fem.      | Masc.    |           |
| إِيَّانَا   |            | إِيَّانَا   | إِيَّايَ  |          | 1st Pers. |
| إِيَّاكُنَّ | إِيَّاكُمْ | إِيَّاكُمَا | إِيَّاكِ  | إِيَّايَ | 2nd „     |
| إِيَّاهُنَّ | إِيَّاهُمْ | إِيَّاهُمَا | إِيَّاهَا | إِيَّاهُ | 3rd „     |

Note: إِيَّا is only the prefix of the accusative case.

|                              |                      |           |          |             |
|------------------------------|----------------------|-----------|----------|-------------|
| Sign of the 1st person       | ي pronoun            | إِيَّا    | إِيَّايَ | 1st Per.    |
| Sign of the 1st person plur. | نَا „                | إِيَّانَا | إِيَّايَ |             |
| Particle of address =        | ك = حَرْفِ خِطَاب    | إِيَّا    | إِيَّاكِ | 2nd Person. |
| Sign of dual =               | مَا „                | ك =       | إِيَّا   |             |
| Sign of masc. plur. =        | م „                  | ك =       | إِيَّا   |             |
| Sign of fem. plur. =         | ن „                  | ك =       | إِيَّا   |             |
| Particle of 3rd person =     | هُ = حَرْفِ غَيْبَةِ | إِيَّا    | إِيَّاهُ | 3rd Person. |
| Sign of distinction between  |                      |           |          |             |
| masc. and fem. =             | ا „                  | هُ =      | إِيَّا   |             |
| Sign of dual =               | مَا „                | هُ =      | إِيَّا   |             |
| Sign of masc. plur. =        | م „                  | هُ =      | إِيَّا   |             |
| Sign of fem. plur. =         | ن „                  | هُ =      | إِيَّا   |             |

THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS. **أَسْمَاءُ الْمُؤَوَّلِ**

| Plural. |           | Who.    | Which.     | That. | Singular. |         |                |
|---------|-----------|---------|------------|-------|-----------|---------|----------------|
| Fem.    | Masc.     | Fem.    | Masc.      |       | Fem.      | Masc.   |                |
| الَّذِي | الَّذِينَ | الَّتِي | الَّذَانِ  |       | الَّتِي   | الَّذِي | Nom.           |
| الَّتِي | الَّذِينَ | الَّتِي | الَّذَيْنِ |       | ”         | ”       | Obj. Genitive. |

مَا what, which, مَنْ who, أَيِّ whoever, whatever, are both relative and interrogative pronouns.

أَلْ who, which, is used with the nouns of agent and object as a relative pronoun.

## THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN. اِسْمَاءُ اَلْاِشَارَةِ

### Near Object (This).

| Plural.                | Dual.  |        | Singular.         |                   |
|------------------------|--------|--------|-------------------|-------------------|
| Common.                | Fem.   | Masc.  | Fem.              | Masc.             |
| أُولَئِكَ or أَولَئِكَ | تَانِ  | ذَانِ  | ذِي (ذِي تِه تَا) | ذَا Nom.          |
| ” ”                    | تَيْنِ | ذَيْنِ | ”                 | ” Gen. and Accus. |

### Middle Object (That).

|                        |          |          |       |       |
|------------------------|----------|----------|-------|-------|
| أُولَئِكَ or أَولَئِكَ | تَانِكَ  | ذَانِكَ  | تِيكَ | ذَاكَ |
| ” ”                    | تَيْنِكَ | ذَيْنِكَ | ”     | ”     |

### Distant Object (That).

|                        |          |          |        |        |
|------------------------|----------|----------|--------|--------|
| أُولَئِكَ or أَولَئِكَ | تَانِكَ  | ذَانِكَ  | تِلْكَ | ذَلِكَ |
| ” ”                    | تَيْنِكَ | ذَيْنِكَ | ”      | ”      |

هَـ here, هُنَا there, and ثَمَّ there, are also demonstrative pronouns.

The demonstrative for near objects may have the particle هَا (اَلتَّنْبِيْهَةُ) prefixed to it; as

|           |                     |                |
|-----------|---------------------|----------------|
| هَؤُلَاءِ | هَـذَانِ هَاتَانِ   | هَـذَا هَـذِهِ |
|           | هَـذَيْنِ هَاتَيْنِ |                |

The هَا (اَلتَّنْبِيْهَةُ) may also be prefixed to some of the

demonstrative pronouns for middle objects (a). When addressing a female person the  $\text{ـِ}$  of the  $\text{كِ}$  in the dem. pron. for middle objects is generally changed into  $\text{ـَ}$ ; as

ذَلِكَ الرَّجُلُ يَا امْرَأَةً      أُولَئِكَ الرِّجَالُ يَا امْرَأَةً

(b).  $\text{ـَ}$  is annexed for the dual, (c)  $\text{ـُ}$  is annexed for the plural masc., (d)  $\text{ـِ}$  is annexed for the plur. fem.; as

This is the opportunity, brethren      فَلَكُمْ الْفُرْصَةَ يَا إِخْوَتِي

This is the book, men      ذَلِكُمَا الْكِتَابُ يَا رَجُلَانِ

Those are the men, O women      أُولَئِكَنَّ الرِّجَالُ يَا نِسَاءَ

The relative pronoun always needs a  $\text{صَلَة}$  and  $\text{عَائِد}$ . The  $\text{صَلَة}$  is the sentence or phrase following the relative and completing its meaning. The  $\text{عَائِد}$  is the pronoun contained in the  $\text{صَلَة}$  which connects it with the antecedent relative. It is better that this pronoun should be in the third person; as

Thou art the one who loves me      أَنْتَ الَّذِي يُحِبُّنِي

If the  $\text{عَائِد}$  is in the accusative case it may be omitted; as.

Thou art he whom I love      أَنْتَ الَّذِي أُحِبُّ

The  $\text{صَلَة}$  of the article (when used with relative force) is always a noun of agent or noun of object.

The demonstrative pronoun is indeclinable but the dual form takes  $\text{ا}$  for the nom., and  $\text{ي}$  for the accus. and genitive.

The interrogative pronouns are all indeclinable except  $\text{أَيُّ}$ .

The latter is declined like an ordinary noun; but in such a sentence as

I love whoever of them is wise أَحَبُّ أَيُّهُمْ حَكِيمٌ  
it is indeclinable.

## THE ARTICLE. اَلْ

أَدَاةُ التَّعْرِيفِ Instrument of Definition.

The definite article is an inseparable particle prefixed to words and suffers no change for gender or number.

It is used:

I. As the definite article.

(a). اَلْعَهْدِيَّةُ for familiarity; as

Is this the book i. e. The book mentioned previously

أَهَذَا هُوَ الْكِتَابُ

(b). اَلْجَنَسِيَّةُ for distinguishing the genus; as

The lion is more daring than the wolf

اَلْأَسَدُ أَجْرَأُ مِنَ اَلذِّئْبِ

II. As the relative pronoun.

Zaid, the beater of Amr

زَيْدُ الصَّارِبِ عَمْرًا

It may be زَائِدَةٌ (redundant) as in the relative pronoun اَلَّذِي and in some proper nouns, which have only become such through usage; as

اَلْمَدِينَةُ, اَلْفَضْلُ, اَلْحَرَمُ

There is no indefinite article in Arabic.



Nouns are classified; as

I. **اِسْمٌ جَامِدٌ** Primitive, opposed to **اِسْمٌ مُشْتَقٌّ** Derived.  
**جَمَدَ** to become solid. **اِشْتَقَّ** to derive.

II. **اِسْمٌ مُجَرَّدٌ** Containing root letters only, opposed  
 [to **اِسْمٌ مَزِيدٌ فِيهِ** Augmented.  
**جَرَدَ** to strip. **زَادَ** to increase.

III. **اِسْمٌ عَلَمٌ** Proper Noun opposed to **اِسْمٌ جِنْسٍ**  
 [Common Noun.

IV. **اِسْمٌ جِنْسٍ** is either **اِسْمٌ عَيْنٍ** denoting a concrete  
 object  
 or **اِسْمٌ مَعْنَى** denoting an abstract  
 idea.

( V. **اِسْمٌ عَلَمٌ** may be **مُفْرَدٌ** A single word  
 or **مُرَكَّبٌ** compound.  
**مُرَكَّبٌ** may be (a) **اِسْنَادِيٌّ** predicative or a pro-  
 position; as

**قَاتَبْتُ شَرًّا** "He carried mischief  
 under his arm".

(b) **مُرَكَّبٌ مَزْجِيٌّ** Mixed Compound  
 which is not a pro-  
 position.

**بَعْلَبَكْ** Baalbec.

(c) **اِضَافِيٌّ** Correlative, as

**عَبْدُ اللَّهِ**

VI. <sup>9</sup>اِسْمٌ عَلَمٌ is again either

(a). <sup>9</sup>مَنْقُولٌ transferred from some other use, being originally an adjective, noun of action, com. noun, verb, sentence, or name of sound.

|                          |           |                            |
|--------------------------|-----------|----------------------------|
| Masc. = Nejeeb Excellent | نَجِيبٌ   | } = <sup>9</sup> مَنْقُولٌ |
| Towfeek Divine aid       | تَوْفِيقٌ |                            |
| Khaleel Friend           | خَلِيلٌ   |                            |

|                          |           |                            |
|--------------------------|-----------|----------------------------|
| Fem. = Jameeleh Handsome | جَمِيلَةٌ | } = <sup>9</sup> مَنْقُولٌ |
| Wadād Love               | وَدَادٌ   |                            |
| Nadah Dew                | نَدَى     |                            |

(b). <sup>9</sup>مُرْتَجَدٌ existing only as a proper name.

|                 |              |                             |
|-----------------|--------------|-----------------------------|
| Masc. = Abraham | إِبْرَاهِيمٌ | } = <sup>9</sup> مُرْتَجَدٌ |
| David           | دَاوُدٌ      |                             |
| John            | حَنَّا       |                             |

|             |             |                             |
|-------------|-------------|-----------------------------|
| Fem. = Mary | مَرْيَمٌ    | } = <sup>9</sup> مُرْتَجَدٌ |
| Helena      | هَيْلَانَةٌ |                             |
| Sarah       | سَارَاةٌ    |                             |

Finally the <sup>9</sup>اِسْمٌ عَلَمٌ may be:

(a). <sup>9</sup>اِسْمٌ name, as Zaid.

(b). <sup>9</sup>كُنْيَةٌ sobriquet, name with prefix, as <sup>9</sup>أَبُو, <sup>9</sup>أُمُّ.

(c). <sup>9</sup>لَقَبٌ title, as the Conqueror.

|                      |                       |                           |
|----------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| Masc. = Abu-Alatahia | أَبُو الْعَتَاهِيَّةِ | } = <sup>9</sup> كُنْيَةٌ |
| Abu-Bakr             | أَبُو بَكْرٍ          |                           |

Fem. = Mother of believers  $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{أُمُّ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ} \\ \text{أُمُّ الْكَافِرِينَ} \end{array} \right\} = \text{كُنْيَةٌ}$   
 Mother of Goodness

A proper name may contain all three.

The كُنْيَةٌ comes first, the اِسْمٌ second, and the لَقَبٌ third.

The اِسْمٌ follows the declension of the كُنْيَةٌ and the لَقَبٌ may follow the declension of the noun or it may be مَصْفُوفٌ or مُصَافٌ إِلَيْهِ.

Masc. = Sword of the state  $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{سَيْفُ الدَّوْلَةِ} \\ \text{يُوحَنَّا الْكَافِرُ} \end{array} \right\} = \text{لَقَبٌ}$   
 John the beloved

Fem. = The little Jane  $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{حَنَّةُ الصَّغِيرَةِ} \\ \text{مَرْيَمُ النَّبِيَّةِ} \end{array} \right\} = \text{لَقَبٌ}$   
 Mary the prophetess

The proper noun is شَخْصِيٌّ if it refers to only one individual of a kind, and جِنْسِيٌّ if it be applied alike to every individual of a kind:

Proper name of the lion أَسَامَةُ.

„ „ of the hyena أُمُّ عَامِرٍ.

## COLLECTIVE NOUNS.

Collective Nouns are of two kinds:

I. اِسْمُ الْجَمْعِ which implies multitude but has no singular of its form.

II. شِبْهُ الْجَمْعِ which implies multitude and forms a singular by affixing اَلْوَحْدَةُ (unity).

## I. إِسْمُ الْجَمْعِ.

|                  |          |                |          |
|------------------|----------|----------------|----------|
| Swarm of bees    | خَشَرَم  | Army           | خَيْس    |
| Women            | نِسَاء   | Tribes, People | قَوْم    |
| A Company        | مَعْشَر  | People         | أَهْل    |
| Descendants      | دُرَيَّة | People, Nation | شَعْب    |
| Flock            | قَطِيع   | Horses         | خَيْل    |
| Herd of Gazelles | سِرْب    | Multitude      | مَلَأ    |
| Tribes           | قَبِيلَة | Company of Men |          |
| Family           | أُسْرَة  | up to ten      | رَهْط    |
| Family           | عَائِلَة | Associates     | بِطَانَة |
| Sect             | طَائِفَة | Individuals    | نَفَر    |
| Troop            | عُصْبَة  | Company        | جَمَاعَة |
| Troop            | عِصَابَة | Birds          | طَيْر    |
|                  |          | Courtiers      | حَاشِيَة |

## II. شِبْهُ الْجَمْعِ.

|                       |       |           |              |
|-----------------------|-------|-----------|--------------|
| Bees                  | نَخْل | Pebbles   | حَصَى        |
| Figs                  | تَيْن | Hair      | شَعْر        |
| Words                 | كَلِم | Datestone | نَوَى        |
| Seeds                 | حَب   | Fish      | سَمَك        |
| Verses (Koran, Bible) | آي    | Steps     | دَرَج        |
| Eggs                  | بَيْض | Net       | شَبَك        |
| Leaves                | وَرَق | Brick     | أَجْر        |
| Palm trees            | نَخْل | Spear     | قَنَا, قَنَى |
| Ducks                 | بَط   | Ostrich   | نَعَام       |

|           |         |             |        |
|-----------|---------|-------------|--------|
| Trees     | شَجَر   | Reed, Spear | أَسَد  |
| Doves     | حَمَام  | Stomach     | مَعِد  |
| Flowers   | زَهْر   | Head        | هَام   |
| Roses     | وَرْد   | Reed-pen    | يَرَاع |
| Apples    | تَفَّاح | Reed        | قَصَب  |
| Geese     | إِوز    | Pomegranate | رُمان  |
| Hens      | دَجَاج  | Cows        | بَقَر  |
| Needs     | حَاج    | Wild Pigeon | يَمَام |
| Brushwood | أَجَم   | Owl         | بُوم   |

---



## PART SECOND.

### SYNTAX. النَّحْوُ

from نَحَا to *purpose*.

Nahu is the branch of Arabic grammar which treats of the state of the final letters of words as arranged in sentences, in respect to the Declension or Indeclension of such words.

Sentences may be composed of nouns only or of nouns and verbs together; the particle merely intensifies the meaning of the sentence.

### DECLENSION. الْأَعْرَابُ

from أَعْرَبَ to *speak plainly*.

Declension is the change in the final vowels of words to shew the function of the words in a sentence. This change is caused by governing words or regents, which may be either expressed لَفْظِيَّةٌ or understood مَعْنَوِيَّةٌ.

### INDECLENSION. الْبِنَاءُ

from بَنَى to *build*, and therefore what is immovable.

Indeclension is the retention of a particular vowel or

سُكُون on the end of a word for some assignable reason.

Note. Some words retain their سُكُون or vowels not because they are indeclinable but because they end in Aleph (ي, ا) which does not admit of any vowel being placed over it; as

|       |          |       |          |
|-------|----------|-------|----------|
| Youth | الْفَتَى | Stick | الْعَصَا |
|-------|----------|-------|----------|

Or, because they have always the same function in a sentence, as سُبْحَانَ which is always the absolute object.

The signs of Indecension أَوْجُهَ الْبِنَاء are ِ, َ, =, ُ. The ِ and َ are common to the three parts of speech, as particles هَذَا, رَبِّ, verbs قُمْ, قَامَ, nouns لَدُنْ, أَئِنَّ the ُ and = to the (a) noun and (b) particle.

|                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| (b) مُنْذُ, جَيْرِ | (a) حَيْثُ, أَمْسِ |
|--------------------|--------------------|

### REGENTS. الْعَوَامِلُ

Words which stand alone are never declined; to be declined they must be arranged in a sentence and stand in some relation to other words. The words which govern others are called regents. The regents which are expressed are:

(a) the verb, (b) the preposition, (c) the particles of apocopation جَوَازِمُ الْفِعْلِ, (d) the subjunctive particles فَوَاصِلُ الْفِعْلِ, (e) words which affect the form and meaning of the subject and predicate النَّوَاسِخُ, (f) words

derived from the verb, viz. the nouns of agent, object, attribute, superiority, and action.

(g). Adverbs which have the function of verbs **أَسْمَاءُ** **الْأَبْتِدَاءُ**. The regents which are understood are **الْفِعْلِ** and **التَّجَرُّدُ**. The governing word should always precede the word governed.

## CASES.

There are four cases in Arabic:

**رَفْعٌ** Nominative      **نَصْبٌ** Accusative  
**جَرٌّ** or **خَفْضٌ** Genitive and **جَزْمٌ** Apocopative i. e.,  
 the dropping of the last vowel or weak letter. The  
 nominative and accusative cases are common to nouns  
 and verbs, the genitive is peculiar to nouns, and the  
 apocopative to verbs.

The Signs of Declension are of two kinds:

I. Letters viz. **و**, **ا**, **ي**, **ن**.

II. Vowels viz. **ـَ**, **ـِ**, **ـُ**, **ـِ**.

The latter are the original signs.

The signs of declension are either **ظَاهِرَةٌ** *expressed*, or  
**مُقَدَّرَةٌ** *implied*.

I. Words which take letters for their signs of declension, **مَوَاطِنُ الْأَعْرَابِ بِالْحُرُوفِ** are:

(a). The five nouns — viz.

**أَبٌ** father    **أَخٌ** brother    **حَمٌ** father-in-law    **فَمٌ** mouth  
 and **ذُو** possessing, when in construction with nouns

and pronouns other than the suffix of the first person singular **يَاءُ الْمُتَكَلِّمِ**.

(b). The dual, **الْمُثَنَّى**.

(c). The regular masculine plural and the like, viz. the decades.

(d). The five forms which occur in the conjugation of the aorist:

**يَفْعَلَانِ, تَفْعَلَانِ, يَفْعَلُونَ, تَفْعَلِينَ, تَفْعَلُونَ**

II. Words which take vowels, **بِالْأَعْرَابِ بِالتَّحْرِكَاتِ**; are:

(a). The singular noun (b) the irregular plural (c) the regular feminine plural (d) the aorist when without the **ن** feminine and **ن** of assurance, and the expressed pronoun in the nominative case, **الضَّمِيرُ الْبَارِزُ وَالْمَرْفُوعُ**.

## DIVISION OF THE SIGNS OF DECLENSION.

**أَوْجُهُ الْأَعْرَابِ**

This is as follows for the

Nominative **ن, ا, و, ة**.

Accusative **ن, ا, ي**, suppression of **ن**.

Genitive **ن, ا, ي**.

Apocopative **ن**, suppression of **أَعْرَابِ** and weak letters.

## THE NOMINATIVE.

ﺀ is the sign of the nominative in every word which takes a vowel as a sign of declension; as

Zaid went ذَهَبَ زَيْدٌ

و in the five nouns and in the regular masculine plural; as

Thy father and the believers came جَاءَ أَبُوكَ وَالْمُؤْمِنُونَ

ا in the dual; as

The two men strove together اَلرَّجُلَانِ تَخَاصَمَا

ن, اَلْاَعْرَابُ, is retained in the five verbs as a sign of their being in the nominative (indicative); as

The men know اَلرِّجَالُ يَعْلَمُونَ

## THE ACCUSATIVE.

ـا is the sign of the accusative in every word which admits of a vowel as the sign of declension except the regular feminine plural; as

I saw Zaid رَأَيْتُ زَيْدًا

ـا in the regular feminine plural; as

The women came riding جَاءَتِ النِّسَاءُ رَاكِبَاتٍ

ا in the five nouns; as

He loved thy brother أَحَبَّ أَخَاكَ

ي in the regular masculine plural and dual; as

I saw the two infidels and

the believers رَأَيْتُ الْكَافِرَيْنِ وَالْمُؤْمِنَيْنِ



Suppression of **ن**, **الْأَعْرَابُ**, in the five verbs, as

They will never return

لَنْ يَرْجِعُوا

### THE GENITIVE.

◌ is the sign of the genitive in every word where a vowel is used as a sign of declension except in words imperfectly declined; as

This is the son of Zaid

هَذَا ابْنُ زَيْدٍ

◌ in nouns imperfectly declined; as

I saw the son of Ahmad

رَأَيْتُ ابْنَ أَحْمَدَ

ي in the five nouns, the dual, and regular masculine plural; as **مَرَرْتُ بِأَبِيكَ وَالْكَافِرَيْنِ وَالْمُؤْمِنِينَ**.

I passed thy father, the two unbelievers and the believers.

### THE APOCOPATIVE.

◌ is the sign of the apocopative in verbs ending with strong letters not joined to expressed pronouns in the nominative case; as

I did not know

لَمْ أَعْرِفْ

Suppression of **ن** occurs in the five verbs; as

Do not (ye two) strive with one another **لَا تَتَخَصَّمَا**

Suppression of the weak letters occurs in verbs ending with such letters when not joined to a manifest pronoun in the nominative case; as

Do you not know

أَلَمْ تَدْرِ

## IMPLIED SIGNS OF DECLENSION. تَقْدِيرُ الْأَعْرَابِ

I. All the vowels are implied on ا, ي because of  
 تَعَدُّرُ impossibility; as

The youth came جَاءَ الْفَتَى I saw the youth رَأَيْتُ الْفَتَى  
 I beat him with the stick ضَرَبْتُهُ بِالْعَصَا

II. َ and ُ are implied on the و and ي when not  
 preceded by ِ, لِإِسْتِثْقَالٍ for heaviness; as

Behold the judge prays هُوَذَا الْقَاضِي يَدْعُو

III. Vowels are implied in nouns when in construction  
 with the ِ, الْمُتَكَلِّمُ, as this must be preceded by ِ,  
 لِلْمُجَانَسَةِ for agreement; as

My friend went ذَهَبَ صَدِيقِي  
 I saw my friend رَأَيْتُ صَدِيقِي  
 I wrote with my pen كَتَبْتُ بِقَلَمِي

The , of the regular masculine plural is changed into  
 ي according to the rules of الْأَعْلَالُ and is incorporated  
 with the ي; as

These are my lovers (Nominative) هَؤُلَاءِ مُحِبِّي

The ِ is implied when it is followed by هَمْزَةُ الْوَصْلِ; as  
 Serve God أُعْبُدِ اللَّهَ

The vowels are implied in the pause and in rhyme; as  
 Fear God and you will be safe  
 from others خَفِ اللَّهَ تَأْمَنِ الْغَيْرَ

Only he who fears God is  
 the hero إِنَّمَا مَنْ يَتَّقِي اللَّهَ الْبَطَلُ

The ن of declension which follows the five verbs in the nominative case may be implied when followed by the ن of protection **الْوَقَايَةُ** and always when followed by the ن of assurance **التَّوَكُّيدُ**; as

Do you love me? **أَتُحِبُّونِي** or **أَتُحِبُّونِي**

Will not ye two serve God? **أَلَا تَعْبُدَانِ اللَّهَ**

ي, ا, و are implied in pronunciation when followed by **هَمْزَةُ الرَّمْلِ**; as

This is the judge's father **هَذَا أَبُو الْقَاضِي**

When the last letter in a word is dropped the sign of declension is implied upon it; as

This is a just judge **هَذَا قَاضٍ عَادِلٌ**

The ة is implied upon the ي and not on the ض.

The ن is omitted for **تَخْفِيف**, *lightening*, and the ي, ا, و are dropped because of two silent letters coming together.

## THE NUNATION. **التَّنْوِينُ**

The Tanween or Nunation is a quiescent ن annexed to a declinable word, the ن being suppressed and the final vowel doubled; as **رَجُلٌ, رَجُلٌ**.

The tanween is of various kinds, the chief of these are:

I. **تَنْوِينُ التَّكْنِينِ** which is annexed to wholly declinable nouns; as **رَجُلٌ, رَجَالٌ**

II. **تَنْوِينُ الْعِوَضِ** which is annexed to the forms of

certain forms of Plurals, when they end in weak letters in the nominative and genitive cases, the weak letter being dropped; and to the words كُذِّبَ, بَغِضَ instead of placing them in construction, اَلْبُضَافُ اِلَيْهِ; and to اِذْ when in construction with a noun of time; as

Maidens كُذِّ اَحَدٍ يَمُوتُ for كُذِّ يَمُوتُ, جَوَارِي for جَوَارِي, وَحِينَ اَرَاكَ for اِذْ سَاذْهَبْ اِلَى غَرَّةٍ وَحِينَئِذٍ اَرَاكَ.

III. تَنْوِينُ الْمُقَابَلَةِ which is annexed to the regular feminine plural so that it may resemble the ن of the regular masculine plural; as (مُؤْمِنَاتٍ), (مُؤْمِنِينَ).

IV. تَنْوِينُ التَّنْكِيرِ which is annexed to certain proper nouns that become indeclinable when used as common nouns; as

I passed Sibewaih and

another Sibewaih

مَرَرْتُ بِسَيْبَوَيْهٍ وَ سَيْبَوَيْهٍ آخَرَ

تَنْوِينُ التَّرْتِيبِ V. تَنْوِينُ التَّرْتِيبِ which is used in poetry.

## STATES OF THE NOUN IN DECLENSION AND INDECLENSION.

أَحْوَالُ الْأَسْمِ فِي الْأَعْرَابِ وَالْبِنَاءِ

Nouns originally admit of declension.

Verbs originally do not admit of declension.

Particles are always indeclinable.

The Noun may be:

I. Wholly Declined مُعَرَّبَةٌ تَمَامًا admitting of the = and تَنْوِينُ التَّمَكِينِ.

II. Imperfectly Declined مَمْنُوعٌ مِنَ الصَّرْفِ not admitting of the = or تَنْوِينُ التَّمَكِينِ.

III. Indeclinable مَبْنِيٌّ.

Nouns which resemble verbs resemble them also in being imperfectly declined, that is, they do not take the تَنْوِينِ or =, and those nouns which resemble particles, resemble them also in being indeclinable.

### الْمَمْنُوعُ مِنَ الصَّرْفِ

The word صَرَف in this connexion signifies the tanween or according to some grammarians the tanween and =; therefore the expression مَمْنُوعٌ مِنَ الصَّرْفِ is the inability of a word to take the tanween and =. All words which are مَمْنُوعَةٌ مِنَ الصَّرْفِ take = in the genitive and accusative cases.

### IMPERFECTLY DECLINED NOUNS.

#### الْأَسْمَاءُ الْمَمْنُوعَةُ مِنَ الصَّرْفِ

These are the following:

#### I. Nouns.

(a). Proper Nouns which have undergone change in form but not in meaning, they are:

|        |        |        |         |        |
|--------|--------|--------|---------|--------|
| عَمْرٌ | جُشَمٌ | دَلْفٌ | جَمَحٌ  | مَضْرٌ |
| زُحَلٌ | قُتَمٌ | عَصَمٌ | جُنَحَى | هَبْدٌ |
| زُفَرٌ | قُرَحٌ | تُعَلٌ | بُلُعٌ  | هَدَلٌ |



(b). Proper Nouns which are on measures peculiar to the verb, as **فَعْلَ**, **فُعِلَ**, and those measures which have as their prefix a servile letter which is also peculiar to the verb; as

**شَمَّرَ**, **أَحْمَدُ**, **تَدْمُرُ**, **يَزِيدُ**, **يَشْكُرُ**

(c). Proper Nouns which have **ان** affixed to them; as

**عُثْمَانُ**, **حَمْدَانُ**, **سَرْحَانُ**

(d). Compound Proper Nouns when the second part only is declined **مُرَكَّبٌ مَرْجِيٌّ**; as

**بَعْلَبَكْ**, **حَضْرَمَوْتُ**, **مَعْدِي كَرُبُ**

(e). Foreign Proper Nouns which have (1) more than three letters or (2) three letters with the second one vowelled; as

**إِبْرَاهِيمُ**, **يُوسُفُ**

(f). Proper Nouns ending with **ة** whether masculine or feminine; as

**طَلْحَةَ** (Masc.)

**فَاطِمَةَ** (Fem.)

(g). Feminine Proper Nouns (1) not ending with **ة** and of more than three letters, or (2) of three letters, or (2) of three letters with the second vowelled; as

**زَيْنَبُ**, **عَدَنُ**.

II. Adjectives (1) which have undergone change in form but not in meaning; as

I saw other women

**أَخَرَ** **رَأَيْتُ نِسَاءَ أَخَرَ** for **أَخَرَ**

(Nouns of Superiority are not made plural, dual, or feminine, unless they have the article or are in construction).



(2). Adjectives on the measure of verbs as أَحْمَرٌ red.  
(These are the nouns of attribute and the nouns of superiority).

(3). Adjectives ending with ان having ة on the ف; as

Fem. سَكْرَى drunken سَكْرَان

Adjectives come under these rules when they do not form their fem. with ة and when they are originally adjectives; but nouns used as adjectives; as أَرْبَعٌ and صَفْرَانٌ are wholly declinable.

III. All Nouns ending with an additional آ or ي; as

سُلَيْمَى, حُبْلَى, مَرَضَى, فَضْلَى  
خَنَسَاءَ, حَمْرَاءَ, أَصْدِقَاءَ, صَحْرَاءَ

IV. Plural Nouns on the measure of the plural of plurals i. e. nouns which have after the ل of plural two letters, or three letters the middle one being ي silent, as مَقَاتِيحَ, دِرَاهِمَ; if ة is added to the latter then the noun is wholly declinable, as أَسَاقِفَةٌ.

All these nouns when in construction or joined to the article take the = as a sign of the genitive.

#### OF NOUNS WHICH ARE INDECLINABLE.

بِنَاءُ الْأَسْمِ

When nouns resemble the particle they are indeclinable. Nouns resemble the particle:

I. When they have less than three radical letters.

II. When they have the meaning of the particle or

need like it other words to complete their meaning.

III. When they take the place of the verb without being affected by it.

IV. When they have no function in the sentence  
 مَهْلٍ as وَيْءٍ alas!

## INDECLINABLE NOUNS. الْأَسْمَاءُ الْمَبْنِيَّةُ

Indeclinable Nouns are:

I. The Personal Pronouns الضَّمَايِرُ (الشَّخْصِيَّةُ)

II. The Demonstrative Pronouns أَسْمَاءُ الْإِشَارَةِ

III. The Conditional Nouns أَسْمَاءُ الشَّرْطِ

IV. The Interrogative Pronouns أَسْمَاءُ الْإِسْتِفْهَامِ

V. The Relative Pronouns أَسْمَاءُ الْمَوْصُولِ

VI. The Interjections أَسْمَاءُ الْأَصْوَاتِ

VII. The Names of Verbs أَسْمَاءُ الْأَفْعَالِ

i. e. Adverbs which perform the function of Verbs.

VIII. Some Adverbs بَعْضُ الظَّرُوفِ

These nouns always resemble particles and are therefore always indeclinable. Nouns which sometimes resemble particles are only at such times indeclinable; these are:

I. Nouns directly addressed by  
 the vocative

الْمَقْصُودُ بِالنِّدَاءِ

## II. The subject of the Absolute

Negative in certain states

لَا النَّافِيَةُ لِلْجِنْسِ

## III. The Compound Numerals from 11 to 19.

## IV. Some Adverbs.

Indeclinable words should have the ة, but if the word is of one letter only, or if its penultimate is a silent letter, it cannot take the ة.

Words which are indeclinable because of their position in the sentence do not take the ة.

The preterite, imperative, and the aorist with the ن of assurance or ن feminine affixed to it, are indeclinable; the aorist in other forms is declinable.

Sometimes the signs of indeclension are implied; as

O Hathami

يَا حَٰثِمَ

There is no youth with you

لَا فَتًى عِنْدَكُمْ

## DEFINITE NOUNS.

The Noun is either Definite مَعْرِفَةٌ or Indefinite نَكِرَةٌ.

The Definite Nouns are:

(a). The personal pronoun, (b) proper noun, (c) demonstrative pronoun, (d) relative pronoun, (e) noun made definite by the article, (f) noun in construction with a definite noun, (g) noun definitely addressed by the vocative.

## SPEECH. **اَلْكَلَامُ**

Speech consists of sentences **جُمْلَة** pl. of **جُمْلَة**, each of which has necessarily a subject and predicate.

The subject is called **اَلْمُسْنَدُ اِلَيْهِ**, *that upon which the attribute leans*, that to which something is attributed, the predicate **اَلْمُسْنَدُ** *that which leans upon or is supported*, whilst the relation between them is called **اَلْاِسْنَادُ** *the act of leaning*.

The principal part of a sentence or clause (which is absolutely essential to the meaning) is called **اَلْعُبْدَةُ** *the support*, and the subordinate part (which may be dispensed with), as for instance the objective complement of the verb, **اَلْفَضْلَةُ** *that which is in excess*.

Under the term **عُبْدَةٌ** are included (a) **اَلْفَاعِلُ** the agent, (b) **نَائِبُ اَلْفَاعِلِ** the substitute for the agent, and (c) **اَلْمُبْتَدَأُ وَ اَلْخَبَرُ** the subject and predicate; the term **فَضْلَةٌ** includes all other nouns in the sentence.

Sentences which begin with the subject (substantive or pronoun) are called **جُمْلَة اِسْمِيَّة** *Nominal Sentences*.

A nominal sentence is distinguished by the absence of a logical copula either expressed by or contained in a finite verb; but a sentence where the predicate is a verb preceding the subject, as **قَامَ زَيْدٌ** or one consisting of a verb which includes both subject and predi-

cate, as **مَاتَ** he died, is called **جُمْلَةٌ فِعْلِيَّةٌ** *Verbal Sentence*.

The subject of a nominal sentence is called **الْمُبْتَدَأُ** *that with which a beginning is made*, the inchoative; and its predicate **الْخَبَرُ** *the announcement*.

The subject of a verbal sentence is called **الْفَاعِلُ** *the agent*, and its predicate **الْفِعْلُ** *the action or verb*.

A verbal sentence relates an act or event, while as a rule, a nominal sentence is descriptive of a person or thing; as **الْمَلِكُ مَرِيضٌ** the king is ill; and in nominal sentences the **مُبْتَدَأٌ** always implies contrast with another **مُبْتَدَأٌ**.

**زَيْدٌ قَامَ وَعَمْرُوهُ جَلَسَ** Zaid rose and Amr sat,  
whilst in the verbal sentence the emphasis rests solely upon the verb.

In order to avoid difficulties and misconceptions it is necessary that these terms agent and **مُبْتَدَأٌ** be maintained.

### THE NOMINATIVE CASE.

The following are in the Nominative case:

I. The Agent **الْفَاعِلُ** **الْمَرْفُوعَاتُ**.

II. The Substitute for the Agent **نَائِبُ الْفَاعِلِ** Subject of a passive verb.

III. The Subject  
IV. The Predicate **الْمُبْتَدَأُ وَ الْخَبَرُ**.



V. The Subject *اسم* of *أَخَوَاتِهَا* *كَانَ* وَ.

VI. The Predicate of *أَخَوَاتِهَا* *إِنَّ* وَ and of *الْإِنْفِيَةِ* *لَا* the Absolute Negative.

VII. The Aorist when not acted upon by particles, nor followed by *ن* of feminine, or *ن* of Assurance.

VIII. Appositives or nouns in apposition to Nominatives.

## THE VERBAL SENTENCE. *الْفَاعِلُ وَالْفِعْلُ*

### *The Agent and the Verb.*

The Noun is called the agent when it is preceded by the verb in the active voice.

It may be a noun *إِسْمٌ ظَاهِرٌ* or a personal pronoun expressed or understood *صَمِيرٌ بَارِزٌ أَوْ مُسْتَتِرٌ*.

The agent in both dual and plural of the masc. and fem. takes the verb in the singular; as

The believers came

*جَاءَ الْمُؤْمِنُونَ*

The women spoke

*تَكَلَّمَتِ النِّسَاءُ*

The two men rose

*قَامَ الرَّجُلَانِ*

The two women sat

*جَلَسَتِ الْمَرْأَتَانِ*

The verb must have the sign of feminine when the agent is a real fem. noun singular not separated from the verb; also when the agent is a feminine personal pronoun; as

Mary feared the angel

*مَرْيَمُ خَافَتْ مِنَ الْمَلَكِ*

Mary understood

فَهَمَّتْ مَرْيَمَ

In the first of these sentences مَرْيَمَ is Muftada and خَافَتْ a sentence composed of the verb and the implied fem. pronoun هِيَ which refers to Mary.

The verb may or may not take the sign of fem. in the following cases:

I. Where the verb is separated from its agent in the fem.; as

Mary came to-day

جَاءَتْ or جَاءَ الْيَوْمَ مَرْيَمَ

Note if إِلَّا separates them, it is best to drop the ت fem.; as

No one came but Mary

مَا جَاءَ إِلَّا مَرْيَمَ

II. Where the agent is not a real feminine; as

The sun rose

طَلَعَتْ or طَلَعَ السَّنْسُ

III. In all plurals except the reg. masc. plural; as

The believers came (fem.)

جَاءَتْ or جَاءَ الْمُؤْمِنَاتُ

The men knew

عَرَفَتْ or عَرَفَ الرِّجَالُ

The winds blew

هَبَّتْ or هَبَّ الرِّيحُ

IV. Where the verb does not admit of conjugation; as

Hind is praise worthy

نِعَمْتُ، نِعَمَ هِنْدُ

Hind is not standing

لَيْسَتْ، لَيْسَ هِنْدُ وَاقِفَةً

## POSITION OF THE AGENT IN THE SENTENCE.

The agent should immediately follow the verb, but in the following cases it is preceded by the object:

I. When the action of the verb is confined to the agent by **إِلَّا** preceded by **مَا** **لَا** or **أَنْمَا**; as

No one provides for mankind

except God

مَا يَرْزُقُ الْخَلْقَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ

Only Zaid struck Amr

أَنْمَا ضَرَبَ عَمْرًا زَيْدٌ

II. When the object is an attached pronoun and the agent a noun; as

My father loves me

يُحِبُّنِي أَبِي

III. When the agent contains a pronoun which refers to the object; as

The blossom beautified the trees

زَانَ الشَّجَرُ زَهْرَهُ

### THE AGENT PRECEDES THE OBJECT.

I. When the action is restricted to the latter by the particles **أَنْمَا** or **إِلَّا**; as

The sailor hears nothing

but the waves

لَا يَسْمَعُ الْمَلَّاحُ إِلَّا الْأَمْوَاجَ

II. When it is an attached pronoun; as

I honoured the king

أَكْرَمْتُ الْمَلِكَ

III. When it cannot be distinguished from the object by case endings or by meaning; as

This person loved that

أَحَبَّ هَذَا ذَاكَ

Jesus lived in the same age as John

عَامَرَ عَيْسَى يَحْيَى

The verb may be omitted but the agent must always be either expressed or understood; as

Who came? Zaid (came)

مَنْ جَاءَ؟ (جَاءَ) زَيْدٌ

The verb is necessarily omitted when a noun in the nominative case follows a particle which is specially used with verbs; as **إِنِ إِذَا**.

If thou honourest the honourable one, thou wilt have gained him; and if thou honourest the base one, he will rebel

**إِذَا أَنْتَ أَكْرَمْتَ الْكَرِيمَ مَلَكَتَهُ وَإِنْ أَنْتَ أَكْرَمْتَ اللَّئِيمَ تَمَرَدَ**

The nouns of agent, attribute, object, superiority, action, names of verbs, and nouns resembling any of these, may also have an agent.

#### THE SUBJECT OF A PASSIVE VERB.

##### نَائِبُ الْفَاعِلِ

*Substitute for the Agent.*

The object of a passive verb is put in the nominative case; as

Thou wast struck

ضُرِبْتَ

No one was struck but thyself

مَا ضُرِبَ إِلَّا أَنْتَ

The thief was imprisoned

سُجِّنَ اللَّصُّ

If, however, the object is not found in the sentence the noun of action or an adverbial or prepositional phrase stands for the agent, and must be made definite by (1) being qualified or (2) being in construction or (3) being a proper noun or (4) being numbered; as

(1). A just judgment was decreed **قَضِيَ قَضَاءٌ عَدْلٌ**

(2). The place of the prince was occupied

جُلِسَ مَكَانُ الْأَمِيرِ

(3). Zaid was passed by

مَرَّ بِزَيْدٍ

(4). The Sabbath was kept

حُفِظَ السَّبْتُ

Many sayings were spoken

قِيلَ أَقْوَالٌ

The noun of action, adverb, and preposition must be مُتَنَصِّرٌ i. e. capable of having different functions in the sentence, unlike

وَأَوَّ الْقَسَمِ، عِنْدَ، سُبْحَانَ

The Agent is omitted:

(a). Because unknown or well-known or unimportant; as

The house was robbed

سُرِقَ الْبَيْتُ

The bell was rung

قُرِعَ الْجَرَسُ

The world was created

خُلِقَتِ الدُّنْيَا

(b). Brevity of speech, rhyme or measure in poetry, or concealment.

When a verb has two or more objects in the active voice, the first takes the place of the agent in the passive voice; as

Zaid was clad in a coat

كُسِيَ زَيْدٌ جُبَّةً

Amr clothed Zaid with a coat

كَسَا عَمْرُو زَيْدًا جُبَّةً

I informed the men that

the prince was coming

أَخْبَرْتُ النَّاسَ الْأَمِيرَ قَادِمًا

The men were informed that

the prince was coming

أُخْبِرَتِ النَّاسُ الْأَمِيرَ قَادِمًا



## THE NOMINAL SENTENCE. <sup>اَلْمُبْتَدَأُ</sup>وَالْخَبَرُ

<sup>اَلْمُبْتَدَأُ</sup> *that which begins* or stands at the head of a sentence is the noun <sup>اِسْمٌ</sup> or subject of a nominal sentence and is put in the nominative case on account of the absence of any word governing it.

It is originally a substantive <sup>مَوْصُوفٌ</sup> *that which admits of description* forming the subject of the sentence. It is also an adjective <sup>صِفَةٌ</sup> forming the predicate of the sentence when it occurs after a negative or interrogative particle, in which case it takes an agent instead of a <sup>خَبَرٌ</sup> predicate.

The term <sup>مَوْصُوفٌ</sup> comprises common and proper nouns, the nouns of time and place, and nouns of instrument. The term <sup>صِفَةٌ</sup> comprises the nouns of agent, object, adjective resembling the agent, and the nouns of superiority and excess.

---

## EXAMPLES OF SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

## الْمُبْتَدَأُ وَالْخَبَرُ

|                                                                               | الْمُبْتَدَأُ         | الْخَبَرُ                             |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Study is pleasant                                                             | الدَّرْسُ             | لَدِيدٌ                               |
| Are you forsaking my<br>gods, O Abraham                                       | أَرَاغِبُ             | أَنْتَ عَنْ آلِهَتِي يَا إِبْرَاهِيمُ |
| Zaid his father is a learned<br>man                                           | زَيْدٌ                | أَبُوهُ عَالِمٌ                       |
| God provides for us                                                           | اللَّهُ               | يَرْزُقُنَا                           |
| The patient how is he<br>this morning?                                        | الْمَرِيضُ            | كَيْفَ أَصْبَحَ                       |
| My friend let him come                                                        | صَدِيقِي              | لِيَأْتِ                              |
| The age is two days, a<br>day for you and a day<br>against you                | الدَّهْرُ             | يَوْمَانِ                             |
|                                                                               | يَوْمٌ                | لَكَ                                  |
|                                                                               | وَيَوْمٌ              | عَلَيْكَ                              |
| The orator is on the platform                                                 | الْكَاطِبُ            | فَوْقَ الْمِنْبَرِ                    |
| Men continue in their fol-<br>lies whilst the mill stone<br>of death grinding | النَّاسُ              | فِي غَفْلَاتِهِمْ                     |
| Examples of                                                                   | وَرَحَى الْمَنِيَّةِ  | تَطْحَنُ                              |
|                                                                               | الْخَبَرُ             | الْمُبْتَدَأُ                         |
| To every disease there is<br>a remedy                                         | لِكُلِّ دَاءٍ         | دَوَاءٌ                               |
| The beloved of my beloved<br>is beloved to my heart                           | حَبِيبٌ إِلَى قَلْبِي | حَبِيبُ حَبِيبِي                      |

## THE PREDICATE.

The predicate completes the meaning of the subject.  
It must be indefinite and follow the subject.

It may be:

I. <sup>9</sup>مُفْرَدٌ that is a singular, dual, or plural noun; as

The two boys are coming <sup>ك</sup>الْفُتَيَّانِ قَادِمَانِ

The believers are happy <sup>ك</sup>الْمُؤْمِنُونَ سَعْدَاءُ

Knowledge is useful <sup>ك</sup>الْعِلْمُ نَافِعٌ

II. <sup>9</sup>جُمْلَةٌ a sentence. This sentence may be:

1). <sup>9</sup>خَبَرِيَّةٌ Enunciative.

(a) Nominal <sup>9</sup>اِسْمِيَّةٌ, (b) verbal <sup>9</sup>فِعْلِيَّةٌ, (c) conditional

<sup>9</sup>شَرْطِيَّةٌ; as

(a). The man his son is rich <sup>ك</sup>الرَّجُلُ ابْنُهُ غَنِيٌّ

(b). The man is praying <sup>ك</sup>الرَّجُلُ يُصَلِّي

(c). The king, if you obey  
him, will honour you <sup>ك</sup>الْمَلِكُ إِنْ أَطَعْتَهُ يُكْرِمُكَ

2). <sup>9</sup>جُمْلَةٌ اِنْشَائِيَّةٌ Inceptive, expressing volition or beginning.

(a) imperative, (b) interrogative, (c) prohibitive.

(a). Zaid let him stand <sup>ك</sup>زَيْدٌ لِيَقِفْ

(b). Zaid is he standing? <sup>ك</sup>زَيْدٌ هَلْ هُوَ قَائِمٌ

(c). You there is no welcome for you <sup>ك</sup>أَنْتُمْ لَا مَرْحَبًا بِكُمْ

III. <sup>9</sup>شِبْهُ اَلْجُمْلَةِ. An adverbial or prepositional phrase.

The believers are in Paradise <sup>ك</sup>الْمُؤْمِنُونَ فِي اَلْجَنَّةِ

The angels are with God      الْمَلَائِكَةُ عِنْدَ اللَّهِ

An adverbial phrase expressing time cannot be the predicate of a concrete noun. We cannot say

The man is to-day      الرَّجُلُ الْيَوْمَ

The house is to-morrow      الْبَيْتُ غَدًا

but we may say

The prayer is to-day      الصَّلَاةُ الْيَوْمَ

The departure is on the morrow      الرَّحِيلُ غَدًا

When the predicate is an adverbial or prepositional phrase, a verb or adjective implying simple existence is understood, and this verb or adjective forms the predicate; as

The war (will be) to-morrow      الْحَرْبُ (تَكُونُ) غَدًا

The king (is) upon his throne      الْمَلِكُ (كَائِنٌ) عَلَى عَرْشِهِ

The predicate must always be connected with the subject by a رَابِطٌ binder. This may be:

(a). A personal or demonstrative pronoun; as

Zaid I know him      زَيْدٌ أَعْرِفُهُ

The garment of piety, that is

better      لِبَاسُ التَّقْوَى ذَا لِي خَيْرٌ

(b). A simple repetition of the subject, or the subject may be included in the predicate; as

The day of judgment: what

is the day of judgment?      يَوْمُ الدِّينِ مَا يَوْمُ الدِّينِ

Zaid is a good man of men      زَيْدٌ نِعَمَ الرَّجُلِ

here رَجُلٌ is defined by the article اَلْجِنْسِيَّةُ and therefore includes all men, of whom Zaid is one.

The رَابِط is unnecessary:

(a). When the predicate is a primitive noun; as

Zaid is my brother زَيْدٌ أَخِي

but if the primitive noun has the meaning of a derived noun it must have the رَابِط; as

Zaid is a lion (i. e. brave) زَيْدٌ أَسَدٌ (شُجَاعٌ)

Zaid that is a brother (friend) زَيْدٌ ذَاكَ أَخٌ (صَدِيقٌ)

(b). When the predicate is a repetition of the subject; as

The fact is, (الْأَمْرُ = هُوَ) God is one هُوَ اللَّهُ أَحَدٌ

My belief is, God is my sufficiency اِعْتِقَادِيَّ اللَّهُ حَسْمِي

In such a sentence as

Zaid is a lover of Amr زَيْدٌ عَمْرُو مُحِبُّهُ هُوَ

the رَابِط must be expressed, otherwise ambiguity will arise as to who loves and who is loved.

## AGREEMENT OF SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

The predicate, when it contains a pronoun referring to the subject, agrees in number and gender with the subject; as

Miriam is good مَرِيَمٌ صَالِحَةٌ

God does (هُوَ) what He wills اللَّهُ يَفْعَلُ مَا يَشَاءُ

The two brothers are sitting (هُمَا) الْأَخَوَانِ جَالِسَانِ



The prophets هُم are holy الْأَنْبِيَاءُ قَدْ يَسُونُ

The men هُم arose الرَّجَالُ قَامُوا

but when there is no such pronoun there may or may not be agreement; as

Knowledge is of two kinds الْعِلْمُ عِلْمَانِ

Declinable nouns are of two kinds الْأَسْمَاءُ الْمَعْرَبَةُ قِسْمَانِ

The subject should be definite and precede the predicate مَعْرِفَةٌ مُقَدَّمَةٌ, but it may be indefinite:

I. When it is preceded (a) by a negative or an interrogative particle; or (b) by an adverbial or a prepositional phrase as خَبَرٌ; as

(a). I have not a book مَا كِتَابٌ لِي

Is anything impossible هَلْ شَيْءٌ غَيْرٌ مُسْتَطَاعٍ

(b). To every good horse there is a fall لِكُلِّ جَوَادٍ كَبُوءَةٌ

II. When it is qualified or an adjective, or has the signification of an adjective; as

One who prays and performs not is as a bow without a string دَاعٍ بِلَا عَمَلٍ كَقَوْسٍ بِلَا وَتَرٍ

A believer is better than an infidel مُؤْمِنٌ خَيْرٌ مِنْ كَافِرٍ

Something (great) made him good مَا أَحْسَنَهُ

III. When it is in construction; as

The conscience of a man in his guide صَمِيرُ الْإِنْسَانِ دَلِيلُهُ

An hour's righteousness is better than a thousand years' worship بَرْ سَاعَةٍ خَيْرٌ مِنْ عِبَادَةٍ أَلْفِ سَنَةٍ

IV. When it expresses condition, or is an answer to a question; as

He who comes to me will find rest      مَنْ يَأْتِ إِلَيَّ يَسْتَرْحِ

Who has come to you?      مَنْ جَاءَ عِنْدَكَ

A man (has come to me)      رَجُلٌ (جَاءَ عِنْدِي)

V. When it is (a) an inclusive expression or (b) denotes separation into kinds; as

(a). All die      كُلُّ يَمُوتُ

A date tree is better than a fig tree      نَخْلَةٌ خَيْرٌ مِنْ تِينَةٍ

(b). One day is against us and another for us      فَيَوْمٌ عَلَيْنَا وَ يَوْمٌ لَنَا

VI. When it expresses supplication or imprecation; as

A curse upon Satan      لَعْنَةُ عَلَى الشَّيْطَانِ

Peace upon you      سَلَامٌ لَكُمْ

VII. When it is joined by a conjunction to (a) a definite noun, (b) an adjective, or (c) a qualified noun; as

(a). A man and his friend hold converse      رَجُلٌ وَصَدِيقُهُ يَتَكَلَّمَانِ

A book and the Bible are lost      كِتَابٌ وَالتَّوْرَةُ مَفْقُودَانِ

(b). A man and a wise man are travelling      رَجُلٌ وَعَالِمٌ سَائِحَانِ

(c). A man and a strong lion strive together      رَجُلٌ وَآسَدٌ قَوِيٌّ يَتَصَارَعَانِ

VIII. If it follow إِذَا (الْعَبَّاسِيَّةُ) وَلَوْ لَا (الْحَكَّالُ) or كَمْ (الْخَمِيرِيَّةُ).

I entered and behold a  
 thief in the house دَخَلْتُ فَإِذَا سَارِقٌ فِي الْبَيْتِ  
 Had it not been for love I would  
 have become weary لَوْلَا مَحَبَّةٌ لَكَ لَكَلْتُ  
 I went forth whilst a star  
 was shining خَرَجْتُ وَنَجْمٌ قَدْ أَضَاءَ  
 How many she-camels you have كَمْ نَافَاةً لَكَ

---

The Predicate may be definite when it is to the person addressed as an indefinite noun; as

This is my brother هَذَا أَخِي  
 said to one who does not know him.

Also when the noun is made definite by the article; as

This is the horse هَذَا الْخِصَانُ  
 said to a man to whom the horse was mentioned.

## THE SUBJECT PRECEDES THE PREDICATE

I. When both are either definite or indefinite; as

My brother is my friend أَخِي صَدِيقِي  
 A book is better كِتَابٌ أَفْضَلُ  
 God is the creator اللَّهُ الْخَالِقُ

II. When the predicate is a verb containing a pronoun in the nominative case referring to the subject; as

Love suffereth long and is kind الْمَحَبَّةُ تَتَأَنَّى وَتَرْفُقُ

III. When the predicate is restricted by **إِنَّمَا** or by **لَا** after the negatives **مَا** and **لَا**; as

Victory is only to those who  
are patient

إِنَّمَا الْفَوْزُ لِلصَّابِرِينَ

Paradise is not except for  
the good (lit.)

مَا الْجَنَّةُ إِلَّا لِلصَّالِحِينَ

IV. When the **لَا** of assurance is prefixed to the subject; as

Of a truth thou art Lord

لَأَنْتَ سَيِّدٌ

V. When the subject expresses (a) condition, (b) interrogation, or (c) when it is in construction with either of these; as

(a). Whomsoever I looked for I did  
not find

أَيُّ طَلَبْتُهُ لَمْ أَجِدْهُ

(b). Who is present

مَنْ حَاضِرٌ

(c). Whose son is in the house

إِبْنُ مَنْ فِي الْبَيْتِ

#### THE PREDICATE PRECEDES THE SUBJECT

I. When the **مُبْتَدَأٌ** is indefinite and the **خَبَرٌ** is (a) an adverbial or (b) a prepositional phrase; as

(a). I have a pen

عِنْدِي قَلَمٌ لِي قَلَمٌ

(b). Between prodigality and miserliness there is a medium

بَيْنَ تَبَذُّرٍ وَبُخْلِ رُتَبَةٌ

To everything which inflicts an injury however trifling there is pain (lit.)

لِكُلِّ مَا يُؤْذِي وَلَوْ قَلَّ أَلَمٌ

II. When the subject contains a pronoun referring to the predicate; as

The pleasure of the eye is its

beloved (lit. filling)

مِلْدُ عَيْنٍ حَبِيبُهَا

In the house is its owner

فِي الدَّارِ صَاحِبُهَا

III. When the subject is restricted by *إِنَّمَا* or by *إِلَّا* with the negatives *مَا* and *لَا*.

There is no guide but God

مَا هَادٍ إِلَّا اللَّهُ

Only God is forgiving

إِنَّمَا الْغَافِرُ اللَّهُ

IV. When it has the chief place in the sentence; as

Whose son are thou?

إِبْنُ مَنْ أَنْتَ

Where is the way?

أَيْنَ الطَّرِيقُ

#### SUPPRESSION OF SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

Either subject or predicate may be omitted in such sentences as

Who is with you? Zaid (is with me)

مَنْ عِنْدَكَ زَيْدٌ (عِنْدِي)

How is Zaid? (Zaid) is well

كَيْفَ زَيْدٌ (زَيْدٌ) صَحِيحٌ

Also after *إِذَا* expressing suddenness; as

I went forth and behold!

the lion (standing)

خَرَجْتُ فَإِذَا الْأَسَدُ (وَاقِفًا)

The snake, the snake, (is here)!

الْحَيَّةُ الْحَيَّةُ (هُنَا)

A gazelle, a gazelle!

(هَذَا) غَزَالٌ غَزَالٌ

(This is) the first chapter

(هَذَا) الْأَصْحَاحُ الْأَوَّلُ



The subject must be omitted in the following places:

I. Where the qualifying adjective is used as a predicate to an omitted subject **النَّعْتُ الْمَقْطُوعُ**; as

I saw a man (he is) a generous

man

رَأَيْتُ رَجُلًا (هُوَ) كَرِيمٌ

II. After verbs of praise or blame; as

Good the man (the praised)

Abdullah

نِعَمَ الرَّجُلُ (الْمَمْدُوحُ) عَبْدُ اللَّهِ

Evil the man (the blamed)

Mohammed

بِئْسَ الرَّجُلُ (الْمَذْمُومُ) مُحَمَّدٌ

III. When the predicate is a noun of action taking the place of the verb; as

(My patience is) excellent patience **صَبْرِي صَبْرٌ جَيِّدٌ**

(His love is) a great love **(مَحَبَّتُهُ) مَحَبَّةٌ عَظِيمَةٌ**

IV. When the predicate is an oath, the subject must be omitted, and conversely when the subject is an oath, the predicate must be omitted; as

I swear by my conscience

that I will do this

فِي ذِمَّتِي (يَمِينُ) لَفَعَلَنْ كَذَا

I swear by thy life there is no one remaining upon earth

لَعَمْرُكَ (قَسَمِي) لَيْسَ فَوْقَ الْأَرْضِ بَاقٍ

The Predicate is omitted (a) after **لَوْلَا** when it signifies simple existence; as

Had Zaid not been present

I must have perished

لَوْلَا زَيْدٌ (حَاضِرٌ) لَهْلَكْتُ

but it cannot be omitted when anything but mere existence is implied; as

Had Zaid not acted graciously

I would have perished لَوْلَا زَيْدٌ مُّحْسِنٌ لَهْلَكْتُ

(b) after , having the meaning of with; as

Every man and his work كُلُّ رَجُلٍ وَعَمَلُهُ (مُقْتَرِنَانِ)

The Subject may have more than one predicate; as

The dog is sagacious (and) faithful الْكَلْبُ نَيِّبٌ أَمِينٌ

here the conjunction may be used.

The predicate may be introduced by ف when the subject is (a) a relative pronoun, (b) an indefinite noun qualified by a sentence, or (c) an adverbial or prepositional phrase; as

A man outrunning gains

the prize رَجُلٌ يَسْبِقُ فَيَكْسِبُ الْجَائِزَةَ

### THE ADJECTIVE. الْمُبْتَدَأُ الصِّفَةُ

This is the singular adjective preceded by an interrogative or negative particle and has for its nominative a noun or a detached pronoun which forms the subject of the sentence. This noun is the agent and takes the place of the predicate; as

Are you ready?

هَلْ مُسْتَعِدٌّ أَنْتَ

here مُسْتَعِدٌّ is the adjective and أَنْتَ the pronoun in the nominative case.

This sentence admits of two grammatical explanations  
 (a) مُسْتَعِدَّةٌ is the مُبْتَدَأٌ and أَنْتَ is the agent which  
 takes the place of the خَبَرٌ, (b) مُسْتَعِدَّةٌ is the predicate  
 and أَنْتَ is the subject with the order reversed.

When without the particle of interrogation or nega-  
 tion the sentence is of the first kind, as the adjective  
 is always the predicate and the noun the subject.

If the noun is dual or plural, the adjective is the  
 subject; as

Are the two men standing? هَذَانِ قَائِمٌ الرَّجُلَانِ

Are thy sons beloved? هَذَانِ مَحْبُوبٌ بَنُوكَ

The صِفَةٌ has the action of the verb, and this action  
 is strengthened when the صِفَةٌ is preceded by particles  
 which are originally peculiar to verbs. The اِسْمٌ which  
 follows the صِفَةٌ is therefore called the agent.

#### WORDS WHICH AFFECT THE SUBJECT AND PREDICATE. النَّوَاسِخُ

from نَسَخَ to cancel.

النَّوَاسِخُ are certain verbs and particles which precede  
 the subject and predicate and change the declension  
 and meaning of the latter.

The Verbs are:

كَانَ وَأَخْوَاتُهَا الْأَفْعَالُ النَّاقِصَةُ Abstract Verbs.

كَادَ وَأَخْوَاتُهَا أَفْعَالُ الْمُقَارَبَةِ Approximate Verbs.

ظَنَّ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا أَفْعَالُ الْقُلُوبِ Verbs denoting a Mental Process.

صَيَّرَ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا أَفْعَالُ التَّحْوِيلِ Verbs of Change.

أَعْلَمَ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا Verbs which take three Objects.

The Particles are:

لَيْسَ PARTICLES WHICH RESEMBLE  
لَا النَّافِيَةُ لِلْجِنْسِ the Absolute Negative  
إِنَّ and Sisters.

Some of these verbs take the subject and predicate as their objects, viz.

ظَنَّ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا صَيَّرَ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا أَعْلَمَ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا

Some take the subject as their *إِسْم* noun and the predicate as their *خبر* (predicate), viz.

لَا النَّافِيَةُ لِلْجِنْسِ كَانَ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا  
إِنَّ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا كَادَ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا  
أَلَمْ يُشَبَّهَتْ بِلَيْسَ

As regards government they are divided into three classes:

I. Those which put the subject in the nominative, and the predicate in the accusative, viz.

كَانَ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا كَادَ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا أَلَمْ يُشَبَّهَتْ بِلَيْسَ

II. Those which put the *إِسْم* in the accusative and the predicate in the nominative, viz.

لَا النَّافِيَةُ لِلْجِنْسِ إِنَّ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا

III. Those which put the subject and predicate in the accusative as their objects:

ظَنَّ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا صَيَّرَ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا أَعْلَمَ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا

كَانَ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا

|                                                  |   |                                      |   |          |
|--------------------------------------------------|---|--------------------------------------|---|----------|
| I. Conjugated throughout and form derived nouns. | { | To be                                | { | كَانَ    |
|                                                  |   | To become                            |   | صَارَ    |
|                                                  |   | To be or do something in the morning |   | أَصْبَحَ |
|                                                  |   | " " " " " before noon                |   | أَضْحَى  |
|                                                  |   | " " " " " in the day                 |   | 1) ظَلَّ |
|                                                  |   | " " " " " in the evening             |   | أَمْسَى  |
|                                                  |   | " " " " " in the night               |   | بَاتَ    |

*To continue: —*

|                                        |   |                      |              |
|----------------------------------------|---|----------------------|--------------|
| II. Used in preterite and aorist only. | { | He did not cease     | مَا رَالَ    |
|                                        |   | He did not leave off | مَا بَرَحَ   |
|                                        |   | He desisted not from | مَا أَنْفَكَ |
|                                        |   | He relinquished not  | مَا فَتَى    |
| III. Preterite only.                   | { | As long as           | مَا دَامَ    |
|                                        |   | Not                  | لَيْسَ       |

1) These verbs are commonly used without reference to the special times implied in their meanings; so that أَصْبَحَ أَمْسَى أَضْحَى have the meaning of صَارَ to become; ظَلَّ بَاتَ signify a longer duration of time.



## EXAMPLES.

The earth was with-  
out form and void

كَانَتْ الْأَرْضُ خَرَبَةً وَخَالِيَةً  
صَارَ الْوَقْتُ قَرِيبًا

The time became near  
He, who overcomes,  
may be overcome

قَدْ يُضَيِّحُ الْغَالِبُ مَغْلُوبًا

The horseman became  
a captive

أَصْلَحَى الْفَارِسُ أَسِيرًا

The army remained  
in readiness

ظَلَّتِ الْجُنُودُ مُسْتَعِدَّةً

My friend became  
distant (space)

أَمْسَى صَدِيقِي بَعِيدًا

The camel-driver has  
kept on driving fast

قَدْ بَاتَ الْكَامِلِيُّ يَزْجُرُهَا

The beloved one will  
not cease to be loved

لَا يَزَالُ الْكَئِيبُ حَمِيمًا

I did not cease to live  
in Jerusalem

لَمْ أَبْرَحْ سَاكِنًا فِي أُورُشَلِيمَ

He will not cease to  
be angry

لَا يَنْفَكُ يَغْضَبُ

He will not cease to  
interfere in our affairs

مَا فَتَنِي يَتَدَاخِلُ فِي أُمُورِنَا

Walk in the light, as long  
as the light is with you

أَسْلُكُوا فِي النُّورِ مَا دَامَ النُّورُ لَكُمْ

A highwayman is not  
a hero

لَيْسَ مَنْ يَقْطَعُ طُرُقَنَا بَطَلًا

الْأَفْعَالُ النَّاقِصَةُ كَادَ and أَخَوَانَهَا and كَانَ and أَخَوَانَهَا are called *incomplete verbs* because they require more than the subject to complete their meaning.

The conjugated forms of these verbs have the same action as the preterite.

كَانَ only may take a verb in the preterite as predicate in which case it may be preceded by قَدْ; the remainder require the verb to be in the aorist; as

Zaid had departed      كَانَ زَيْدٌ قَدْ أَنْطَلَقَ

The predicate may precede a verb which is conjugated throughout; but with the other verbs the order must be preserved.

The اِسْمٌ with the verb follows the rules of the agent with its verb in all respects; that is, the verb takes its اِسْمٌ in the nominative and its خَبَرٌ in the accusative; as

Zaid was standing      كَانَ زَيْدٌ قَائِمًا

Zaid beat Amr      ضَرَبَ زَيْدٌ عَمْرًا

The اِسْمٌ with the predicate follows the same rules as the subject and predicate اَلْمُبْتَدَأُ وَالْخَبَرُ of a nominal sentence; as

No one was standing except Zaid      مَا كَانَ قَائِمًا إِلَّا زَيْدٌ

All these verbs except مَا دَامَ, مَا لَيْسَ, and مَا فَتِيَ may be used as perfect verbs when their meaning is made complete by the agent; as

Zaid existed **كَانَ زَيْدٌ** Zaid spent the night **بَاتَ زَيْدٌ**

What we have done we have done **قَدْ كَانَ مَا كَانَ مِنَّا**

The particle of negation **مَا** which precedes **زَالَ**, **بَرِحَ**, **إِنْفَكَ**, **فَتِيَ** may be replaced by (a) **لَا أَلَدَّعَاءَ** *supplication*,  
(b) **لَا أَلْنَهِي** *prohibition* or (c) **لَا أَلِنْكَارِي** *denial*:

(a). May you ever be blessed **لَا زِلْتَ مُبَارَكًا**

(b). Do not cease to be patient **لَا تَزَلْ صَابِرًا**

(c). Will the lad continue ignorant **هَلْ يَبْرَحُ الْعَلَامُ جَاهِلًا**

Any particle, verb, or noun having the meaning of the negative may be substituted for **مَا**; as

Zaid does not cease to be generous **زَيْدٌ غَيْرُ زَائِلٍ كَرِيمًا**

The judge does not cease to judge **لَيْسَ يَنْفَكُ الْقَاضِيُ يَقْضِي**

The **مَا** which precedes **دَامَ** is the **مَصْدَرِيَّة زَمْنِيَّة**.

I will not accompany you

as long as I live **لَا أَصْحَبُكَ مَا دُمْتُ حَيًّا**

Note: There are other verbs which are incomplete with a subject alone; the are made to follow **كَانَ**; as

To go in the morning **غَدَا** To go in the evening **رَاحَ**

To return **عَادَ, رَجَعَ, إِرْتَدَّ** To become **أَصْ**

Zaid returned disappointed **عَادَ زَيْدٌ خَائِبًا**

Like **مَا رَالَ** are **مَا رَامَ** and **مَا وَنَى**.

After the conditional particles **إِنْ** and **لَوْ**, **كَانَ** and its **إِسْم** may be omitted; as

The witness, if he is alone, is

as nothing **أَلشَّاهِدُ إِنْ فَرَدًا عَدَمٌ**

Seek, even though it be

a ring of iron

إِلْتَمِسْ وَلَوْ خَاتَمًا مِنْ حَدِيدٍ

The apocopated form of كَانَ when occurring in the middle of a sentence and not joined to a pronoun may drop the ن; as

Be not afraid

لَا تَكُ خَائِفًا

# APPROXIMATE VERBS. أفعالُ الْمُقَارِبَةِ

|                                      |                 |              |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------|--------------|
| 1 and 2 may have an aorist. To be on | }               | كَادَ        |
| the point of being or doing          |                 | أَوْشَكَ     |
| Express approximation                | لِلْمُقَارِبَةِ | كَرِبَ       |
|                                      |                 | عَسَى        |
| Express hope or desire               | لِلرَّجَاءِ     |              |
|                                      |                 | إِخْلَوْتُقَ |
|                                      | }               | شَرَعَ       |
|                                      |                 | أَنْشَأَ     |
|                                      |                 | جَعَلَ       |
|                                      |                 | إِنْبَرَى    |
|                                      |                 | طَفِقَ       |
| Express beginning                    |                 | أَخَذَ       |
|                                      |                 | فَامَ        |
|                                      |                 | إِبْتَدَأَ   |
|                                      |                 | عَلِقَ       |
|                                      |                 | هَبَّ        |

These are called approximate verbs because they begin with كَادَ *about to be or do*.

## EXAMPLES.

His breathing was about  
to cease

كَادَتْ أَنْفَاسُهُ أَنْ تَنْقَطَعَ



The crops were about to  
dry up

أَوْشَكَتِ الزُّرُوعُ أَنْ تَيْبَسَ

The heart was about to  
melt with longing

كَرِبَ الْقَلْبُ يَذُوبُ شَوْقًا

May God relieve our diffi-  
culties

عَسَى اللَّهُ أَنْ يَفْرِجَ كُرُوبَنَا

The heavens appeared as  
though they would rain

إِخْلَوْلَتِ السَّمَاءُ أَنْ تُمَطَّرَ

The wise man began to  
relate his story

شَرَعَ الْعَالِمُ يَقُصُّ قِصَّتَهُ

Zaid began to read

أَنْشَأَ زَيْدٌ يَقْرَأُ

The poet began to recite

جَعَلَ الشَّاعِرُ يُنْشِدُ

The runner began to run

إِنْتَبَرَى السَّاعِي يَجْرِي

The preacher began to  
preach

طَفِقَ الرَّاعِظُ يَعْظُ

The men began to question  
one another

أَخَذَ النَّاسُ يَتَسَاءَلُونَ

The bird began to sing

قَامَ الطَّيْرُ يَغْرِدُ

My friend began to expect me

إِبْتَدَأَ صَدِيقِي يَنْتَظِرُنِي

The traveller began to go  
about the country

عَلِقَ السَّائِمُ يَجُولُ الْبِلَادَ

The merchant began to  
offer his goods for sale

هَبَّ التَّاجِرُ يَعْزُزُ بَضَائِعَهُ

Al these verbs govern in the same way as كَانَ; i. e.  
they take an اِسْم in the nominative and a predicate

in the accusative. **كَادَ** and **أَوْشَكَ** may have an aorist and at times a noun of agent; the remainder are not conjugated. **كَادَ**, **عَسَى**, **أَوْشَكَ**, **إِخْلَوْلَقَ** may take **أَنَّ** before the predicate. The predicate of all these verbs must be in the aorist having as its agent a pronoun referring to the **اسْمِ**.

**عَسَى**, **أَوْشَكَ**, **إِخْلَوْلَقَ** are sometimes treated as perfect verbs and take for their agent the noun of action composed of **أَنَّ** and the verb following it; as

I hope you will visit us **عَسَى زِيَارَتُكَ = عَسَى أَنْ تَزُورَنَا**

Rain was about to fall **إِخْلَوْلَقَ نُزُولُهُ = الْمَطَرُ إِخْلَوْلَقَ أَنْ يَنْزِلَ**

Sometimes **عَسَى** takes as its nominative the pronoun in the accusative case; as

May you come **عَسَاكَ أَنْ تَأْتِي**

The **ي** is in the place of **ت** in **عَسَيْتَ**.

The predicate may precede the **اسْمِ**; as

Zaid almost died **كَادَ يَمُوتُ زَيْدٌ**

## PARTICLES WHICH RESEMBLE. **لَيْسَ**

**لَا تَ . إِنَّ . لَا مَا**

The particle **مَا** governs as **لَيْسَ** when the negation and order are preserved; as

Zaid is not standing **مَا زَيْدٌ قَائِمًا**

but if we say

No one but Zaid is standing  
 or Zaid is only standing  
 or Zaid is not standing

مَا قَائِمٌ إِلَّا زَيْدٌ  
 مَا زَيْدٌ إِلَّا قَائِمٌ  
 مَا قَائِمٌ زَيْدٌ

the مَا does not govern because the first example is a positive assertion, and in the second and third the order is reversed.

لَا governs as لَيْسَ and follows the rules of مَا except that its subject and predicate must be indefinite; as

There is not a man present alone لَا رَجُلٌ حَاضِرًا

This negatives the individual only; so that the sentence may mean that there are two or more men present; it is therefore called النَّافِيَةُ لِلْوَحْدَةِ.

When مَا and لَا have the same government as لَيْسَ they are called الْحِجَارَتَيْنِ.

أَنَا governs as لَيْسَ and follows the rules of مَا.

I am not standing

أَنَا قَائِمًا

A man is not dead by the mere ending of his natural life

إِنَّ الْمَرْءَ مَيِّتًا بِانْتِهَاءِ حَيَاتِهِ

لَات governs as لَيْسَ when its predicate is a noun of time and its اِسْم is not mentioned; as

It is not the time for study لَات (الْوَقْتُ) وَقْتُ دَرْسٍ

لَات takes the same word for its اِسْم as the predicate; so that the word mentioned indicates what is omitted.

## PARTICLES WHICH RESEMBLE VERBS.

## الْحُرُوفُ الْمُشَبَّهَةُ بِالْأَفْعَالِ

إِنَّ <sup>ء</sup> certainly, surely, verily; express assurance.

كَأَنَّ <sup>ء</sup> like, as if; has the meaning of resemblance when the predicate is a primitive noun, but of doubt when the predicate is a derived noun.

لَكِنَّ <sup>ء</sup> but, yet, nevertheless; is used to correct the opinion formed from the previous sentence.

لَيْتَ <sup>ء</sup> would that; expresses a wish for what is impossible or difficult of attainment.

لَعَلَّ <sup>ء</sup> perhaps, per chance, if haply; expresses expectation. These particles resemble verbs in having (a) at least three letters, (b) َ on their final letter, (c) the meaning and government of verbs; but in order to distinguish them from verbs their government is reversed.

Surely God is forgiving,

merciful

إِنَّ اللَّهَ لَغَفُورٌ رَحِيمٌ

here the subject has َ instead of ُ

Verily the time is nigh

إِنَّ الْوَقْتَ قَرِيبٌ

I knew that study would

increase knowledge

عَلِمْتُ أَنَّ الْمَطَالَعَةَ تَزِيدُ الْمَعْرِفَةَ

As if Zaid were a lion

كَأَنَّ زَيْدًا أَسَدٌ

Amr is rich but he is

a miser

عَمَرٌ غَنِيٌّ لَكِنَّهُ بَخِيلٌ

I wish that youth would  
return

لَيْتَ الشَّبَابَ يَعُودُ

Fear God, if haply ye  
may find mercy

اتَّقُوا اللَّهَ لَعَلَّكُمْ تُرْحَمُونَ

The particles **أَنَّ** and **إِنَّ** are really the same.

They are written with **ـَـ** when governed; as

Amr informed me that

Zaid is dead

أَخْبَرَنِي عَمْرُو أَنَّ زَيْدًا مَيِّتٌ

**أَنَّ** is found in the following places:

I. The beginning of a sentence.

II. After a relative pronoun.

III. Introducing an answer to an oath having **ل** prefixed to the predicate.

IV. Introducing a statement following **قَالَ** and its derivatives; as

He said that he was ready

قَالَ إِنَّهُ مُسْتَعِدٌّ

V. Beginning a **جُمْلَةٌ حَالِيَّةٌ** a sentence expressing state or condition; as

I visited him, and am  
assured of his generosity

زُرْتُهُ وَإِنِّي مُتَيَقِّنٌ بِكَرَمِهِ

VI. After **وَإِخْوَانُهَا طَرْنَ** when their predicate is preceded by **ل**.

I knew that Zaid was  
really standing

عَلِمْتُ أَنَّ زَيْدًا لِقَائِهِ

VII. After **أَلَا**.

Am I not a traveller?

أَلَا إِنِّي سَافِرٌ



## VIII. After حَيْثُ.

I sat where Zaid was sitting جَلَسْتُ حَيْثُ إِنَّ زَيْدًا جَالِسٌ

IX. Beginning a sentence which is predicate to a concrete noun; as

Zaid surely is a generous man زَيْدٌ إِنَّهُ كَرِيمٌ

In the following places إِنَّ or أَنَّ may be used:

I. After إِذَا expressing suddenness; as

I wenth forth and, behold!

the tiger was standing خَرَجْتُ وَإِذَا إِنَّ النَّمَرَ وَقِفٌ

II. Where it begins the answer to an oath whose predicate is not introduced by ل; as

I swore that I would go حَلَفْتُ أَذِي أَذْهَبُ

III. After فَاءُ of reward فَاءُ الْجَزَاءِ; as

Who comes to me will have honour مَنْ يَأْتِ إِلَيَّ فَإِنَّ لَهُ الْكَرَامَةَ

IV. After a subject which is a common saying; as

The best saying, God is one خَيْرُ الْقَوْلِ أَنَّ اللَّهَ وَاحِدٌ

أَنَّ and its sentence must be convertible into a noun of action in construction with its اِسْمٌ; as

Your faithfulness pleases me يُعْجِبُنِي أَنَّكَ صَادِقٌ = صِدْقُكَ

أَنَّ may take the ل before its predicate when it has its true position in the sentence and also before the subject مُبْتَدَأٌ when the order is reversed; as

Surely Zaid is standing إِنَّ زَيْدًا لَقَائِمٌ

مَا may be affixed to these particles, in which case



with the exception of **لَيْتَ** they cease to govern; as

Zaid only is standing **إِنَّمَا زَيْدٌ قَائِمٌ**

With these particles the predicate may precede the subject when the former is an adverbial or prepositional phrase; as

Would that I had a friend **لَيْتَ لِي صَدِيقًا**

When a second noun occurring after the predicate is joined by a conjunction to the **إِسْم** of **أَنَّ**, **كَأَنَّ** or **لَيْتَ** it may take either the nominative or accusative case; as **إِنَّ زَيْدًا قَائِمٌ وَعَمْرًا عَمْرٌو**.

### THE ABSOLUTE NEGATIVE. **لَا النَّافِيَةُ لِلْجِنْسِ**

The Negative Particle **لَا** denies the existence of a thing absolutely; as

There is no man good **لَا رَجُلٌ صَالِحٌ**

It governs in the same manner as **إِنَّ** taking an **إِسْم** in the accusative and a predicate in the nominative; both the **إِسْم** and predicate must be indefinite and the **لَا** introduce the **إِسْم**.

The **إِسْم** is either (a) in construction, (b) governing another word, (c) followed by a preposition or adverb which completes its meaning, or (d) a single word **مُفْرَدٌ**. In the first three cases **لَا** governs like **إِنَّ**, in the last, the **إِسْم** is indeclinable and takes the sign of the accusative which it had when declinable; as

(a). I have not a lead pencil      لَا قَلَمَ رَصَاصٍ عِنْدِي

(b). There is no climber of  
the mountain in the way      لَا صَاعِدًا جَبَلًا فِي الطَّرِيقِ

Here صَاعِدًا governs جَبَلًا.

(c). There is no man upon  
the house top sleeping      لَا رَجُلًا فَوْقَ السَّطْحِ نَائِمٌ

(d). There is no infidel who  
shall enter heaven      لَا كَافِرٌ يَدْخُلُ الْجَنَّةَ

The reg. fem. plural may take the  $\leq$  or  $\bar{\cdot}$ .

There are no female believers  
in the town      لَا مُؤْمِنَاتٍ فِي الْمَدِينَةِ  
or لَا مُؤْمِنَاتٍ

If the لَا is repeated and its conditions are observed  
we may have any of the following five forms:

- |      |                                            |                                           |
|------|--------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| I.   | There is no power and strength save in God | لَا حَوْلَ وَلَا قُوَّةَ إِلَّا بِاللَّهِ |
| II.  | ” ” ” ” ” ” ” ” ”                          | لَا حَوْلَ وَلَا قُوَّةَ إِلَّا بِاللَّهِ |
| III. | ” ” ” ” ” ” ” ” ”                          | لَا حَوْلَ وَلَا قُوَّةَ إِلَّا بِاللَّهِ |
| IV.  | ” ” ” ” ” ” ” ” ”                          | لَا حَوْلَ وَلَا قُوَّةَ إِلَّا بِاللَّهِ |
| V.   | ” ” ” ” ” ” ” ” ”                          | لَا حَوْلَ وَلَا قُوَّةَ إِلَّا بِاللَّهِ |

In the first example each negative is regarded as introducing a separate sentence; in the second the repetition of the negative is regarded as preventing its characteristic action; in the third the first negative governs and the second is regarded as joined to the sentence composed of لَا with its إِسْم and خَبَر which

is virtually in the nom. case. In the fourth example the first **لَا** is regarded as not governing because of repetition; the second governs because it is regarded as introducing a new sentence. The fifth example is seldom used.

If the noun is (a) separated from **لَا** or if it is (b) definite, the **لَا** ceases to govern and must be repeated; as

(a). There is not a man and

not a woman in the house      لَا فِي الدَّارِ رَجُلٌ وَلَا أَمْرَأَةٌ

(b). Neither Zaid nor Amr

is with us

لَا زَيْدٌ عِنْدَنَا وَلَا عَمْرٌو

The predicate of **لَا** may be omitted; as

No harm      لَا بَأْسَ      Zaid (came) not another      جَاءَ زَيْدٌ لَا غَيْرَ

The adjective qualifying the **اسْم** may take the ة, ة or ة when the **اسْم** and adjective are مُفْرَدَاتٌ individual words not separated from one another. Otherwise it takes ة or ة.

The Hemzeh of Interrogation may be prefixed to **لَا** without affecting its government.

## ظَنَّ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا

## VERBS DENOTING A MENTAL PROCESS

## أَفْعَالُ الْقُلُوبِ

|                         |   |            |                 |
|-------------------------|---|------------|-----------------|
| These express Certainty | { | To see     | رَأَى           |
|                         |   | To know    | عَلِمَ          |
|                         |   | To find    | أَلْفَى         |
|                         |   | To know    | دَرَى           |
|                         |   | To find    | وَجَدَ          |
|                         |   | Learn      | تَعَلَّمَ       |
| These express Doubt     | { | To think   | ظَنَّ           |
|                         |   | To reckon  | جَعَلَ          |
|                         |   | To suppose | زَعَمَ          |
|                         |   | To reckon  | عَدَّ           |
|                         |   | To suppose | حَسَبَى حَسَبًا |
|                         |   | To reckon  | حَسِبَ          |
|                         |   | To imagine | خَالَ           |
|                         | { | Grant      | هَبَ            |

## EXAMPLES.

I see (that) men are  
heedless

أَرَى النَّاسَ غَافِلِينَ

Know (that) love is the  
greatest virtue

اعْلَمِ الْمَحَبَّةَ أَفْضَلَ الْفَضَائِلِ

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                              |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| Zaid found Amr generous                                                                                                                                                                                                         | أَفَقَى زَيْدٌ عَمْرًا كَرِيمًا              |
| Do you know who is<br>with us?                                                                                                                                                                                                  | أَتَدْرِي مَنْ عِنْدَنَا                     |
| I find a friend is needful                                                                                                                                                                                                      | أَجِدُ الصَّدِيقَ لَازِمًا                   |
| Learn (that) men are<br>different                                                                                                                                                                                               | تَعَلَّمَ النَّاسُ أَنْوَاعًا                |
| I thought the thief was<br>a guest                                                                                                                                                                                              | ظَنَنْتُ السَّارِقَ ضَيْفًا                  |
| You have made the<br>night as day                                                                                                                                                                                               | جَعَلْتَ اللَّيْلَ نَهَارًا                  |
| Do you suppose (that)<br>Zaid loves you                                                                                                                                                                                         | أَتَزَعُمُ زَيْدًا يُحِبُّكَ                 |
| Men count knowledge<br>the most profitable of things                                                                                                                                                                            | عَدَّ النَّاسُ الْعِلْمَ أَنْفَعَ الْأُمُورِ |
| Do you reckon (that) the<br>pupils are in the school?                                                                                                                                                                           | أَتَحْسِبُ التَّلَامِيذَ فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ   |
| Do not imagine (that)<br>Zaid is your friend                                                                                                                                                                                    | لَا تَحُلْ زَيْدًا صَدِيقَكَ                 |
| Grant that you are absent                                                                                                                                                                                                       | هَبْ أَنَّكَ غَائِبٌ                         |
| When these verbs precede the subject and predicate<br>they take them as their objects; but when they come<br>between they may or may not have their special<br>government. If however they follow their objects they<br>govern. |                                              |
| Some of them are conjugated throughout; others are<br>defective or not conjugated at all.                                                                                                                                       |                                              |

تَعَلَّمَ and هَبْ are only used in the imperative.

رَأَى to see (by dreams) follows these verbs in taking a double accusative, and also قَالَ to say when it means to think, but only when in the second person aorist, and immediately following an interrogative particle; as

Do you say that rain in the

summer is harmful?

أَتَقُولُ الْمَطَرَ فِي الصَّيْفِ مُضِرًّا

If the particles مَا لَإِنْ of negation, لَ جَوَابُ الْقَسَمِ, لَ الْإِبْتِدَاءِ, لَ of condition, كَيْمِ الْخَبَرِيَّةِ and particles of interrogation come between one of these verbs and its objects, the verb does not govern, as these particles are regarded as having the chief function in the sentence.

These verbs are reflexive; the agent and the object may be two personal pronouns referring to the same person; as

I see myself ill

أَرَأَيْتُ مَرِيضًا

Either one or both objects may be omitted when the meaning is known; as

Do you think that Zaid is standing أَتَظُنُّ زَيْدًا قَائِمًا

I think that (Zaid is standing)

أَظُنُّ



## صَيَّرَ وَأَخَوَانَهَا

## VERBS DENOTING CHANGE.

## أَفْعَالُ التَّحْوِيلِ

|                |         |                |           |
|----------------|---------|----------------|-----------|
| To leave       | غَادَرَ | To make        | صَيَّرَ   |
| „ „            | تَرَكَ  | „ „ and reckon | جَعَلَ    |
| To make, give  | وَهَبَ  | To take as     | تَخَذَ    |
| To change into | رَدَّ   | „ „ „          | إِتَّخَذَ |

These verbs are all conjugated except وَهَبَ.

They govern like طَنَّ i. e. they take the subject and predicate as their objects, and exert their characteristic action independently of their position in the sentence.

## EXAMPLES.

I made the clay into earthenware

صَيَّرْتُ الطِّينَ خَزَفًا

Zaid made the branch into a bow

جَعَلَ زَيْدٌ الْغُصْنَ قَوْسًا

I took him as a friend

تَخَذْتُهُ صَدِيقًا

I used the stick as a crutch

إِتَّخَذْتُ الْعَصَا عُكَّازًا

I left him sick

غَادَرْتُهُ مَرِيضًا

I left him standing

تَرَكَتُهُ قَائِمًا

May I be your ransom

وَهَبْنِي فِدَاكَ

It changed the heat into cold

رَدَّ الْكَرَّ بَرْدًا

## VERBS WHICH TAKE THREE OBJECTS.

## أَعْلَمَ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا

|           |          |                           |                 |
|-----------|----------|---------------------------|-----------------|
| To inform | أَخْبَرَ | To make to know           | أَعْلَمَ        |
| „ „       | خَبَرَ   | To make to see (mentally) | أَرَى (أَرَأَى) |
| To relate | حَدَّثَ  | To inform beforehand      | أَنْبَأَ        |
|           | „ „ „    |                           | نَبَأَ          |

أَرَى and أَعْلَمَ are conjugated throughout; the remaining five are mostly used in the passive voice. Particles may be introduced before the second and third objects; as

I was informed that the

physician was not present      أُنْبِئْتُ مَا الطَّبِيبُ حَاضِرٌ

The first object is the فاعِلِ and the sentence which follows the particle is in the accusative عِوَضُ (instead of the two objects).

If we say:

I knew that Zaid was coming      عَلِمْتُ أَنَّ زَيْدًا قَادِمٌ  
or, I shewed him that the rain

was beneficial      أَرَيْتُهُ أَنَّ الْمَطَرَ مُفِيدٌ

أَنَّ with its إِسْم and predicate takes the place of the two objects in the first example, and that of the second and third objects in the second, so that they are thus virtually in the accusative فِي مَكَالِ نَصْبٍ.

## EXAMPLES.

I made him know that  
knowledge is profitable

أَعْلَمْتُهُ الْعِلْمَ نَافِعًا

God caused men to see  
that Job was patient

أَرَأَى اللَّهُ النَّاسَ أَيُّوبَ صَابِرًا

The children of Israel  
were foretold that Christ  
would come

أُنَبِّئُ بَنُو إِسْرَائِيلَ الْمَسِيحَ قَادِمًا

I was informed that  
my friend was absent

نُبِّئْتُ صَدِيقِي غَائِبًا

I informed him that  
my love is great

أَخْبَرْتُهُ مَحَبَّتِي عَظِيمَةً

The men were informed  
that the locusts were  
distant

خَبَّرَ النَّاسَ الْجَرَادَ بَعِيدًا

Amr informed his bro-  
ther that he is sick

حَدَّثَ عَمْرُو أَخَاهُ أَنَّهُ مَرِيضٌ

## THE ACCUSATIVE CASE. النَّصْبُ

The following take the accusative case الْمَنْصُوبَاتُ

I. The Absolute Object

الْمَفْعُولُ الْمَطْلُوقُ

II. The Objective Complement

الْمَفْعُولُ بِهِ

III. The Vocative

الْمُنَادَى

IV. The Adverbial Accusative of Time and

Place

الْمَفْعُولُ فِيهِ

- V. The Adverbial Accusative of Cause or Reason الْمَفْعُولُ لَهُ
- VI. The Object following , of Association الْمَفْعُولُ مَعَهُ
- VII. That which is Excepted الْمُسْتَثْنَى
- VIII. The Adverbial Accusative of State or Condition الْحَالُ
- IX. The Specification التَّيْيِيزُ
- X. The Predicate of خَبَرُ كَانَ وَكَادَ وَالْمُشَبَّهَاتِ بِلَيْسَ
- XI. The Subject of إِسْمٌ أَنَّ وَلَا آلَاءُ فِيهِ لِلْجِنْسِ
- XII. The Aorist when preceded by the Accusative Particles نَوَاصِبُ الْفِعْلِ
- XIII. The Appositives or words in Apposition to Accusatives تَوَابِعُ الْمَنْصُوبَاتِ

These are called **فَضَلَاتٌ** and are used either objectively or adverbially.

The transitive verb governs its object in the accusative case. When, however, the object follows a preposition connecting it with the verb, the presence of the preposition puts the object in the genitive.

### THE ABSOLUTE OBJECT. الْمَفْعُولُ الْمَطْلُقُ

The Absolute Object is so called because it has not a preposition attached to its name, limiting or defining its action, like the other **مَفَاعِيلُ**.

It expresses simple action of the verb, and is originally the noun of action of the same verb; as

He surely killed قَتَلَ قَتْلًا      He surely beat ضَرَبَ ضَرْبًا  
I greatly approved it إِسْتَحْسَنْتُه اسْتِحْسَانًا عَظِيمًا

This noun of action must follow:

(a). A strong verb, not such as نَعِمَ, مَا أَحْسَنَ, كَانَ, كَادَ

(b). Another noun of action, or (c) an adjective expressing accidental qualities; as

(a). I loved him with a great love أَحَبَبْتُهُ حُبًّا عَظِيمًا

(b). I wondered at thy

striking Zaid severely عَجَبْتُ مِنْ ضَرْبِكَ زَيْدًا ضَرْبًا شَدِيدًا

(c). Zaid is very accomplished زَيْدٌ فَاضِلٌ فَضْلًا

#### THE ABSOLUTE OBJECT IS OF TWO KINDS:

(I). **الْمَوْكِدُ** *that which assures*, is the noun of action of the same verb and simply strengthens its meaning thereby removing the idea of metaphor. This noun of action is always in the singular; as

I assuredly killed him قَتَلْتُهُ قَتْلًا

(II). **الْمُبَيِّنُ** *that which makes manifest*. This noun of action gives more meaning than the verb itself, and is used to express number and form; it may be made dual or plural; as

He ran swiftly رَكَضَ رَكْضًا سَرِيعًا      I squatted قَعَدْتُ الْقَرْفَاءَ

I took two steps خَطَوْتُ خَطَوَتَيْنِ      I sat upright جَلَسْتُ جُلُوسًا مُسْتَقِيمًا

The Absolute Object is originally the noun of action

of the same verb; but the following may take its place  
 نَوَابُ الْمَفْعُولِ الْمَطْلُوقِ.

1. The noun of action of another verb having a similar meaning; as

I rejoiced greatly فَرِحْتُ أَتَيْهَا جَا

2. The noun of action of the same verb but on a different measure; as

I washed myself تَغَسَّلْتُ أَغْتَسَلَا

3. اِسْمُ الْمَصْدَرِ which has the signification of the noun of action; as

I prayed صَلَّيْتُ صَلَاةً

4. كُلُّ وَبَعْضٍ when in construction with a noun of action; as

I loved him greatly أَحَبَبْتُهُ كُلَّ الْمَحَبَّةِ

5. A demonstrative pronoun; as

I read that sort of reading قَرَأْتُ ذَلِكَ الْقِرَاءَةَ

6. An adjective; as

I ran with all my might رَكَضْتُ أَشَدَّ الرَّكْضِ

7. Number; as

I struck him three blows ضَرَبْتُهُ ثَلَاثَ ضَرْبَاتٍ

8. Form; as

I sat in a squatting posture قَعَدْتُ الْقُرْفُصَاءَ

9. Instrument; as

I beat him with a whip ضَرَبْتُهُ سَوْطًا

10. The pronoun of a noun of action; as



I loved him with such  
love as I did not love others أَحَبُّنُهُ مَحَبَّةً لَمْ أَحِبَّهَا غَيْرُهُ

11. مَا and أَيُّ which imply interrogation; as

Speak what you wish مَا شِئْتَ تَكَلِّمْ

The verb is necessarily implied when the noun of  
action takes its place; as

(Go) slowly (أَمْهَلْ) مَهْلًا

I heard and I obeyed سَمِعْتُ سَمْعًا، أَطَعْتُ طَاعَةً، سَمِعًا وَطَاعَةً

### THE OBJECTIVE COMPLEMENT. الْمَفْعُولُ بِهِ

The Objective Complement receives the action of the  
verb. The verb must therefore be transitive and in this  
respect differs from the other مَفَاعِيل whose verbs may  
be either transitive or intransitive. If the verb is not  
originally transitive it is made so by a preposition; as

I rode the mare رَكَبْتُ الْفَرَسَ

I sat in a chair جَلَسْتُ عَلَى كُرْسِيٍّ

I clothed him with a beautiful garment أَلْبَسْتُهُ ثَوْبًا جَمِيلًا

I informed him that you were present أَخْبَرْتُهُ أَنَّكَ حَاضِرٌ

I brought a book أَتَيْتُ بِكِتَابٍ

### THE VOCATIVE. الْمُنَادَى

The object addressed الْمُنَادَى is a part of the objec-  
tive complement.

The vocative particles take the place of the implied verb to call **أُنَادِي**, **نَادَى** *I call*.

If the noun addressed is definite **مَعْرِفَةٌ** and single **مُفْرَدٌ** it becomes indeclinable, and takes the sign of the nominative, but when neither definite nor single it is put in the accusative; as

**يَا مُحَمَّدُ** O Mohammed! **يَا رَجُلًا** O Man!

When the noun addressed is in construction with **أَلْبَتَكَلِّمِ ي** and does not end with a weak letter, the **ي** may be changed into **إ**; as

O my brother! **يَا أَخِي** for **يَا أَخَا**

In **أَبٌ** and **أُمٌ** the **ي** may be changed into **ت**; as

O my father **يَا أَبَتِ** O my mother **يَا أُمَّتِ**

If the word **إِبْن** follows the vocative the noun addressed takes the **ـِ** in place of the **ـُ**; as **يَا زَيْدَ بْنَ عَمْرٍو**

O Zaid son of Amr.

If the noun addressed has the article, the word **أَيُّ** or **أَيُّهُ** with **هَآءُ التَّنْبِيْهِ**, is introduced between the particle and the noun; in this case the noun takes the **ـِ**.

If the noun is a derived one it is regarded as an adjective and if primitive it is **بَدَل**; as

O you generous one **يَا أَيُّهَا الْكَرِيمُ**

O Man **يَا أَيُّهَا الرَّجُلُ**

Sometimes the noun addressed follows the demonstrative pronoun instead of **أَيُّهَا**; as

O (you) this man

يَا هَذَا الرَّجُلُ

The word God although possessing the article may be addressed, as يَا إِلَهَ O God! also يَا إِلَهُهُمَّ or إِلَهُهُمَّ.

The vocative particle or the noun addressed may be omitted; as

(O) Joseph hear my saying

يُوسُفُ أَسْمَعْ قَوْلِي

O (people) worship

يَا أَتَسْجُدُوا

The Vocative Particles are:

أَ for a near object.

آ, أَيَّ, هَيَّا, أَيَّ for a distant object.

يَا for both near and distant objects.

#### THE ADVERBIAL ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND PLACE.

الْمَفْعُولُ فِيهِ

This expresses the time and place of the action of the verb, and is so called because the nouns have the meaning of *في* in; as

I prayed (in) to day

صَلَّيْتُ (فِي) الْيَوْمِ

I sat aside

جَلَسْتُ (فِي) نَاحِيَةٍ

The noun of time whether definite or indefinite is put in the accusative; as

I came yesterday

جِئْتُ الْبَارِحَةَ

I travelled for a time

سَافَرْتُ مَدَّةً

The noun of place when indefinite is put in the accusative; as

I looked east and west,  
north and south

تَطَلَّعْتُ شَرْقًا وَغَرْبًا شِمَالًا وَجُنُوبًا

When the noun of place is definite the preposition  
في is introduced; as

I prayed in the mosque صَلَّيْتُ فِي الْمَسْجِدِ

The place of the adverb may be taken by (a) the  
noun of action, (b) demonstrative pronoun, (c) adjective,  
(d) numeral, (e) بَعْضُ and كُلُّ; as

(a). I awoke at sunrise (time of) اسْتَيْقَظْتُ طُلُوعَ الشَّمْسِ

I sat near the table جَلَسْتُ قُرْبَ الْمَائِدَةِ

(b). I ran there رَكَضْتُ هُنَاكَ

(c). I fasted a little صُمْتُ قَلِيلًا

(d). I journeyed three days سَافَرْتُ ثَلَاثَةَ أَيَّامٍ

(e). I watched the whole night

or (part of it) سَهَرْتُ كُلَّ اللَّيْلِ (بَعْضُهُ)

The adverb is of two kinds:

I. مُتَصَرِّفٌ which may have different functions in a  
sentence, as the word يَوْمٌ in the following sentences.

To-day is Friday الْيَوْمُ الْجُمُعَةُ I rode to-day رَكِبْتُ الْيَوْمَ

II. غير مُتَصَرِّفٍ which is always an adverb; as

In front of أَمَامُ Where حَيْثُ

Behind خَلْفُ At عِنْدَ

After بَعْدُ Before قَبْلُ

Where أَيْنَ Above فَوْقَ

These adverbs may take the preposition مِنْ before

them, with the exception of *مَتَى* which takes both *إِلَى* and *حَتَّى*, and *أَيْنَ* and *حَيْثُ* which take *إِلَى*; as

Until when will you not return? *إِلَى مَتَى لَا تَرْجِعُ*

How long, O Lord, how long? *حَتَّى مَتَى يَا رَبَّ حَتَّى مَتَى*

Whither are you going? *إِلَى أَيْنَ أَنْتَ ذَاهِبٌ*

He went wherever he wished *ذَهَبَ إِلَى حَيْثُ شَاءَ*

The following adverbs are always indeclinable:

|           |                |       |                  |               |                 |
|-----------|----------------|-------|------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| Yesterday | <i>أَمْسَ</i>  | When  | <i>مَتَى</i>     | When          | <i>لَمَّا</i>   |
| Where     | <i>أَيْنَ</i>  | When  | <i>إِذَا</i>     | Here          | <i>هَنَا</i>    |
| Where     | <i>حَيْثُ</i>  | When  | <i>إِذْ</i>      | With          | <i>مَعَ</i>     |
| There     | <i>هُنَاكَ</i> | There | <i>هُنَالِكَ</i> | Where         | <i>أَيَّانَ</i> |
| Now       | <i>الآنَ</i>   | Where | <i>أَنَّى</i>    | At all, never | <i>قَطُّ</i>    |

Some adverbs become indeclinable when in construction with a sentence beginning with a verb in the preterite; as

He came when Zaid came *جَاءَ حِينَ جَاءَ زَيْدٌ*

## THE ADVERBIAL ACCUSATIVE OF CAUSE

### OR REASON. *الْمَفْعُولُ لَهُ*

This expresses the cause of the action. It must be a noun of action but not of the same verb, and agree with the verb in respect to agent and time, and also be indefinite; as

I fled from fright

*هَرَبْتُ خَوْفًا*



I visited him from love

زُرْتُهُ حُبًّا

here **حَوْفٌ** expresses the cause of flight; it is a noun of action although not of the same verb, and agrees with the verb to flee as to its agent, because the one who fled is the one who feared; it is also indefinite. If any of these conditions are not fulfilled, the noun of action must be introduced by one of the particles of causation; as

I fled on account of fear

هَرَبْتُ لِلْخَوْفِ

I went to him for water

قَصَدْتُهِ لِلْمَاءِ

I visited you to-day for your

honouring me yesterday زُرْتُكَ الْيَوْمَ لِإِكْرَامِكَ لِيَ الْبَارِحَةَ

The Particles of Causation are **لِ** **بِ** **فِي** **مِنْ**.

Sometimes **الْمَفْعُولُ لَهُ** is itself the cause of the action and must then be a noun of action of a verb denoting a mental process; as

The Messiah died from love to us مَاتَ الْمَسِيحُ حُبًّا لَنَا

At other times the verb is the cause of the action and then **الْمَفْعُولُ لَهُ** may be the noun of action of any verb; as

I beat him to correct him

صَرَبْتُهُ تَأْدِيبًا لَهُ

If the **مَفْعُولُ لَهُ** is made definite by the article, it may be put in the accusative; as

I fled from fear

هَرَبْتُ مِنَ الْخَوْفِ

Also if in construction it may be put in the accusative; as



I fled fearing slaughter هَرَبْتُ خَوْفَ الْقَتْلِ  
but it is better to use the preposition.

## THE OBJECT IN RELATION TO WHICH SOMETHING IS DONE. الْمَفْعُولُ مَعَهُ

This object follows , having the meaning of *with*.

The , is called رَاوُ الْمَصَاحِبَةِ or رَاوُ الْمَعِيَّةِ the رَاوُ of association.

The , must not have the meaning of the conjunction; as

I travelled in the morning سَافَرْتُ وَالصَّبْحَ

Zaid went along the road مَشَى زَيْدٌ وَالطَّرِيقَ

Here the , cannot be the conjunction because it does not join the word صَبْحَ to the pronoun, as the noun cannot be joined to an attached pronoun except the latter be repeated; as

I came, together with Zaid جِئْتُ أَنَا وَزَيْدًا

The مَفْعُولُ مَعَهُ is also found after كَيْفَ and مَا of interrogation; as

How art thou, together with Zaid كَيْفَ أَنْتَ وَزَيْدًا

What has thou to do with thy brother? مَا لَكَ وَآخَاكَ

## THAT WHICH IS EXCEPTED. الْمُسْتَثْنَى

The particles of exception are إِلَّا غَيْرِ سِوَى عَدَا خِلَا حَاشَا

That which is excepted is either (a) of the same kind as the noun preceding, and is called مُتَّصِلٌ *joined*, or

(b) of a different kind and called مُنْقَطِعٌ *severed from*,  
cut off; as

(a). The people came except Zaid جَاءَ الْقَوْمُ إِلَّا زَيْدًا

(b). The army returned except

a cannon

رَجَعَ الْجَيْشُ إِلَّا مَدْفَعًا

أَلْمُسْتَتَنَّى بِأَلَّا

When the preceding sentence is affirmative and complete in meaning, that which is excepted is put in the accusative; as

The trees yielded fruit except

a fig-tree

أَثْمَرَتِ الشَّجَرُ إِلَّا تِينَةً

When the preceding sentence is negative and complete in meaning, that which is excepted may be put in the accusative or be made بَدَل and take the case of the preceding word; as

I fear no one except God

لَا أَخَافُ أَحَدًا إِلَّا اللَّهَ

No one came except Zaid

مَا جَاءَ أَحَدٌ إِلَّا زَيْدًا أَوْ زَيْدٌ

When the part excepted precedes the whole or is of a different kind it is put in the accusative; as

No one came except Zaid

مَا جَاءَ إِلَّا زَيْدًا أَحَدٌ

No one returned from

the army except a horse

مَا رَجَعَ مِنَ الْجَيْشِ إِلَّا حِمَانًا

When the sentence is negative and incomplete, that which is excepted completes the sentence and is declined according to its regent; as

Only Zaid came

مَا جَاءَ إِلَّا زَيْدٌ

I saw Zaid only

مَا رَأَيْتُ إِلَّا زَيْدًا

I passed by Zaid only

مَا مَرَرْتُ إِلَّا بِزَيْدٍ

### غَيْرَ وَسَوَى

غَيْرَ and وَسَوَى are put in construction with the noun excepted and themselves take the same case as the noun when excepted after إِلَّا; as

The people came except Zaid

جَاءَ الْقَوْمُ غَيْرَ زَيْدٍ

i. e. if إِلَّا were used instead of غَيْرَ Zaid would be in the accusative; therefore غَيْرَ is in the accusative.

No one came but Zaid

مَا جَاءَ غَيْرُ زَيْدٍ

### عَدَا خَلَا حَاشَا

These words may be regarded as verbs or prepositions. When verbs they govern that which is excepted in the accusative, as مَفْعُولٌ بِهِ and their agents are necessarily implied pronouns; as

The men read except Amr

قَرَأَ الْقَوْمُ عَدَا عَمْرًا

When preceded by مَا they cannot be regarded as prepositions; but when used as prepositions they govern as prepositions; as

I saw the children except Fareed

رَأَيْتُ الْأَوْلَادَ خَلَا فَرِيدٍ

Sometimes لَا يَكُونُ and لَيْسَ are used as particles

of exception; that which is excepted being **خَبَر** and the **إِسْم** an implied pronoun.

**بَيِّنَد** is used in the same manner as **غَيْر** but is restricted to **الْأَسْتِثْنَاءُ الْمُنْقَطِعُ**. It is always in the accusative and in construction with **أَنَّ** and its sentence; it cannot be used as an adjective.

### THE ADVERBIAL ACCUSATIVE OF STATE OR CONDITION. **الْحَالُ**

This shows the state of the agent or the object at the time of the action of the verb. It must be an indefinite derived adjective expressing a transitory condition and coming after a complete sentence; and is therefore a **فَضْلَةٌ**; as

The prince came riding **جَاءَ الْأَمِيرُ رَاكِبًا**

The object may be any of the **مَفَاعِيلُ**; as

I rode the horse saddled **بِهِ رَكِبْتُ الْفَرَسَ مُسَرَّجًا**

I struck severely **مُطْلَقَ صَرَبْتُ الضَّرْبَ شَدِيدًا**

I fasted the whole month **فِيهِ صُمْتُ الشَّهْرَ كَامِلًا**

I fled for fear only **لَهُ هَرَبْتُ لِلْخَوْفِ مُجَرَّدًا**

I walked along the Nile

while it overflowed **مَعَهُ مَشَيْتُ وَالنَّيْلَ فَائِضًا**

The subject or object of the action to which the **حَال** refers **صَاحِبُ الْحَالِ** should be definite and precede

the **حَال**. If the **صَاحِبُ الْحَالِ** is indefinite the **حَال** must come first; as

A man came riding **جَاءَ رَاكِبًا رَجُلٌ**

When the **حَال** is definite it must be treated as if indefinite; as

The prince came alone **جَاءَ الْأَمِيرُ وَحْدَهُ (مُنْفَرِدًا)**

The **حَال** may be a primitive noun when (a) convertible into a derivative noun, and also when it expresses  
b) order (c) division or (d) price; as

(a). I sold him, hand to hand **بِعْتُهُ مُقَابَضَةً = بِعْتُهُ يَدًا بِيَدٍ**

(i. e. for ready money)

I spoke to him face

to face **كَلَّمْتُهُ فَمَالِغِمٍ (مُشَافِهَةً)**

(b). Enter, man by man **أَدْخُلُوا رَجُلًا رَجُلًا**

(c). I taught him nahu, chapter by chapter **عَلَّمْتُهُ النَّحْوَ بَابًا بَابًا**

(d). I bought the cloth for a majēdee a yard **إِشْتَرَيْتُ الْجُودَ الْدِرَاعَ بِرِيَالٍ**

When the **حَال** follows two definite nouns each of which may be **صَاحِبُ الْحَالِ** it is best to ascribe it to the noun which directly precedes it; as

I met Zaid riding **لَقِيتُ زَيْدًا رَاكِبًا**

but if we wish to ascribe it to the pronoun we must say;

I met Zaid whilst I was riding **لَقِيتُ رَاكِبًا زَيْدًا**



In such a sentence as

I walking met Zaid riding لَقِيتُ زَيْدًا مَاشِيًا رَاكِبًا

it is better to ascribe the first *حَال* to the subject and the second to the object.

The *حَال* may be an indicative sentence or quasi sentence; as

Zaid came running جَاءَ زَيْدٌ يَرْكُضُ

Zaid died, and his son a minor مَاتَ زَيْدٌ وَابْنُهُ قَاصِرٌ

I entered the house, and there

was a lion in it دَخَلْتُ الْبَيْتَ وَفِيهِ أَسَدٌ

The *حَال* must be connected with its noun by a *رَابِط* binder and this may be:

I. An implied pronoun; as

I came running جِئْتُ أَرْكُضُ (أَنَا is in the verb).

I bought the grapes a rotal of them for a dirham

إِشْتَرَيْتُ الْعِنَبَ الرَّطْلَ (مِنْهُ) بِدِرْهَمٍ

II. وَאוֹ *الْحَالِ* , و.

I journeyed while the men were

sleeping سَافَرْتُ وَالنَّاسُ نِيَامٌ

III. وَאוֹ *الْحَالِ* with a pronoun; as

Zaid came with his hand

upon his head جَاءَ زَيْدٌ وَيَدُهُ عَلَى رَأْسِهِ

IV. قَدْ with , introducing the preterite in the affirmative; as

I came when the sun had risen جِئْتُ وَقَدْ طَلَعَتِ الشَّمْسُ



## THE SPECIFICATION. التَّمْيِيزُ

التَّمْيِيزُ is the primitive noun which explains what would otherwise have been indefinite; this indefiniteness has respect either to ذَاتُ substance, or نِسْبَةُ relation.

I. تَمْيِيزُ النِّسْبَةِ limits or defines the predicate; as

Zaid is honourable in respect to birth كَرَمَ زَيْدٌ مَوْلِدًا

How noble a man is Zaid! مَا أَكْرَمَ زَيْدًا رَجُلًا

Zaid has more relatives than Amr زَيْدٌ أَكْثَرُ مِنْ عَمْرِو أَقْرَابٍ

II. تَمْيِيزُ الْأَدَاتِ explains what is indefinite in respect to number, weight, measure, quantity, similarity, dissimilarity or area; as

He has twenty she-camels لَهُ عِشْرُونَ نَاقَةً

I bought a rotal of butter, and a saa of wheat, and two miles of land اِشْتَرَيْتُ رَطْلًا زُبْدًا وَصَاعًا قَمْحًا وَمِثْلَيْنِ أَرْضًا

I have a handful of flour, and the like of it of rice عِنْدِي حَفْنَةٌ طَحِينًا وَمِثْلَهَا رُزًّا

The noun which is specified must not be deprived of any of the signs of declension.

تَمْيِيزُ may be put in construction with the تَمْيِيزُ and the تَمْيِيزُ may be put in the genitive by مِنْ; as

I have a shekel of silver عِنْدِي شَاقِلٌ فِصَّةٍ

We planted the land with trees غَرَسْنَا الْأَرْضَ مِنَ الشَّجَرِ

I have a ring of gold لِي خَاتَمٌ مِنْ ذَهَبٍ

## THE GENITIVE CASE. الْجَرُّ

The Genitive Case is peculiar to the Noun.

The nouns in the genitive case, الْمَجْرُورَاتُ, are of two kinds:

I. Those governed by prepositions الْدَّاخِلَةُ عَلَيْهَا  
حُرُوفُ الْجَرِّ.

II. Those which are the complement in the case of two nouns in construction الْمُضَافُ إِلَيْهِ.

### I. PREPOSITIONS. حُرُوفُ الْجَرِّ

The prepositions are: عِنْدَ, لِ, بِ, عَلَى, فِي, إِلَى, مِنْ,  
حَاشَا, عَدَا, خَلَا, كَيْ, مُنْذُ, حَتَّى, رُبَّ, تَ, وَ, كَ  
 and some authorities say لَعَلَّ, مَتَى.

Chief meanings of the prepositions

من مِنْ with pronominal suffixes مِنْهُ, مِنْكَ, مِنَّا, مِنِّي.

Meanings.

from I came forth from

the house

خَرَجْتُ مِنَ الْبَيْتِ

some of I took some of

the dirhams

أَخَذْتُ مِنَ الدَّرَاهِمِ

„ „ He drank some

of the water

شَرِبَ مِنَ الْمَاءِ

of I have a ring

of gold

لِي خَاتَمٌ مِنْ ذَهَبٍ

|                   |                                                                      |                                                        |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| on account of     | He died from fear                                                    | مَاتَ مِنَ الْخَوْفِ                                   |
| by                | He entered by<br>the door                                            | دَخَلَ مِنَ الْبَابِ                                   |
| to                | Draw nigh to me                                                      | إِقْتَرِبْ مِنِّي                                      |
| from              | I knew the truth<br>from falsehood                                   | عَرَفْتُ الْحَقَّ مِنَ الْبَاطِلِ                      |
| than              | The sea is larger<br>than the land                                   | الْبَحْرُ أَكْبَرُ مِنَ الْبَرِّ                       |
| at all            | No one at all<br>came                                                | مَا جَاءَ مِنْ رَجُلٍ                                  |
| rather than       | Are ye contented with the life of this<br>world rather than the next | هَلْ رَضِيتُمْ بِالْحَيَاةِ الدُّنْيَا مِنَ الْآخِرَةِ |
| because of        | about                                                                | مِنْ أَمْرِ                                            |
| from the presence | without                                                              | مِنْ دُونِ, مِنْ غَيْرِ                                |
| of this sort      | before                                                               | مِنْ قَبْلُ                                            |
| the next day      | from this time                                                       | مِنْ ذِي قَبْلِ                                        |
| on account of     | at once                                                              | مِنْ سَاعَتِهِ, مِنْ وَقْتِهِ                          |
| by itself         | behind him                                                           | مِنْ وَرَائِهِ                                         |
| by habit          | must                                                                 | لَا بُدَّ مِنْ                                         |
| from his youth    | a little                                                             | شَيْءٍ مِنْ                                            |
| to-morrow         | the same day                                                         | مِنْ يَوْمِهِ                                          |
| at night          |                                                                      | مِنْ اللَّيْلِ                                         |

إِلَيْهِ، إِلَيْكَ، إِلَيَّ with pronominal suffixes إِلَى

until I fasted until sunset صُمْتُ إِلَى الْمَغْرِبِ

„ He ate until he was  
satisfied أَكَلَ إِلَى الشَّبَعِ

to I went to the market دَهَبْتُ إِلَى السُّوقِ

unto Come unto me تَعَالَوْا إِلَيَّ

beside I sat beside the guest جَلَسْتُ إِلَى الضَّيْفِ

comparison I like truth more than  
gain الصِّدْقُ أَحَبُّ إِلَيَّ مِنَ الرِّبْحِ

addition Add this to that أَضِفْ هَذَا إِلَى ذَلِكَ

multiplication Three times five ثَلَاثَةُ فِي خَمْسَةٍ

how long إِلَى مَتَى، إِلَى كَمْ As long as God

until إِلَى أَنْ pleases إِلَى مَا شَاءَ اللَّهُ

and so on إِلَى غَيْرِ ذَلِكَ Get you gone! إِلَيْكَ عَنِّي

et cetera إِلَى آخِرِهِ (الخ) referred to الْمَشَارُ إِلَيْهِ

فِي with pronominal suffixes فِي

It is used as an adverb of time or place.

in I sat in the house جَلَسْتُ فِي الْبَيْتِ

„ He was born in summer وُلِدَ فِي الصَّيْفِ

„ I came in the evening جِئْتُ فِي الْمَسَاءِ

with The prince rode with  
his host رَكِبَ الْأَمِيرُ فِي جُنْدِهِ

on account of He was killed because  
of his crime قُتِلَ فِي ذَنْبِهِ

|                    |                            |                                  |
|--------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| among              | There is not a learned man |                                  |
|                    | among them                 | مَا فِيهِمْ عَالِمٌ              |
| in my power        | فِي يَدَيَّ                | It has nothing to do with        |
| in my knowledge    | فِي عَلَيَّ                | it لَيْسَ فِي شَيْءٍ مِنْ ذَلِكَ |
| in the proper time | فِي حِينِهِ                | Leave what you are               |
| in the past        | فِي مَاضِي                 | about دَعْ مَا أَنْتَ فِيهِ      |
| immediately        | فِي الْكَالِ               | None among them is               |
| about              | فِي أَمْرٍ                 | generous مَا فِيهِمْ كَرِيمٌ     |
| meanwhile          | فِي أَثْنَاءِ ذَلِكَ       |                                  |

عَلَى with pronominal suffixes عَلَيْهِ، عَلَيْكَ، عَلَيَّ.

|               |                                   |                                       |
|---------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| upon, on      | He sat upon his throne            | جَلَسَ عَلَى عَرْشِهِ                 |
| on account of | Thank God for His                 |                                       |
|               | mercy                             | أَشْكُرُوا اللَّهَ عَلَى رَحْمَتِهِ   |
| at            | The army entered at an unexpected |                                       |
|               | time                              | دَخَلَ الْجَيْشُ عَلَى حِينٍ غَفْلَةٍ |
| to            | And we preferred some to          |                                       |
|               | others                            | وَفَضَّلْنَا بَعْضَهُمْ عَلَى بَعْضٍ  |
| „             | I preferred study to              |                                       |
|               | sleep                             | اخْتَرْتُ الدَّرْسَ عَلَى النَّوْمِ   |
| against       | He went out against him           | خَرَجَ عَلَيْهِ                       |
| „             | He owes a debt                    | I owe thee a debt                     |
|               |                                   | لَكَ عَلَيَّ دَيْنٌ عَلَيْهِ دَيْنٌ   |
| „             | You ought to do this              | عَلَيْكَ أَنْ تَعْمَلَ هَذَا          |

| on                 | On this condition      | After this manner     |
|--------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|
|                    | عَلَى هَذَا الشَّرْطِ  | عَلَى هَذَا النَّمِطِ |
| With caution       | عَلَى حَذَرٍ           | عَلَى حِينٍ           |
| as much as         | عَلَى قَدَرٍ           | عَلَى يَدٍ            |
| aside              | عَلَى جَانِبٍ          | عَلَى كُلِّ أَحْوَالٍ |
| I covenant         | أَلْعَهْدُ عَلَيَّ     | قِسْ عَلَيَّ          |
| certainly          | عَلَى كُلِّ حَالٍ      | عَلَى رَجَةٍ          |
| by heart           | عَلَى ظَهْرِ الْقَلْبِ | عَلَى حَسَبٍ          |
| in his time        | عَلَى عَهْدِهِ         | عَلَى أَنَّ           |
| according to their |                        | نَدِمَ عَلَيَّ        |
| saying             | عَلَى قَوْلِهِمْ       | to repent             |
| to enter upon      | أَقْبَلَ عَلَيَّ       | to fall upon the      |
| to induce, attack  | حَمَلَ عَلَيَّ         | face                  |
| to be informed     | وَقَفَ عَلَيَّ         | رَضِيَ عَلَيَّ        |
| to appoint, invest | أَقَامَ عَلَيَّ        | أَنْكَرَ عَلَيَّ      |

He did it in spite of his old age فَعَلَهُ عَلَى كِبَرِ سِنِّهِ

بِـ, بِكَ, بِي with pronominal suffixes

|                            |                         |                    |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|
| making neuter verbs active | I brought him           | أَنْتَيْتُ بِهِ    |
| „                          | He took him             | ذَهَبَ بِهِ        |
| „                          | He came with his people | جَاءَ بِأَهْلِهِ   |
| in                         | I dwelt in Jaffa        | سَكَنْتُ بِجَافَا  |
| „                          | Go in peace             | إِذْهَبْ بِسَلَامٍ |



|                        |                                   |                                    |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| with                   | I struck him with a sword         | ضَرَبْتُهُ بِسَيْفٍ                |
| on account of          | He was imprisoned for             |                                    |
|                        | stealing                          | سُجِنَ بِسَرِقَةٍ                  |
| by                     | By grace we are                   |                                    |
|                        | saved                             | بِالنِّعْمَةِ نَحْنُ مُكَلِّصُونَ  |
| for                    | An eye for an                     | This for that                      |
|                        | eye                               | هَذَا بِذَاكَ عَيْنٌ بِعَيْنٍ      |
| „                      | A rotal for a dirham              | رَطْلٌ بِدِرْهَمٍ                  |
| swearing               | By thy head                       | بِأَسْكَ By God بِأَللَّهِ         |
| unjustly               | بِغَيْرِ الْحَقِّ                 | without بِلَا بِغَيْرِ             |
| because                | بِمَا أَن                         | so that بِكَيِّثُ                  |
| It is best for you     |                                   | in some way or other               |
|                        | الْأَوْلَى بِكَ، الْأَجْدَرُ بِكَ | بِوَجْهِ مِنَ الْوُجُوهِ           |
| to dwell in a place    |                                   | سَكَنَ، حَلَّ، نَزَلَ بِالْمَكَانِ |
| You are more deserving |                                   | الْأَحْرَى بِكَ                    |

لِ

لِ with pronominal suffixes لِي لَكَ لَهَا

|           |                        |                           |
|-----------|------------------------|---------------------------|
| ownership | Zaid has property      | لِزَيْدٍ مَالٌ            |
| „         | Paradise is for the    |                           |
|           | righteous              | الْجَنَّةُ لِلصَّالِحِينَ |
| „         | Majesty belongs to God | الْعَظَمَةُ لِلَّهِ       |
| „         | Praise belongs to God  | الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ         |
| purpose   | I came for study       | جِئْتُ لِلدَّرْسِ         |
| „         | Build for destruction  | ابْنُوا لِلْخَرَابِ       |

|                      |                                    |                             |
|----------------------|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| of or for            | Saving the world                   | مُخَلِّصٌ لِلْعَالَمِ       |
| strengthening        | He does what he wishes             | هُوَ فَعَالٌ لِّمَا يُرِيدُ |
| admiration           | What a learned man                 |                             |
|                      | you are                            | يَا لَكَ مِنْ عَالِمٍ       |
| „                    | What a horseman                    | يَا لَهُ مِنْ فَارِسٍ       |
| swearing             | By your life                       | لَعَمْرُكَ                  |
| because of           | لِسَبَبِ He is concerned in, or    |                             |
|                      | has power                          | لَهُ يَدٌ                   |
| called               | يُقَالُ لَهُ He is well versed     |                             |
|                      | in                                 | لَهُ الْيَدُ الطُّوْلَى فِي |
| instantly            | لِسَاعَتِهِ لَوَقْتِهِ I thank you | لَكَ مِنِّي الشُّكْرُ       |
| for the length of    | you shall have what                |                             |
| time since           | لِطَوَّلِ عَهْدِهِ بَ you like     | لَكَ مِنِّي مَا تُحِبُّ     |
| It is better or best | because it                         | لَآنَهُ                     |
| for you              | الْأَوْفَى لَكَ to speak to        | قَالَ لَهُ                  |
| I owe Mr.            | عَلَيَّ لِفُلَانٍ                  |                             |

عَنْ عَنْهُ، عَنْكَ، عَنَّا، عَنِّي with pronominal suffixes

|            |                       |                                |
|------------|-----------------------|--------------------------------|
| at         | Sit at my right hand  | اجْلِسْ عَنْ يَمِينِي          |
| from       | He did it with a      |                                |
|            | good will             | فَعَلَهُ عَنْ نَفْسٍ رَاضِيَةٍ |
| „          | Go from me, Satan     | إِذْهَبْ عَنِّي يَا شَيْطَانُ  |
| by or near | He travelled past the |                                |
|            | town                  | سَافَرَ عَنِ الْمَدِينَةِ      |

|                                             |                                          |                                        |
|---------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| for                                         | One soul shall not make satisfaction for |                                        |
|                                             | another                                  | لَا تُجْزِي نَفْسٌ عَنْ نَفْسٍ شَيْئًا |
| on account of                               | Pay instead of me                        | ادْفَعْ عَنِّي                         |
| "                                           | May God reward you for me                | جَزَاكَ اللَّهُ عَنِّي                 |
| "                                           | He only came because                     |                                        |
|                                             | he was called                            | لَمْ يَأْتِ إِلَّا عَنْ دَعْوَةٍ       |
| about                                       | He asked me about                        |                                        |
|                                             | your name                                | سَأَلَنِي عَنْ أَسْمِكَ                |
| source                                      | He acquired knowledge                    |                                        |
|                                             | from him                                 | أَخَذَ الْعِلْمَ عَنْهُ                |
| above                                       | God is exalted above                     |                                        |
|                                             | the worlds                               | تَعَالَى اللَّهُ عَنِ الْعَالَمِينَ    |
| to                                          | May God be gracious                      |                                        |
|                                             | unto him                                 | رَضِيَ اللَّهُ عَنْهُ                  |
| "                                           | They were killed to the                  |                                        |
|                                             | last man                                 | قُتِلُوا عَنْ آخِرِهِمْ                |
| He died aged seventy                        |                                          | مَاتَ عَنْ سَبْعِينَ سَنَةً            |
| He died leaving a son                       |                                          | مَاتَ عَنِ ابْنٍ                       |
| After a little                              |                                          | عَنْ or عَمَّا قَلِيلٍ                 |
| by the agency of                            |                                          | عَنْ يَدِ                              |
| He did it without intention                 |                                          | عَمَلَهُ عَنْ غَيْرِ قَصْدٍ            |
| To quote                                    |                                          | نَقَلَ عَنْ                            |
| To relate a narrative as heard from another |                                          | حَدَّثَ عَنْ                           |

كَ

resemblance: Zaid is like a lion

زَيْدٌ كَأَسَدٍ

as, as if, as though

كَأَنَّ

وَ

swearing: By God وَاللَّهِ

By your father وَأَبِيكَ

تَ

اللَّهُ, الرَّحْمَنُ, رَبِّ *by*, is only used with the words  
for swearing; as

Lord, The Merciful, God

نَالِلَهُ, تَالرَّحْمَنِ, تَرَبِّي

*زُبَّ many a*

Many a generous man will travel زُبَّ رَجُلٍ كَرِيمٍ يُسَافِرُ

*مُنْذُ, مُنْذُ since, when*, the word governed by these  
signifies past time; as

I have not seen him since

Friday last

مَا رَأَيْتُهُ مُنْذُ يَوْمِ الْجُمُعَةِ

I have not seen him to-day

مَا رَأَيْتُهُ مُنْذُ الْيَوْمِ

From everlasting

مُنْذُ الْأَزَلِ

*كَيْ in order that; as*

Man works in order that

he may live

الْإِنْسَانُ يَسْتَعِدُّ كَيْ يَعْيشَ

I came that I might see you

جِئْتُ كَيْ أَنْظُرَكَ

*حَاشَا, عَدَا, خَلَا see the particles of exception.**مَتَى* has the force of *مِنْ* when used as a preposition.

*لَوْ* if followed by a pronoun is regarded by some  
authorities as a preposition; as

Had it not been for you I would not  
have stayed

لَوْلَاكَ لَمْ أَتَّقِ

لِ, بِ, عَلَيَّ, عَنْ, فِي, إِلَى, مِنْ  
are used with both  
nouns and pronouns.

رُبَّ, تَ, وَ, كَ, مَتَى, حَاشَ, عَدَا, خَلَا, كَيْ, مُنْذُ, مُدَّ, حَتَّى  
are not used with personal pronouns.

رُبَّ governs an indefinite but qualified noun.

The noun is virtually in the nominative because it  
is مُبْتَدَأٌ and the predicate is the verb in the preterite  
which follows; as

Many a generous man visited us رُبَّ رَجُلٍ كَرِيمٍ زَارَنَا

When مَا is affixed it ceases to act as a preposition.

رُبَّ though omitted still governs after the particles  
بَلَّ, ف, وَ.

حَتَّى until, as far as, even; as

I ate the fish even its head أَكَلْتُ السَّمَكَةَ حَتَّى رَأْسِهَا

I watched until the dawn (i. e.

the whole night)

سَهَتُ حَتَّى الْفَجْرِ

إِلَى implies motion to; as

I ate the fish to its head أَكَلْتُ السَّمَكَةَ إِلَى رَأْسِهَا

مُنْذُ, مُدَّ govern nouns of time; they may be prepo-  
sitions or adverbs; adverbs when the following noun  
is in the nominative; also when they are followed by  
verbs; as

I have not seen him since he came مَا رَأَيْتُهُ مُنْذُجَاءَ

I have not spoken to him for  
two days

لَمْ أَكَلِمَهُ مُذْ يَوْمَانِ

كَي: when this particle governs the مَا of interrogation  
the ا of the مَا may be replaced by ه; as

for what

كَيْمَ or كَيْمَةً or كَيْمَا

The ي of عَلَى and إِلَى become ي when they govern  
pronouns; as إِلَيْكَ to you عَلَيْهِ upon it.

ل has َ with all pronouns except يَاءُ الْمُتَكَلِّمِ; with  
other nouns and the ي it has ِ.

ب takes ِ, ت, ك take ِ.

مُذْ is changed into مِذْ when it governs a noun be-  
ginning with هَمْزَةُ الْوَصْلِ; عَنْ takes ِ and مِنْ takes ِ  
(before the article however َ); as

|                 |                |             |              |
|-----------------|----------------|-------------|--------------|
| From the roof   | مِنْ السَّطْحِ | from among  | مِنْ بَيْنِ  |
| from the house  | مِنْ الْبَيْتِ | below       | مِنْ تَحْتِ  |
| from above      | مِنْ فَوْقِ    | around      | مِنْ حَوْلِ  |
| before          | مِنْ قَبْلِ    | after       | مِنْ بَعْدِ  |
| from            | مِنْ عِنْدِ    | from behind | مِنْ وَرَاءِ |
| during this day | مُذْ الْيَوْمِ | „ „         | مِنْ خَلْفِ  |

Certain of the prepositions are used as nouns, being  
put in construction with the noun which follows them,  
and are themselves generally governed by other pre-  
positions; as

From my right hand

مِنْ عَنْ يَمِينِي



I took the book from  
the table

أَخَذْتُ الْكِتَابَ مِنْ عَلَى الْمَائِدَةِ

The prepositions may be omitted before أَنْ and أَنَّ; as

I commanded him to do so أَمَرْتُهُ (بِ) أَنْ يَفْعَلَ كَذَا

the sentence introduced by أَنْ is then in the accusative.

The preposition may be omitted after a conjunction which connects a word to another governed by the same preposition; as

I passed by Zaid and Amr

مَرَرْتُ بِزَيْدٍ وَعَمْرٍو

Prepositions and adverbs are always dependent upon a verb or quasi verb.

When the verb or that which takes its place signifies simple existence, it is omitted; as

My brother is with my  
father in Jerusalem

أَخِي عِنْدَ أَبِي فِي أُورُشَلِيمَ

but if it signifies more than mere existence, it is expressed; as

My brother lived in Jaffa

أَخِي سَكَنَ فِي يَافَا

This omission is peculiar to the حَال and نَفْعَت, خَبَر

The verb, or the word resembling it, may be implied in the first three; in the صِلَة the verb alone is implied.

### NOUNS IN CONSTRUCTION. <sup>ب</sup>الِإِضَافَةُ

from أَضَافَ to add, ascribe or attribute.

The antecedent is called <sup>ب</sup>الْبُضَافُ that which is ascribed;  
the complement <sup>ب</sup>الْبُضَافُ الْيَتِي that to which ascription is made.

When a noun is so connected in thought with a following word or clause that the two make up one idea, the first is said to be in construction, as in:

|                    |                          |                    |                       |
|--------------------|--------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|
| Son of the king    | إِبْنُ الْمَلِكِ         | All creatures      | كُلُّ الْمَخْلُوقَاتِ |
| The wisdom of God  | حِكْمَةُ اللَّهِ         | Those who fear God | خَائِفُو اللَّهِ      |
| The sleep of death | رُقَادُ الْمَوْتِ        | Holy of Holies     | قُدُسُ الْأَقْدَاسِ   |
| The company of     |                          | The book of God    | كِتَابُ اللَّهِ       |
| believers          | جَمَاعَةُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ |                    |                       |

The antecedent must be stripped of (a) the ن of tanween, (b) the ن of dual, (c) the ن of plural, and (d) the article, and is then declined according to its position in the sentence; as

|                                |                            |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------|
| The prince's boy came          | جَاءَ غُلَامُ الْأَمِيرِ   |
| I saw the king's two sons      | رَأَيْتُ ابْنَيْ الْمَلِكِ |
| I passed by the lovers of Zaid | مَرَرْتُ بِمُحِبِّي زَيْدٍ |

A noun with a suffix being in construction and definite, does not take the article; as

|                 |                    |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| My generous son | إِبْنِي الْكَرِيمِ |
|-----------------|--------------------|

The complement is always in the genitive.

### REAL CONSTRUCTION. **الْإِضَافَةُ الْحَقِيقِيَّةُ**

This kind of construction has the force of an implied preposition. This preposition is فِي when the second noun is used as an adverb of time or place; as

|                           |                         |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| The prayer of the morning | صَلَاةُ (فِي) الصُّبْحِ |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|

The believers of Gaza

مُؤْمِنُو (فِي) غَزَاةٍ

This preposition is **مِنْ** when the second noun denotes the material of the first; as

A silver cup

كَأْسُ فِضَّةٍ

In other cases the preposition **لِ** is implied; as

The servant of the king

خَادِمُ الْمَلِكِ (لِلْمَلِكِ)

When the second noun is definite, the first also becomes definite; and when indefinite, the first is specialized; as

The brother of Zaid ثَوْبُ حَرِيرٍ A garment of silk أَخُو زَيْدٍ

The second of the two nouns may give the gender to the first; as

The mercy of God is nigh

رَحْمَةُ اللَّهِ قَرِيبٌ

Some of his fingers were cut off قُطِعَتْ بَعْضُ أَصَابِعِهِ

A second kind of **إِضَافَةٌ** is found which consists in having the form of construction without the meaning **الْإِضَافَةُ اللَّفْظِيَّةُ** *verbal construction*.

The first noun is always a derived adjective, viz. the noun of agent, or the noun of object with the present or future signification, or the noun of attribute; as

A beater of Zaid

ضَارِبُ زَيْدٍ

The beloved one of the king

مَحْبُوبُ الْمَلِكِ

One who is of good stature

حَسَنُ الْقَامَةِ

This part of **إِضَافَةٌ** is only for **التَّخْفِيفُ** *lightening* as ضَارِبُ زَيْدًا instead of ضَارِبُ زَيْدٍ.

The article may precede the first noun, when the second noun has it prefixed; as

He that loves good

الْمُحِبُّ الْكَيْرَ

If the first noun is in the dual form or is the regular masc. plural it may take the article whether the second has it or not; and also when the second noun is in construction with another noun which has the article; as

The two who are of many cunning devices

الْكثِيرَا الْكَيْدِ

Those who hate Zaid

الْمُبْغِضُوا زَيْدٍ

The striker of the man's lad

الضَّارِبُ غُلَامِ الرَّجُلِ

Certain nouns require always to be put in construction.

This construction may be (a) in form and meaning or (b) in meaning although not in form.

The first are such nouns as *عِنْدَ* by, *لَدُنْ* in presence of; the second are such as *بَعْضُ* some of, *كُلُّ* all of; as

All die (every one dies)

كُلُّ أَحَدٍ يَمُوتُ for كُلُّ يَمُوتُ

I know some of them

أَعْرِفُ بَعْضَهُمْ for أَعْرِفُ بَعْضًا

Certain adverbs; as *إِذَا* when, *إِذْ* when, *حَيْثُ* where,

are put in construction always with sentences, in which case the latter are convertible into sing. nouns; as

I went where you commanded me

ذَهَبْتُ حَيْثُ أَمَرْتَنِي

The following adverbs are indeclinable when the second noun though omitted is implied, and they take the ٢.

Behind

خَلْفَ | first

أَوَّلَ | after

بَعْدُ

in front

أَمَامَ | according

حَسْبُ | before

قَبْلُ

|               |               |       |         |       |         |
|---------------|---------------|-------|---------|-------|---------|
| below         | تَحْتُ        | left  | شِمَالُ | right | يَمِينُ |
| below         | دُونُ         | above | فَوْقُ  |       |         |
| I came before | جِئْتُ قَبْلُ |       |         |       |         |

The adverbs take َ when in construction with a noun expressed or implied; as

Who came first, you or Zaid      مَنْ جَاءَ قَبْلًا أَنْتَ أَمْ زَيْدٌ

I came before Zaid      جِئْتُ قَبْلَ زَيْدٍ

When not in construction they take the ِ .

I came beforehand      جِئْتُ قَبْلًا

Some useful Adverbs are:

|                    |                      |                |                     |
|--------------------|----------------------|----------------|---------------------|
| towards, about     | نَحْوُ               | yes, certainly | أَجَلٌ              |
| by, by the side of | إِزَاءَ              | yes            | جَیْرٌ              |
| opposite, in front |                      | ever           | قَطُّ               |
| of                 | تِلْقَاءَ, قُبَالَةَ | thus           | كَذَا               |
| between            | بَيْنَ               | likewise       | كَذَلِكَ            |
| in the middle      | وَسْطَ               | not at all     | كَلَّا, أَلْبَتَّةَ |
| near               | قُرْبَ               | gratis         | مَجَانًا            |
| as far as          | بُعْدَ               | left (hand)    | شِمَالُ             |
| the distance of    | مَسَافَةَ            | around         | حَوْلَ              |
| before             | قُدَّامَ             | after          | غِبُّ بَعْدَ        |
| in front           | أَمَامَ              |                |                     |

Words and expressions used adverbially:

|           |           |                  |               |
|-----------|-----------|------------------|---------------|
| to-morrow | غَدًا     | yesterday        | أَلْبَارِحَةَ |
| to-day    | الْيَوْمَ | before yesterday | قَبْلُ أَمْسٍ |



|                       |                                       |                  |                       |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------|-----------------------|
| now                   | الآن                                  | early            | بَاكِرًا              |
| after an hour         | بَعْدَ سَاعَةٍ                        | late             | مُتَأَخِّرًا          |
| after a day           | بَعْدَ يَوْمٍ                         | formerly         | سَابِقًا              |
| firstly               | أَوَّلًا                              | lately           | مُؤَخَّرًا            |
| lastly                | أَخِيرًا                              | also             | أَيْضًا               |
| sometimes             | أَحْيَانًا                            | slowly           | رَوِيْدًا رَوِيْدًا   |
| many times            | مِرَارًا                              | little by little | شَيْئًا شَيْئًا       |
| always                | دَائِمًا                              | every morning    | صَبَاحَ مَسَاءَ       |
| oftentimes, generally | غَالِبًا                              | and evening      |                       |
| never, not at         |                                       | by day           | نَهَارًا              |
| all                   | أَبَدًا أَصْلًا قَطْعًا               | by night         | لَيْلًا               |
| especially, above     |                                       | at one time,     |                       |
| all                   | خُصُوصًا , لَا سِيَّمَا               | once             | طَوْرًا ... وَتَارَةً |
| together              | مَعًا                                 | at another,      |                       |
| very, exceedingly     | جِدًّا                                | again            | تَارَةً ... وَطَوْرًا |
| wholly, in            |                                       | inside           | دَاخِلًا              |
| general               | عُمُومًا , بِإِلْجِمَالٍ              | outside          | خَارِجًا              |
| all                   | جَمِيعًا                              | inwardly         | بَاطِنًا              |
| quickly, soon         |                                       | outwardly        | ظَاهِرًا              |
|                       | عَاجِلًا , سَرِيعًا , عَلَى الْفَرَرِ | vainly           | بَاطِلًا              |
| presently             | حَالًا , فِي الْحَالِ                 | by force         | غَضَبًا , جَبْرًا     |
| slowly                | مَهْلًا                               | in spite         | رَغْبًا عَنِ          |
| suddenly              | بَغْتَةً                              | being obliged    | إِضْطِرَارًا          |



|                         |                                     |                  |                    |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------|--------------------|
| legally                 | شَرَعًا                             | to the left      | شِمَالًا           |
| truly                   | حَقًّا , بِالْحَقِّيقَةِ            | to the right     | يَمِينًا           |
| aside                   | جَانِبًا , عَلَى جَانِبٍ            | much             | كَثِيرًا           |
| instead of              | بَدَلًا مِنْ , عِوَضًا عَنْ         | little           | قَلِيلًا           |
| certainly               |                                     | eagerly          | رُغْبَةً           |
|                         | عَلَى كُلِّ حَالٍ , مِنْ كُلِّ بُدٍ | eternally        | أَبَدًا            |
| by all means            | عَلَى كُلِّ أَحْوَالٍ               | with a good will | حُبًّا وَكَرَامَةً |
| every place<br>and time | فِي كُلِّ مَكَانٍ وَزَمَانٍ         | welcome          | أَهْلًا وَسَهْلًا  |
| undoubtedly             | لَا مَحَالَةَ                       | ever, never      | قَطُّ              |
| in the meantime         | فِي أَثْنَاءِ ذَلِكَ                | with aversion    | كَرْهًا            |
| may it do you good      | هَنِيئًا مَرِيئًا                   | only             | فَقَطُّ            |
| obediently              | سَمْعًا وَطَاعَةً                   |                  |                    |

### THE APPOSITIVES. التَّوَابِعُ

The Appositive follows the declension of the noun to which it stands in apposition by way of description or designation.

It is of five kinds:

- I. النَّعْتُ The Adjective.
- II. عَطْفُ الْبَيَانِ The Explanatory Apposition.
- III. التَّوَكِيدُ The Corroborative.
- IV. الْبَدَلُ The Substitution.
- V. عَطْفُ النَّسْقِ The Connexion of Sequence.

## THE ADJECTIVE. النَّعْتُ

النَّعْتُ is the تَابِعٌ which qualifies the preceding noun المَنْبُوعُ. It is originally a derived adjective i. e. a noun of agent, object, attribute or superiority: but it may be:

(a). A masdar but not مِثْيِي of a triliteral verb in the masc. sing.; as

A just man رَجُلٌ عَدْلٌ

(b). A demonstrative or relative pronoun qualifying a definite noun; as

This man came جَاءَ الرَّجُلُ هَذَا

Give me the book which  
is on the table أَعْطِنِي الْكِتَابَ الَّذِي عَلَى الْمَائِدَةِ

(c). ذُو possessing; as

I love a pious man أَحِبُّ رَجُلًا ذَا تَقْوَى

(d). A noun of relation الْمَنْسُوبُ; as

I am an Arab أَنَا رَجُلٌ عَرَبِيٌّ

(e). A common noun إِسْمٌ جِنْسٍ when the latter can be regarded as an adjective; as

This is Zaid the lion (the brave) هَذَا زَيْدٌ الْأَسَدُ

(f). An indicative sentence or phrase qualifying an indefinite noun; as

This is a horse I like هَذَا حِصَانٌ أَحِبُّهُ

All these must admit of being changed into an adjective.

If the noun is definite the adjective makes clearer the definiteness; as

Zaid the merchant came      جَاءَ زَيْدُ التَّاجِرِ

If the noun is indefinite, it is specialized by the adjective; as

A little boy opened the door      وَلَدٌ صَغِيرٌ فَتَحَ الْبَابَ

The adjective may denote (a) praise, (b) blame or (c) assurance; as

(a). In the name of the most merciful God

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

(b). I seek the protection of God from Satan the vile one

أَعُوذُ بِاللَّهِ مِنَ الشَّيْطَانِ الرَّجِيمِ

(c). Yesterday which is past

أَمْسِ الدَّابِرُ

النَّعْتُ is of two kinds:

I. النَّعْتُ الْكَفَيُّ qualifies the noun which it follows; as

This is a profitable book

هَذَا كِتَابٌ مُفِيدٌ

II. النَّعْتُ السَّبَبِيُّ qualifies the noun which it precedes; as

This book is profitable: its

subject

هَذَا كِتَابٌ مُفِيدٌ مَوْضُوعُهُ

النَّعْتُ الْكَفَيُّ agrees with the noun preceding it in being definite, or indefinite, and in number, gender, and case as;

I saw two accomplished men رَأَيْتُ رَجُلَيْنِ فَاضِلَيْنِ

The accomplished woman came جَاءَتِ الْمَرْأَةُ الْفَاضِلَةُ

A good man, the good man رَجُلٌ صَالِحٌ، الرَّجُلُ الصَّالِحُ

Firm Mountains جِبَالٌ رَاسِيَةٌ

النَّعْتُ السَّبَبِيّ agrees with the preceding noun as to definiteness or indefiniteness and, with what follows it in gender; as

These are the two men,  
whose mother is good هَٰذَانِ الرَّجُلَانِ الْكَسَنَةُ أُمُّهُمَا

These are the two men whose children are many

هَٰذَانِ الرَّجُلَانِ الْكَثِيرُونَ أَوْلَادُهُمْ

When two adjectives qualify a noun, the conjunction may or may not be used; as

This is a learned man and intelligent هَٰذَا رَجُلٌ عَالِمٌ وَنَبِيٌّ

When a noun in the dual or plural is followed by different adjectives in the sing. number the conjunction must be used; as

Three men came a scribe, a poet and a lawyer

جَاءَ ثَلَاثَةُ رِجَالٍ كَاتِبٌ وَشَاعِرٌ وَفَقِيهٌ

The adjective may be separated from its noun when the meaning of the latter is obvious; as

Truly this is a great oath if you had known

إِنَّهُ لَقَسَمٌ لَوْ تَعْلَمُونَ عَظِيمٌ

Our God is a God really generous إِلَهُنَا إِلَهٌ حَقِيقَةٌ كَرِيمٌ

but if the noun is vague in meaning the adjective must follow it; as

I saw this generous person رَأَيْتُ هَذَا الْكَرِيمَ

لَا not, and إِمَّا either, when separating adjectives from their nouns must be repeated with the و; as

This is a day not hot and  
not cold هَذَا يَوْمٌ لَّا حَارٌّ وَلَا بَارِدٌ

To every soul there is a time of death; either near at hand or distant لِكُلِّ نَفْسٍ أَجَلٌ إِمَّا قَرِيبٌ وَإِمَّا بَعِيدٌ

The adjective may be regarded as a new expression when it forms the predicate of an implied مُبْتَدَأٌ in which case it is called اَلنَّعْتُ اَلْمَقْطُوعُ; as

I passed by a man, (he is) a tall man مَرَرْتُ بِرَجُلٍ طَوِيلٍ

When a noun has two or more adjectives one of them being مَقْطُوعٌ this one comes last; as

I saw a man learned, a  
poet, an old man رَأَيْتُ رَجُلًا عَالِمًا شَاعِرًا شَيْخًا

Zaid beat Amr, the two poets ضَرَبَ زَيْدٌ عَمْرًا الشَّاعِرَيْنِ

When one adjective qualifies two nouns in different cases and the regents are different the adjective must be مَقْطُوعٌ; as

I honoured Zaid and I beat Amr, the two poets أَكْرَمْتُ زَيْدًا وَضَرَبْتُ عَمْرًا الشَّاعِرَيْنِ

## عَطْفُ اَلْبَيَانِ. THE EXPLANATORY APPPOSITION.

This is the تَابِعٌ which is more definite than the مَتَّبِعُ the noun which is qualified.



It is a definite and primitive noun but has the character of an adjective, and agrees in number and gender with the noun it qualifies; as

The man came, Zaid      جَاءَ الرَّجُلُ زَيْدٌ

A sentence may thus be put in apposition to another; as

He called upon his Lord, he said; O Lord have mercy on me      دَعَا رَبَّهُ قَالَ رَبِّ اَرْحَمْنِي

### THE CORROBORATION. التَّوَكُّيدُ

التَّوَكُّيدُ is the تَابِع which corroborates.

It is either (a) تَوَكُّيدٌ لَفْظِيٌّ *verbal corroboration*, the repetition of the word itself; as

Zaid, Zaid came      جَاءَ زَيْدٌ زَيْدٌ      No, No      لَا لَا

Zaid, died died      زَيْدٌ مَاتَ مَاتَ

or (b) تَوَكُّيدٌ مَعْنَوِيٌّ *corroboration in meaning*, the use of the words نَفْسٌ عَيْنٌ after the مَتَّبِعٌ which are put in construction with the pronoun of the noun corroborated; as

Zaid himself came      جَاءَ زَيْدٌ نَفْسُهُ

نَفْسٌ must precede the عَيْنٌ when they are mentioned together and the preposition بِ may be prefixed to them. When the noun is dual it is best to put نَفْسٌ or عَيْنٌ in the plural, أَنْفُسٌ, أَعْيُنٌ, and in construction with the pronoun of the noun; as



The two women themselves came جَاءَتِ الْمَرْأَتَانِ أَنْفُسُهُمَا

An indefinite noun does not admit of this kind of corroboration. When an attached pronoun in the nom. case needs corroboration it must be repeated in a separate form; as

I came myself

جِئْتُ أَنَا نَفْسِي

instead of

جِئْتُ نَفْسِي

In the sentence, I passed by him مَرَرْتُ بِهِ بِهِ the attached pronoun must be repeated with the preposition.

The *إِسْم* of *إِنَّ* must be repeated; as

Surely Zaid, surely Zaid is

standing

إِنَّ زَيْدًا إِنَّ زَيْدًا قَائِمٌ

Corroboration may also take place by the use of synonyms; as

He threw the book, he threw it

أَلْقَى الْكِتَابَ رَمَاهُ

Yes, certainly

نَعَمْ جَوَابٌ

and by the following words تَوْكِيدُ الشُّمُولِ

all جَمِيعٌ all أَجْمَعٌ all كُلٌّ

all قَاطِبَةً all بِأَسْرِ كَافَّةً both كِلْتَا both كِلَا

These are put in construction with the pronoun of the noun to which they refer; as

The people came, all of them

جَاءَ الْقَوْمُ كُلُّهُمْ

I saw the two women, both

of them

رَأَيْتُ الْمَرْأَتَيْنِ كِلْتَيْهِمَا

كِلا masc. كِلْتَا fem. both, when in construction with

a noun have vowels implied upon the **ا** as signs of declension; as

Both the men came

جَا كِلَا الرَّجُلَيْنِ

I saw both the men

رَأَيْتُ كِلَا الرَّجُلَيْنِ

but when in construction with the pronoun of the noun to which they refer they have the ordinary declension of the dual; as

I passed by the two girls,

both of them

مَرَرْتُ بِالْإِثْنَيْنِ كِلْتَاهُمَا

أَجْمَعُ any or all of these may follow أَتَّبَعُ, أَكْتَبُ, أَكْتُفِ

أَجْمَعُ is made fem. and plural and generally follows كُلُّ

كُلُّ is common to both singular and plural; as

The army came, all of it

جَاءَ الْجَيْشُ كُلُّهُ

The men came, all of them

جَاءَ الْقَوْمُ كُلُّهُمْ

The separate pronoun in the nominative case may be used as تَوَكَّدُ to any attached pronoun; as

I came

جِئْتُ أَنَا

I saw thee

رَأَيْتَكَ أَنْتَ

I passed by him, him

مَرَرْتُ بِهِ هُوَ

### THE SUBSTITUTION. اَلْبَدَلُ

اَلْبَدَلُ is the تَابِع which is substituted for the noun which it follows; it is of five kinds:

(a). اَلْبَدَلُ اَلْكُلِّ substitution of the whole for the whole; as

The man came Zaid

جَاءَ الرَّجُلُ زَيْدٌ

Amr thy brother came

جَاءَ عُمَرُو أَخُوكَ

(b). *بَدَلُ الْبَعْضِ* substitution of the part for the whole; as

I ate the fish, the half of it *أَكَلْتُ السَّمَكَةَ نِصْفَهَا*

(c). *بَدَلُ الْأَشْتِمَالِ* the comprehensive substitution indicating something inherent in the preceding word; as

I love Zaid, his name *أُحِبُّ زَيْدًا إِسْمَهُ*

(d). *بَدَلُ الْغَلَطِ وَالنِّسْيَانِ* substitution of error and forgetfulness; as

I rode the mare, the she-camel *رَكَبْتُ الْفَرَسَ النَّاقَةَ*

I saw Zaid, Amr *رَأَيْتُ زَيْدًا عَمْرًا*

(e). *بَدَلُ التَّفْصِيلِ* substitution denoting separation; as

In the book are two chapters, a chapter on etymology and a chapter on syntax

*فِي الْكِتَابِ فَصْلَانِ فَصْلٌ فِي الصَّرْفِ وَفَصْلٌ فِي النَّحْوِ*

In the second and third kinds the *بَدَل* must be in construction with the pronoun of the noun preceding.

When the regent governs the genitive is repeated; as

I passed by a man, by Zaid *مَرَرْتُ بِرَجُلٍ بِزَيْدٍ*

A verb may be substituted for a verb when they agree in tense; or a sentence for a sentence. In the sentence *جَاءَ أَخُوكَ زَيْدٌ* thy brother Zaid came Zaid may be either *بَدَلٌ* or *عَطْفٌ بَيَانٍ*. If Zaid shews which brother came it is *عَطْفٌ بَيَانٍ* but if it is only substituted for the words *أَخُوكَ* it is *بَدَلٌ*.

## THE CONNEXION OF SEQUENCE. عَطْفُ النَّسَفِ

This "contextual" apposition is produced by the use of the conjunctions. The conjunctions may join two words or two sentences; as

His saying is truth and right      قَوْلُهُ صِدْقٌ وَحَقٌّ  
 God giveth life and taketh it      اللَّهُ يُحْيِي وَيُمِيتُ  
 Life and death are in the hand  
 of God      الْحَيَاةُ وَالْمَوْتُ بِيَدِ اللَّهِ

and the world and what is in it are His      وَالْكُونُ وَمَا فِيهِ لَهُ

It is better to join a noun with a noun and a verb with a verb, and one sentence with another; the verbs of the two sentences being of the same mood and tense.

The conjunctions are:

| II. Disjunctive.      |        | I. Conjunctive. |        |
|-----------------------|--------|-----------------|--------|
| but                   | لَكِنْ | and             | وَ     |
| not                   | لَا    | and then        | فَ     |
| but rather, or rather | بَلْ   | then            | ثُمَّ  |
| or, or rather         | أَمْ   | even            | حَتَّى |
| or                    | أَوْ   |                 |        |
| either, or            | إِمَّا |                 |        |

وَ is used without reference to order or time; as

I led armies and fed guests      قَدَدْتُ الْأَصْفُوفَ وَقَتُّتُ الْأَصْيُوفَ

فَ denotes (a) sequence and (b) consequence; as

(a). The men entered and then

the children

دَخَلَ الرِّجَالُ فَالْأَوْلَادُ

I read it page by page قَرَأْتُ وَجْهًا وَوَجْهًا

(b). He reviled me and I struck him شَتَمَنِي فَضَرَبْتُهُ

Depart from me Satan for اذْهَبْ عَنِّي يَا شَيْطَانُ فَإِنَّكَ

It is also used to join the conditional clause with that expressing the result of the condition; as

If ye love me keep my commandments

إِنْ كُنْتُمْ تُحِبُّونَنِي فَأَحْفَظُوا وَصَايَايَ

and after <sup>ف</sup> of interrogation; as

Do you also not understand أَفَأَنْتُمْ أَيْضًا غَيْرُ فَاهِمِينَ

and as the correlative of <sup>أَمَّا</sup>; as

But ye have known me أَمَّا أَنْتُمْ فَقَدْ عَرَفْتُمُونِي

<sup>ثُمَّ</sup> denotes succession extending over a longer period than <sup>ف</sup>; as

God humbled me then he exalted me حَظَّنِي اللَّهُ ثُمَّ رَفَعَنِي

<sup>حَتَّى</sup> joins two common nouns together provided that the latter expresses part of the former; as

The pilgrims came even

those on foot قَدِمَ الْحُجَّاجُ حَتَّى الْمَشَاةِ

The people died even the

prophets مَاتَ النَّاسُ حَتَّى الْأَنْبِيَاءِ

<sup>لَكِنْ</sup> without the <sup>و</sup> prefixed, is always used after a negative or prohibitive sentence; as

Zaid did not come but Amr مَجَاءَ زَيْدٌ لَكِنْ عَمْرُو

<sup>لَا</sup> denotes simple negation and is always used after affirmation or command; as



The man came and not another جَاءَ الرَّجُلُ لَا غَيْرُهُ

Take the bow and not the sword خُذِ الْقَوْسَ لَا السَّيْفَ

بَلْ is used after any of these sentences; as

The man or rather the child died مَاتَ الرَّجُلُ بَلِ الْوَلَدُ

Do not fear your enemy but

rather your brother لَا تَخَفْ عَدُوَّكَ بَلْ أَخَاكَ

أَمْ is used after the ا of interrogation; as

Did you hold up the heavens or your fathers?

أَأَنْتُمْ رَفَعْتُمُ السَّمَوَاتِ أَمْ آبَاؤُكُمْ

When not preceded by the ا it means *or rather*; as

Did you create man or rather have you given him

reason? هَلْ خَلَقْتُمُ الْإِنْسَانَ أَمْ هَلْ أُعْطِيتُمُوهُ الْعَقْلَ

أَوْ denotes choice or division; as

Take a dirham or a dinar خُذْ دِرْهَمًا أَوْ دِينَارًا

Be good or evil كُنْ صَالِحًا أَوْ شَرِيرًا

إِمَّا *either, or*, is always followed by another إِمَّا with

, prefixed; as

Speech is either prose or verse الْكَلَامُ إِمَّا نَثَرٌ وَإِمَّا شِعْرٌ

لَا وَلَا *neither, nor*

Neither this nor that is mine لَا هَذَا يَخْصُنِي وَلَا ذَاكَ

The detached pronoun must be introduced and the regent of the genitive repeated in such sentences; as

I came and Zaid جِئْتُ أَنَا وَزَيْدٌ

He sat between Zaid and

between Amr جَلَسَ بَيْنَ زَيْدٍ وَبَيْنَ عَمْرٍو



## THE MOODS OF THE VERB. اِعْرَابُ الْفِعْلِ وَبِنَاؤُهُ

The aorist like the noun admits of declension; i. e. its final vowel may undergo certain changes to express the moods. These changes are produced by the action of certain particles. These particles are of two kinds:

I. Those which change the final vowel of the aorist  $\text{اَ}$  into  $\text{اِ}$  to express the subjunctive mood.

II. Those which apocopate the final vowel of the aorist to express the conditional and imperative moods.

The aorist is in the indicative mood when its final letter is vowelled with  $\text{اَ}$ , or, as we may say, when not governed by the particles of نَصْب *accusative*, or جَزْم *apocopation*.

### I. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. نَوَاصِبُ الْفِعْلِ

The subjunctive mood is governed by the particles اَنْ, اِنَّ, اِذَنْ, اِنَّ, اَنْ and by كَيْ with ل prefixed to prevent its being a preposition, and occurs only in subordinate clauses.

أُرِيدُ أَنْ أَصَاحِبَكَ *that, as I wish to accompany you*

لَنْ = (لَا يَكُونُ أَنْ = لَا أَنْ) *it will not happen that, never; as*

He did not enter it and  
shall never enter it

لَمْ يَدْخُلْهَا وَلَنْ يَدْخُلْهَا

إِذَنْ then, in that case, in answer to the question "what if".

|                                |   |                            |
|--------------------------------|---|----------------------------|
| What if I believe God          | } | إِنْ آمَنْتَ بِاللَّهِ     |
| then thou shalt enter Paradise |   | إِذَنْ تَدْخُلُ الْجَنَّةَ |

كَيْ in order; as

Learn in order that you may teach تَعَلَّمُوا لِكَيْ تَعْلَمُوا

أَنْ is called الْبَصْدَرِيَّةُ because with the verb it governs it is equivalent in meaning to the masdar of that verb; as

I hope to assist you أَرْجُو أَنْ أَسَاعِدَكَ، مُسَاعَدَتَكَ

أَنْ has the meaning of longing or desire for something الطَّمَعُ, and its verb can neither have a future signification nor follow another verb expressing certainty.

أَنْ may be omitted in the following cases:

(a). After the preposition لِ التَّغْلِيلِ expressing the cause of an event; as

I came to study جِئْتُ لِلدَّرْسِ، جِئْتُ لِالدَّرْسِ

(b). After a conjunction connecting a verb and noun; as

I prefer flight and to be safe أُفْضِلُ الْهَرَبَ وَأَسْلَمَ

أَنْ although not expressed may affect the declension of the aorist; this ellipse is to be assumed in the following cases:

(a). After كَيْ a preposition which has not the لِ; as

He sat in order that he might rest جَلَسَ كَيْ يَسْتَرِيحَ

(b). After حَتَّى a preposition

I asked him to come دَعَوْتُهُ حَتَّى يَأْتِيَ

(c). After أَوْ which has the meaning of إِلَى or إِلَّا till, lest, or else; as

Beat the thief till he confesses اضْرِبِ الْلَّصَّ أَوْ يُقِرَّ

Sit, or else the prince will rise اجْلِسْ أَوْ يَقُومَ الْأَمِيرُ

(d). After لُ denial

This لُ is prefixed to the predicate of كَانَ when it is in the negative, thereby strengthening the negation, as  
God surely will not

torment the good مَا كَانَ اللَّهُ لِيُعَذِّبَ الصَّالِحِينَ

(e). After فَ السَّبَبُ expressing result or effect, and association, following negation or request; as

### I. Negation:

Zaid did not visit me that I

might honour him لَمْ يَزُرْنِي زَيْدٌ فَأَكْرَمَهُ

The sheik is not present

that we might ask him لَيْسَ الشَّيْخُ حَاضِرًا وَنَسَأَلَهُ

### II. Request.

Under request the following are included:

I. Command. II. Prohibition. III. Interrogation. IV. Exhortation. V. Threatening. VI. Wishing. VII. Hoping.

I. Strive and you will derive benefit جَدَّ فِتْنَالِ الْخَيْرِ

II. Do not speak or you will make a slip لَا تَتَكَلَّمْ فَتَرِلَ

III. Where are you going that I

may follow you أَيَّنَ تَذْهَبُ فَاتَّبَعَكَ

IV. Will you not study and

please your teacher

أَلَا تَدْرُسُ فَتَرْضَى مُعَلِّمَكَ

V. Why do you not believe and be safe

هَلَّا تُؤْمِنُ وَتَأْمَنَ

VI. Would that you were a

learned man to profit us

لَيْتَكَ عَالِمٌ وَتُفِيدَنَا

VII. Perhaps I may go to Jerusalem then I will

visit you

لَعَلِّي أَذْهَبُ إِلَى الْقُدْسِ وَأُزَوِّرُكَ

## II. THE CONDITIONAL AND IMPERATIVE MOODS.

### جَوَازِمُ الْفِعْلِ

The particles which apocopate the final vowel of the aorist are of two kinds:

I. Those which apocopate the final vowel of one verb only.

II. Those which apocopate the final vowel of two verbs.

I. These are لَا, لَئِنْ, لَمَّا.

لَمْ, لَمَّا not, not yet, are always used before the aorist and give it the signification of the preterite; as

He did not come and then he came لَمْ يَأْتِ ثُمَّ جَاءَ

I plucked the fruit when it

was not yet ripe

قَطَعْتُ الثَّمَرَ وَلَمَّا يَنْضَجْ

The conditional particle إِنْ may precede لَمْ but not لَمَّا, and the verb which follows لَمَّا but not that which follows لَمْ may be dropped.

لِ let, and لَا not, give the aorist a future signification.

لِ is used imperatively and in prayer; as

May God bless us

لِيُبَارِكُنَا اللَّهُ

Let every one know

لِيَعْلَمَ كُلُّ وَاحِدٍ

لَا is used for prohibition النَّهْيُ, and prayer; as

Do not be angry with us

لَا تَغْضَبْ عَلَيْنَا

Do not kill

لَا تَقْتُلْ

لِ when preceded by ف or وَ may drop its َ; as

May our God bless us

فَلْيُبَارِكُنَا إِلَهُنَا

II. Particles which apocope the aorist of two Verbs  
حَيْثُ، إِذْ، مَا، أَنَّى، أَيَّانَ، أَيْنَ، مَتَى، أَيَّ، مَهْمَا، مَا، مَنْ، إِنْ  
كَيْفَمَا and إِذَا in poetry.

These, with the exception of إِنْ، إِذَا، and مَا when  
it signifies time, are all regarded as nouns and are all  
except أَيَّ indeclinable.

إِنْ if; as

If you seek you will find

إِنْ تَطْلُبْ تَجِدْ

مَنْ whosoever; as

Whosoever cometh to me I will not cast out

مَنْ يُقْبِلْ إِلَيَّ لَا أُخْرِجُهُ خَارِجًا

مَا and مَهْمَا whatsoever; as

Whatsoever good you do God knoweth it

وَمَا تَفْعَلُوا مِنْ خَيْرٍ يَعْلَمُهُ اللَّهُ

Whatsoever you bring us we will not believe

مَهْمَا تَأْتِنَا بِهِ لَا نُؤْمِنُ



أَيُّ or أَيُّمَا *whosoever, whatsoever, whichsoever*; as

By whatsoever you call upon Him He has the most excellent names  
أَيُّمَا تَدْعُوا فَلَهُ الْأَسْمَاءُ الْحُسْنَى

مَتَى or مَتَى مَا and أَيَّانَ *whenever*; as

Whenever you meet us you die

with fear  
مَتَى تَلْقَانَا تَمُتُ رُعْبًا

Whenever you come to us you

will find good  
أَيَّانَ نَأْتِيَا تَلَقَّ خَيْرًا

أَيْنَ or أَيْنَمَا and حَيْثُمَا *wherever*; as

Wherever you are death will

overtake you  
أَيْنَمَا تَكُونُوا يُدْرِكُكُمُ الْمَوْتُ

Wherever you go God will award you success

حَيْثُمَا تَذْهَبُ يُقَدِّرْ لَكَ اللَّهُ نَجَاحًا

أَنَّى *wherever, whenever*; as

Wherever you are I will be  
أَنَّى تَكُنْ أَكُنْ

كَيْفَ *however*; as

However you sit I will sit  
كَيْفَمَا تَجْلِسُ أَجْلِسُ

Those of the particles which express time or place are adverbs; the remainder may be (a) the subject, (b) the objective complement or (c) the absolute object, as

(a). He who seeks finds  
مَنْ يَطْلُبُ يَجِدْ

(b). Whomsoever you love I will love  
أَيُّمَا تُحِبُّ أُحِبُّ

(c). Whatever walk you walk I

will follow  
أَيُّ سَبِيلٍ تَسِيرُ أَتَّبَعُكَ

All these particles stand at the head of the sentence.



مَا must be affixed to إِذْ and حَيْثُ, but not to مَنْ, مَا or أَنَّى; it may or may not follow the other particles.

كَيْفَمَا can only be used when the verbs have the same root.

The first verb which is introduced by these particles is called فِعْلُ الشَّرْطِ *the conditional verb*, protasis, and the second جَوَابُ الشَّرْطِ *the answer to the condition*, apodosis, both are deprived of their final vowels on account of their dependence one upon the other.

فِعْلُ الشَّرْطِ must be indicative and admit of conjugation, and not be preceded by س or سَوْفَ or قَدْ; جَوَابُ الشَّرْطِ must always follow the conditional verb, and be preceded by ف when it is (a) a neuter verb, or (b) denotes request or (c) is preceded by س, قَدْ, مَا or لَنْ of negation, or (d) is a nominal sentence.

A nominal sentence may be introduced by إِذَا, *as well*, and if it is in the aorist affirmative or preceded by لَا the ف may be introduced; in these instances, the verb is in the nominative (not apocopated) and the sentence is نِي مَحَلِّ جَزْمٍ because it is the answer to the conditional verb.

When the verbs of both clauses are in the aorist or the first only is in the aorist, apocopation takes place; but when the first verb is in the preterite and the

second in the aorist, the latter may or may not be apocopated.

If the **ف** is omitted, the second verb may be apocopated, in which case it is regarded as an answer to an implied verb of condition; as

Visit me and I will honour you      زُرْنِي أَكْرَمَكَ  
as though written

Visit me and if you visit me  
I will honour you      زُرْنِي وَإِنْ تَزُرْنِي أَكْرَمَكَ

The conditional verb has the form of the preterite and a future signification.

If the verb ends with a weak letter or **ن** masc. plur. or fem. sing. this is dropped      لَمْ تَفْعَلِي, لَمْ يَفْعَلُوا

#### THE CONDITIONAL PARTICLES.

أَمَّا, لَوْ, لَوْ لَا, لَوْ مَا, لَمَّا

أَمَّا *but, but as for*, takes **فَ** as its correlative; it is followed by a noun or pronoun; as

But as for me I shall die      أَمَّا أَنَا فَأَمُوتُ  
As for the poor man it is

he who has no sense      أَمَّا الْفَقِيرُ فَمَنْ لَا عَقْلَ لَهُ

لَوْ *if*, denotes condition with reference to past time, and signifies the non-existence of the result because of the non-existence of the condition, حَرَفُ امْتِنَاعٍ لِامْتِنَاعٍ; it must be followed by a verb; as

Had God pleased he would have guided you all in the right way  
 لَوْ شَاءَ اللَّهُ لَهَدَاكُمْ أَجْمَعِينَ

When followed by the aorist form of the verb the past tense is signified; لَ is commonly used as its correlative. It always changes the statement of the verb, if negative into affirmative and vice versa; as

Had he come to me I would have honoured him  
 لَوْ جَاءَنِي لَأَكْرَمْتُهُ

Had he not known he would not have been responsible  
 لَوْ تَمْ يَعْلَمْ لَمْ يُطَالَبْ

لَوْلا and لَوْمَا (لَوْ with لَا and مَا) were it not for, had it not been for, are conditional particles used with the subject, the predicate of which is usually omitted; لَ is generally used as their correlative; as

Had it not been for God we would have perished  
 لَوْلَا اللَّهُ لَهَلَكْنَا

It is called حَرْفُ اِمْتِنَاعٍ لِوُجُودٍ a particle denoting the impossibility of one thing because of the existence of another.

لَمَّا when, is an adverb expressing condition with reference to past time and is only used with the preterite; as

When he brought you safe to the land you turned away  
 فَلَمَّا نَجَّيَاكُمْ إِلَى الْبَرِّ أَعْرَضْتُمْ

It is called حَرْفُ وُجُودٍ لِوُجُودٍ a particle denoting the existence of one thing because of the existence of another.

## TENSES OF THE VERB. أَزْمَنَةُ الْفِعْلِ

The Arabic Verb expresses the state rather than the time of an action or event. The state may be complete, a finished act; or incomplete, an unfinished act.

There are two forms of the verb to express these states, the preterite الْمَاضِي *the past*, and the aorist الْمُضَارِعُ *resembling*.

### THE PRETERITE.

The Preterite includes:

I. All Past Tenses of other languages; the particular time of an action or event is to be inferred from the context or some accompanying particle; as

Many of his disciples went back

رَجَعَ كَثِيرُونَ مِنْ تَلَامِيذِهِ إِلَى الْوَرَاءِ

Of a truth we have placed the gift of prophecy among the descendants of Jacob لَقَدْ جَعَلْنَا النَّبُوَّةَ فِي نَسْلِ يَعْقُوبَ

The particle لَقَدْ *لِلتَّحْقِيقِ* assures the action of the verb and necessarily limits the preterite to a time actually past.

To express the pluperfect كَانَ is used with the preterite; as

Amr had sat

كَانَ عَمْرُو قَدْ جَلَسَ

II. The Present Tense with such verbs as بَاعَ to sell, اشْتَرَى to buy, when used at the time of selling or buying; as

I sell you the camel for two pounds      بِعْتُكَ الْجَمَلَ بِلَيْسَرَتَيْنِ

These verbs are called      عُقُودُ الْإِنْشَاءِ

III. The Future Tense when it is (a) دَعَاءٌ, a prayer or curse; as

May God who is exalted above } رَحِمَكَ اللَّهُ تَعَالَى  
all have mercy upon you

May God preserve your existence      أَدَامَ اللَّهُ بَقَاءَكُمْ

May God curse thee      لَعَنَكَ اللَّهُ

(b). After the negative لَا following an oath; as

By God I will not visit you } وَاللَّهِ لَا زُرْتُكَ حَتَّى تَزُورَنِي  
until you visit me

(c). A condition or an answer to a condition; as

If you seek you will find      إِنْ طَلَبْتَ تَجِدْ

### THE AORIST.

The Aorist indicates:

#### I. Present or Future Tense.

It is limited to the Present Tense when preceded by (a) الْإِنْتِدَاءُ ل, (b) the negative مَا or إِنْ, (c) the verb لَيْسَ; as

The days are really passing      إِنَّ الْأَيَّامَ لَتَمُرُّ

The ignorant one does not know } الْجَاهِلُ لَيْسَ يَعْلَمُ  
his good from his evil      خَيْرَهُ مِنْ شَرِّهِ

It is limited to the Future Tense when preceded by

(a). The particles سَ a near future or سَوْفَ a remote future; as



The new moon will become a full  
moon

سَيَصِيرُ الْهَلَالُ بَدْرًا

Your Lord will give to you and  
you will be satisfied.

سَوْفَ يُعْطِيكَ رَبُّكَ فَتَرْضَى

(b). Particles of نَصَب; as

I long to see you

أَشْتَقُ لِأَنْ أَرَكَ

(c). Particles of Expectation أَدَاءُ التَّوَقُّع; as

Perchance I may come

لَعَلِّي آتِي

(d). لَوْ or قَدْ; as If you know

لَوْ تَعْلَمُونَ

(e). When it expresses دُعَاء a prayer or curse; as

May God help you

يُسَاعِدُكَ اللَّهُ

(f). When it expresses condition or is an answer to  
a condition; as

Whosoever studies will acquire

learning

مَنْ يَدْرُسْ يَحْفَظْ

II. Past Tense when preceded by لَمْ or لَمَّا particles  
of جَزْم; as

I did not hear

لَمْ أَسْمَعْ

The day did not break

لَمْ يَطْلُعِ النَّهَارُ

III. An idiomatic use of the aorist is seen in such  
phrases as

Zaid drinks wine زَيْدٌ يَشْرَبُ الْخَمْرَ i. e. is in the  
habit of.

The negro bears the heat اَلْزَنْجِيُّ يَحْتَمِلُ اَلْحَرَّ i. e.  
is able to.

IV. At times no special tense is indicated by the aorist; as

Zaid reads

زَيْدٌ يَقْرَأُ

V. كَانَ with the aorist expresses the imperfect tense of the Greek and Latin languages.

### THE NEGATIVE PARTICLES. أَدَوَاتُ النِّقْيِ

The negative particles are: مَا, لَا, لَات, لَنْ, إِنْ, لَمْ, لَيْسَ; of these لَيْسَ is a verb.

لَمْ, لَنْ precede the aorist only.

لَيْسَ *not*, is used only with nouns, adverbs and prepositions; as

The army is not prepared

لَيْسَ الْجَيْشُ مُسْتَعِدًّا

لَمْ (*did*) *not* لَمَّا (*did*) *not yet*, are used with the aorist and give it the signification of the past tense; they differ in that لَمْ is a simple negative, whilst لَمَّا negatives till a special time; as

The guest arose and had not eaten

قَامَ الضَّيْفُ وَلَمَّا يَأْكُلْ

لَنْ *never*, gives the aorist a future signification; as

He will never see death

لَنْ يَرَى الْمَوْتَ

إِنْ *not*, does not precede the future tense.

لَا *not*, *no*, is a general negative for all tenses.

### THE PARTICLES قَدْ, سَوْفَ, سَ

When these precede the aorist they give it a future signification.

سَوْفَ is called حَرْفُ تَسْوِيفٍ from سَوْفَ to delay.

س is called حَرْفُ تَنْفِيسٍ or حَرْفُ تَوْسِيعٍ widening.

قَدْ is called حَرْفُ التَّوَقُّعِ particle of expectation.

قَدْ precedes a verb in the indicative mood; with the preterite it expresses certainty; with the aorist doubt; as

We have believed قَدْ آمَنَّا

The liar may sometimes speak  
the truth

قَدْ يَصْدُقُ الْكَذُّوبُ

## THE LETTER نُونُ

The نُونُ is of five kinds:

I. نُونُ التَّوَكُّيدِ assurance, which is annexed for emphasis to the aorist when this has a future signification. It is either

(a). Silent, or (b) Doubled; as

(a). Worship thou God

أَسْجُدْ لِلَّهِ

(b). Keep the commandments of

thy God

احْفَظْ رِصَايَا إِلَهِكَ

II. نُونُ التَّنْوِينِ the nunation.

III. نُونُ الْإِنَاثِ the نُونُ of the feminine gender viz.

(a) the personal pron. plural (b) sign of fem. plural; as

(a). The women knew and know النِّسَاءُ عَلِمْنَ وَيَعْلَمْنَ

(b). Ye women knew

أَنْتُنَّ عَلِمْتُنَّ

IV. نُونُ الْوَقَايَةِ protection, also called الْعِمَادِ; it

separates the verb from the **يَا**, **أَلْتَكَلَّمُ** and so prevents its final vowel from being changed into **َ**.

It is also used with the particles that resemble verbs, the prepositions **مِنْ** and **عَنْ**, the **إِسْمُ الْفِعْلِ** and the particle **لَدُنْ**.

V. **نُونٌ زَائِدَةٌ** *pleonastic*.

(a). **نُونٌ** **الْإِعْرَابِ** which is found in the five verbs; as  
All men know him **كُلُّ النَّاسِ يَعْرِفُونَهُ**

(b). **نُونٌ** of dual, **رَجُلَانِ** Two men.

(c). **نُونٌ** of plural **مُؤْمِنُونَ** Believers.

### VERBS OF WONDER. **أَفْعَالُ التَّعَجُّبِ**

These are on two measures:

I. **مَا أَفْعَلْ**.

II. **أَفْعِلْ بِ**.

I. The **مَا** is an indefinite noun qualified by an implied adjective expressing greatness; as

How generous is Zaid

**مَا أَكْرَمَ زَيْدًا**

How handsome he is

**مَا أَحْسَنَهُ**

**مَا** is the **مُبْتَدَأٌ** and **أَكْرَمَ** the verb of wonder with its agent implied **مُسْتَتِرٌ** **وَجُوبًا** referring to the **مَا**; and the sentence forms the predicate of **مَا** Zaid is the object in the accusative.

II. **أَفْعِلْ بِ** (the form is imperative).

The thing wondered at (الْمُتَعَجَّبُ مِنْهُ) is put in the genitive by بِ and is the agent of the verb.

How noble he is أَكْرَمَ بِهِ      How noble is Zaid أَكْرَمَ بِزَيْدٍ

These verbs cannot be conjugated; they follow the rules of the noun of superiority.

كَانَ signifying past time is sometimes introduced after مَا without having an اِسْمٌ or خَبَرٌ; as

How wise he was      مَا كَانَ أَحْكَمَهُ

#### VERBS OF PRAISE AND BLAME.

##### أَفْعَالُ الْمَدْحِ وَالذَّمِّ

These are four in number, namely

حَبَّذا      نِعَمَ      for praise

يُمُسَّ      سَاءَ      for blame.

The agent must either have the article or be in construction with a noun which has it; or be an implied pronoun, in which case the indefinite noun is put in the accusative as تَمَيَّزُ

He is a good man is Zaid      نِعَمَ رَجُلًا زَيْدٌ

In the verb حَبَّذا, compounded of ذَا and حَبَّ, ذَا is the agent and remains the same for all numbers and genders. The agent of يُمُسَّ نِعَمَ and سَاءَ may take the dual, plural or feminine; as

She is a good woman is Hind      نِعِمَّتِ الْمَرْأَةُ هِنْدٌ

They are bad men Zaid and Amr      يُمُسُّ الرَّجُلَانِ زَيْدٌ وَعَمْرُو



Evil are the people the infidels سَاءَ الْقَوْمُ الْكَافِرُونَ

The man is good that praised one Zaid نِعَمَ الرَّجُلُ زَيْدٌ

That which is praised or blamed is mentioned immediately after the agent. It is put in the nominative case either as مُبْتَدَأٌ مُؤَخَّرٌ in which case the verb with its agent forms the predicate, or as the predicate when the subject is the implied words of praise or blame; as

Good is the man (the  
praised one) Zaid

نِعَمَ الرَّجُلُ (الْمَدْحُ) زَيْدٌ

Other words for praise or blame are on the measure  
فَعْلٌ.

A noble man is Zaid

شَرَفَ الرَّجُلُ زَيْدٌ

الْأَشْتَعَالُ Diversion from the original object.

In the sentence زَيْدٌ ضَرَبْتُهُ Zaid is in reality the object of ضَرَبَ but the verb governs the pronoun هـ in the accusative as object and Zaid as it stands at the head of the sentence is put in the nominative as مُبْتَدَأٌ. Zaid may, however, be put in the accusative as the objective complement, by assuming the ellipse of another verb.

If the word Zaid is preceded by a particle peculiar to verbs, as إِنَّ, it is put in the accusative but if by those peculiar to nouns it is put in the nominative; as

If you honour Zaid he will  
honour you

إِنَّ زَيْدًا أَكْرَمْتَهُ يُكْرِمُكَ

I went out and behold they  
were beating Zaid

خَرَجْتُ وَإِذَا زَيْدٌ يَضْرِبُهُ

This also occurs in the case of the agent; as

If Zaid rises I will rise

إِنْ زَيْدٌ قَامَ أَقُمُ

Zaid is the agent to an omitted verb.

### DERIVED NOUNS WHICH GOVERN AS VERBS.

The nouns of agent, excess and object govern as verbs:

(a). When they have the article prefixed.

(b). When they are preceded by a particle of interrogation or negation; as

Is Zaid beating Amr

أَفَضَارِبُ زَيْدٍ عَمْرًا

(c). When they have the present or future signification and are 1) *خَبَر* or 2) *نَعَتْ* or 3) *حَال*; as

1). Zaid is riding a horse

زَيْدٌ رَاكِبٌ فَرَسًا

2) I saw a man riding a horse

رَأَيْتُ رَجُلًا رَاكِبًا فَرَسًا

3) Zaid came riding a horse

جَاءَ زَيْدٌ رَاكِبًا فَرَسًا

The noun of object takes the *فَاعِلُ الْفِعْلِ* substitute for the agent; as

Is your finger wounded

هَلْ مَجْرُوحٌ أَصْبُعُكَ

The noun of agent of a transitive verb takes both an object and an agent, whilst that of an intransitive verb takes an agent only; as

Zaid is not doing good

مَا صَانِعٌ زَيْدٌ خَيْرًا

The object of the noun of agent is in the accusative; as

I was pleased by Zaid's riding  
of the horse

أَعْجَبَنِي رُكُوبُ زَيْدٍ الْفَرَسَ

The noun of attribute may govern as a verb; as

Zaid is fair of face

زَيْدٌ حَسَنٌ وَجْهَهُ

The noun of superiority also governs as a verb but its agent is expressed only when the noun itself is convertible into a verb; as

There is no man to whom study is more beneficial than Zaid

لَا رَجُلٌ أَنْفَعُ لَهُ الدَّرْسُ مِنْ زَيْدٍ

جَمَدٌ from جَمَدٌ to *harden*.

The verb is either مُتَصَرِّفٌ conjugated throughout as to tenses, voices, and derivative nouns, or جَامِدٌ indeclinable. The verb is indeclinable when it resembles the particle in meaning, as لَيْسَ which has the meaning of لَا *not*, and عَسَى *perhaps*, which has the meaning of لَعَلَّ.

Some verbs are only indeclinable when they have special meanings as the verbs of wonder, in which case they must immediately precede the noun they govern.

## APPENDIX.

TO FOLLOW LIST OF TRILITERAL VERBS.







## DERIVED FORMS OF VERBS WITH INITIAL HEMZEH.

| Noun of Object.<br>Noun of Action<br>with .<br>Noun of Place<br>and Time. | Noun<br>of<br>Agent. | Noun of<br>Unity and Species. | Noun of Action.     | Passive.    |               | Imperative. | Active.     |             |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------|-------------|---------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
|                                                                           |                      |                               |                     | Aorist.     | Preterite.    |             | Aorist.     | Preterite.  |
| مَوَكِّلٌ                                                                 | مَوَكِّلٌ            | قَائِلَةٌ                     | قَائِلٌ قَائِلَةٌ   | يُوكِّلُ    | أَكَلٌ        | اَكْلُ      | يُوكِّلُ    | أَكَلَ      |
| مَوَاكِلُ                                                                 | مَوَاكِلُ            | مَوَاكِلَةٌ (وَاحِدَةٌ)       | مَوَاكِلَةٌ اِكَالٌ | يُوكِّلُ    | أَوَكَّلَ     | اَكْلُ      | يُوكِّلُ    | أَكَلَ      |
| مَوَكِّلٌ                                                                 | مَوَكِّلٌ            | اِئْتِمَالٌ                   | اِئْتِمَالٌ         | يُوكِّلُ    | أَوَكَّلَ     | اَكْلُ      | يُوكِّلُ    | أَكَلَ      |
| مَتَاكِلٌ                                                                 | مَتَاكِلٌ            | قَائِلَةٌ                     | قَائِلٌ قَائِلَةٌ   | يَتَاكَلُ   | تَوَكَّلَ     | تَاكَلُ     | يَتَاكَلُ   | تَاكَلَ     |
| مَتَاكِلٌ                                                                 | مَتَاكِلٌ            | قَائِلَةٌ                     | قَائِلٌ قَائِلَةٌ   | يَتَاكَلُ   | تَوَكَّلَ     | تَاكَلُ     | يَتَاكَلُ   | تَاكَلَ     |
| مَنَاكِلٌ                                                                 | مَنَاكِلٌ            | اِئْتِمَالَةٌ                 | اِئْتِمَالٌ         | يُنَاكِلُ   | اَنُوَكِّلَ   | اَنَاكِلُ   | يُنَاكِلُ   | اَنَاكَلَ   |
| مَوْتَكِلٌ                                                                | مَوْتَكِلٌ           | اِئْتِمَالَةٌ                 | اِئْتِمَالٌ         | يُوقَّتِلُ  | اَوْتَكَّلَ   | اَوْتَكَّلُ | يُوقَّتِلُ  | اَوْتَكَّلَ |
| مَسْتَاكِلٌ                                                               | مَسْتَاكِلٌ          | اِسْتِئْكَالَةٌ               | اِسْتِئْكَالٌ       | يَسْتَاكِلُ | اَسْتَوَكَّلَ | اَسْتَاكِلُ | يَسْتَاكِلُ | اَسْتَاكَلَ |

## DERIVED FORMS OF VERBS WITH MEDIAL HEMZEH.

| Noun of Object.<br>Noun of Action<br>with<br>Noun of Place<br>and Time. | Noun<br>of<br>Agent. | Noun of<br>Unity and Species. | Noun of Action. | Passive. |               | Imperative.   | Active        |             |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------|----------|---------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|
|                                                                         |                      |                               |                 | Aorist.  | Preterite.    |               | Aorist.       | Preterite.  |
| مَسَّالٌ                                                                | مُسَيِّلٌ            | مُسَيِّلَةٌ                   | مُسَيِّلٌ       | يُسَالُ  | سَيَّلَ       | سَيِّلْ       | يُسَيِّلُ     | سَالَ       |
| مَسَّالٌ                                                                | مُسَائِلٌ            | مُسَائِلَةٌ (واحدة)           | مُسَائِلٌ       | يُسَالُ  | سَوَّلَ       | سَاوِلْ       | يُسَاوِلُ     | سَاءَلَ     |
| مَسَّالٌ                                                                | مُسَيِّلٌ            | مُسَائِلَةٌ                   | مُسَالٌ         | يُسَالُ  | أَسَيَّلَ     | أَسَيِّلْ     | يُسَيِّلُ     | أَسَالَ     |
| مَسَّالٌ                                                                | مُسَيِّلٌ            | مُسَائِلَةٌ                   | مُسَالٌ         | يُسَالُ  | تَسَيَّلَ     | تَسَالِ       | يَتَسَالُ     | تَسَالَ     |
| مَسَّالٌ                                                                | مُسَائِلٌ            | مُسَائِلَةٌ                   | مُسَالٌ         | يُسَالُ  | تَسَوَّلَ     | تَسَاوِلْ     | يَتَسَاوِلُ   | تَسَاءَلَ   |
| مَسَّالٌ                                                                | مُسَيِّلٌ            | مُسَائِلَةٌ                   | مُسَالٌ         | يُسَالُ  | أَفَسَيَّلَ   | أَفَسَيِّلْ   | يُفَسَيِّلُ   | أَفَسَالَ   |
| مَسَّالٌ                                                                | مُسَيِّلٌ            | مُسَائِلَةٌ                   | مُسَالٌ         | يُسَالُ  | أَسَمَّالَ    | أَسَمَّالِ    | يُسَمَّالُ    | أَسَمَّالَ  |
| مَسَّالٌ                                                                | مُسَيِّلٌ            | مُسَائِلَةٌ                   | مُسَالٌ         | يُسَالُ  | أَسْتَسَيَّلَ | أَسْتَسَيِّلْ | يُسْتَسَيِّلُ | أَسْتَسَالَ |



# DERIVED FORMS OF VERBS WITH INITIAL ,

| Noun of Object.<br>Noun of Action<br>with<br>Noun of Place<br>and Time. | Noun<br>of<br>Agent. | Noun of<br>Unity and Species. | Noun of Action.       | Passive.     |              | Imperative.  | Active.       |              |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|--------------|
|                                                                         |                      |                               |                       | Aorist.      | Preterite.   |              | Aorist.       | Preterite.   |
| مُوعِدٌ                                                                 | مُوعِدٌ              | تَوْعِيدَةٌ                   | تَوْعِيدٌ تَوْعِيدَةٌ | يُوعِدُ      | وَعِدَ       | وَعِدْ       | يُوعِدُ       | وَعَدَ       |
| مُوعِدٌ                                                                 | مُوعِدٌ              | مُوعِدَةٌ (وَاحِدَةٌ)         | مُوعِدَةٌ وَعَادٌ     | يُوعِدُ      | وَعِدَ       | وَعِدْ       | يُوعِدُ       | وَعَدَ       |
| مُوعِدٌ                                                                 | مُوعِدٌ              | إِعْعَادَةٌ                   | إِعْعَادٌ             | يُوعِدُ      | أَوْعَدَ     | أَوْعِدْ     | يُوعِدُ       | أَوْعَدَ     |
| مُتَوَعِدٌ                                                              | مُتَوَعِدٌ           | تَوْعِيدَةٌ                   | تَوْعِدٌ              | يَتَوَعَّدُ  | تَوَعَّدَ    | تَوَعَّدْ    | يَتَوَعَّدُ   | تَوَعَّدَ    |
| مُتَوَاعِدٌ                                                             | مُتَوَاعِدٌ          | تَوَاعِيدَةٌ                  | تَوَاعِدٌ             | يَتَوَاعَدُ  | تَوَوَعَّدَ  | تَوَوَاعَدْ  | يَتَوَوَاعَدُ | تَوَوَاعَدَ  |
| مُنُوعِدٌ                                                               | مُنُوعِدٌ            | أَنْوَعَادَةٌ                 | أَنْوَعَادٌ           | يَنْوَعِدُ   | أَنْوَعَدَ   | أَنْوَعِدْ   | يَنْوَعِدُ    | أَنْوَعَدَ   |
| مُنْعَدٌ                                                                | مُنْعَدٌ             | أَنْعَادَةٌ                   | أَنْعَادٌ             | يَنْعَدُ     | أَنْعَدَ     | أَنْعِدْ     | يَنْعَدُ      | أَنْعَدَ     |
| مُسْتَوَعِدٌ                                                            | مُسْتَوَعِدٌ         | أَسْتِيعَادَةٌ                | أَسْتِيعَادٌ          | يَسْتَوَعِدُ | أَسْتَوَعَدَ | أَسْتَوَعِدْ | يَسْتَوَعِدُ  | أَسْتَوَعَدَ |

## DERIVED FORMS OF THE HOLLOW VERB.

| Noun of Object.<br>Noun of Action<br>with <b>م.</b><br>Noun of Place<br>and Time. | Noun<br>of<br>Agent. | Noun of<br>Unity and Species. | Noun of Action.     | Passive.    |            | Imperative. | Active.     |            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------|-------------|------------|-------------|-------------|------------|
|                                                                                   |                      |                               |                     | Aorist.     | Preterite. |             | Aorist.     | Preterite. |
| مُكْوَفٌ                                                                          | مُكْوَفٌ             | تَكْوِيفَةٌ                   | تَكْوِيفٌ           | يُكْوَفُ    | كُوفَ      | خَوْفٌ      | يُكْوَفُ    | خَوْفٌ     |
| مُخَاوَفٌ                                                                         | مُخَاوَفٌ            | مُخَاوَفَةٌ (وَاحِدَةٌ)       | مُخَاوَفَةٌ خَوَافٌ | يُخَاوَفُ   | خَوْفٌ     | خَاوَفٌ     | يُخَاوَفُ   | خَاوَفٌ    |
| مُخِيفٌ                                                                           | مُخِيفٌ              | اخْفَاةٌ (وَاحِدَةٌ)          | اخْفَاةٌ            | يُخِيفُ     | اُخِيفَ    | اِخْفُ      | يُخِيفُ     | اِخْفُ     |
| مُتَخَوِّفٌ                                                                       | مُتَخَوِّفٌ          | تَخْوِيفَةٌ                   | تَخْوِيفٌ           | يَتَخَوِّفُ | تَخَوَّفَ  | تَخَوَّفْ   | يَتَخَوِّفُ | تَخَوَّفَ  |
| مُتَخَاوِفٌ                                                                       | مُتَخَاوِفٌ          | تَخَاوِيفَةٌ                  | تَخَاوِيفٌ          | يَتَخَاوِفُ | تَخَاوَفَ  | تَخَاوَفْ   | يَتَخَاوِفُ | تَخَاوَفَ  |
| مُنْخَافٌ                                                                         | مُنْخَافٌ            | اِنْخِيفَاةٌ                  | اِنْخِيفَاةٌ        | يُنْخَافُ   | اِنْخِيفَ  | اِنْخِفْ    | يُنْخَافُ   | اِنْخِيفْ  |
| مُخْتَفَاةٌ                                                                       | مُخْتَفَاةٌ          | اِخْتِيفَاةٌ                  | اِخْتِيفَاةٌ        | يُخْتَفَاةٌ | اِخْتِيفَ  | اِخْتِفْ    | يُخْتَفَاةٌ | اِخْتِيفْ  |
| مُسْتَخِفٌ                                                                        | مُسْتَخِفٌ           | اِسْتِخْفَاةٌ وَاحِدَةٌ       | اِسْتِخْفَاةٌ       | يُسْتَخَفُ  | اِسْتِخْفِ | اِسْتَخِفْ  | يُسْتَخِفُ  | اِسْتَخِفْ |



DERIVED FORMS OF VERBS BEGINNING WITH ي.

| Noun of Object<br>Noun of Action<br>with<br>Noun of Place<br>and Time. | Noun<br>of<br>Agent. | Noun of<br>Unity and Species. | Noun of Action. | Passive.     |              | Imperative.  | Active.      |              |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
|                                                                        |                      |                               |                 | Aorist.      | Preterite.   |              | Aorist.      | Preterite.   |
| ميسِر                                                                  | ميسِر                | مَيْسِرَةٌ                    | مَيْسِرَةٌ      | يَمْسِرُ     | يَمْسَرُ     | يَمْسِرْ     | يَمْسِرُ     | يَمْسَرَ     |
| مياسِر                                                                 | مياسِر               | مَيْاسِرَةٌ (وَاحِدَةٌ)       | مَيْاسِرَةٌ     | يَمْسِرُ     | يَمْسَرُ     | يَمْسِرْ     | يَمْسِرُ     | يَمْسَرَ     |
| موسِر                                                                  | موسِر                | مُوسِرَةٌ                     | مُوسِرَةٌ       | يُوسِرُ      | يُوسِرُ      | يُوسِرْ      | يُوسِرُ      | يُوسِرْ      |
| متيسِر                                                                 | متيسِر               | مَتَيْسِرَةٌ                  | مَتَيْسِرَةٌ    | يَتَمْسِرُ   | يَتَمْسِرُ   | يَتَمْسِرْ   | يَتَمْسِرُ   | يَتَمْسِرْ   |
| متياسِر                                                                | متياسِر              | مَتِيَّاسِرَةٌ                | مَتِيَّاسِرَةٌ  | يَتَمْسِرُ   | يَتَمْسِرُ   | يَتَمْسِرْ   | يَتَمْسِرُ   | يَتَمْسِرْ   |
| منيسِر                                                                 | منيسِر               | مُنَيْسِرَةٌ                  | مُنَيْسِرَةٌ    | يُنَمْسِرُ   | يُنَمْسِرُ   | يُنَمْسِرْ   | يُنَمْسِرُ   | يُنَمْسِرْ   |
| متنسر                                                                  | متنسر                | مَتَنَسِرَةٌ                  | مَتَنَسِرَةٌ    | يَتَمْسِرُ   | يَتَمْسِرُ   | يَتَمْسِرْ   | يَتَمْسِرُ   | يَتَمْسِرْ   |
| مستيسِر                                                                | مستيسِر              | مُسْتَيْسِرَةٌ                | مُسْتَيْسِرَةٌ  | يُسْتَمْسِرُ | يُسْتَمْسِرُ | يُسْتَمْسِرْ | يُسْتَمْسِرُ | يُسْتَمْسِرْ |

DERIVED FORMS OF VERBS WITH FINAL ي

| Noun of Object.<br>Noun of Action<br>with م.<br>Noun of Place<br>and Time. | Noun<br>of<br>Agent. | Noun of<br>Unity and Species. | Noun of Action.  | Passive.    |             | Imperative. | Active.     |            |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------------|------------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|------------|
|                                                                            |                      |                               |                  | Aorist.     | Preterite.  |             | Aorist.     | Preterite. |
| مَغْرِي                                                                    | (ر)                  | تَغْرِية (واحدة)              | تَغْرِية         | يَغْرِي     | غَرِيَ      | غَرَّ       | يَغْرِی     | غَرَّ      |
| مُغَارِي                                                                   | »                    | مُغَارَاة (واحدة)             | مُغَارَاة غَرَاه | يُغَارِي    | غُورِي      | غَارَ       | يُغَارِي    | غَارَ      |
| مُغْرِي                                                                    | »                    | اَغْرَاءة                     | اَغْرَاء         | يُغْرِي     | اَغْرِي     | اَغْرَ      | يُغْرِي     | اَغْرَ     |
| مُتَغْرِي                                                                  | »                    | تَغْرِية                      | تَغْرَ           | يَتَغْرِي   | تَغْرِي     | تَغَرَّ     | يَتَغْرِي   | تَغَرَّ    |
| مُتَغَارِي                                                                 | »                    | تَغَارَاة                     | تَغَارَ          | يَتَغَارِي  | تَغُورِي    | تَغَارَ     | يَتَغَارِي  | تَغَارَ    |
| مُنْغْرِي                                                                  | »                    | اَنْغْرَاءة                   | اَنْغْرَاء       | يُنْغْرِي   | اَنْغْرِي   | اَنْغَرَ    | يُنْغْرِي   | اَنْغَرَ   |
| مُنْغَارِي                                                                 | »                    | اَغْتَرَاءة                   | اَغْتَرَاء       | يُنْغَارِي  | اَغْتَرِي   | اَغْتَرَ    | يُنْغَارِي  | اَغْتَرَ   |
| مُسْتَغْرِي                                                                | »                    | اِسْتِغْرَاءة                 | اِسْتِغْرَاء     | يُسْتَغْرِي | اِسْتِغْرِي | اِسْتِغَرَ  | يُسْتِغْرِي | اِسْتِغَرَ |

ي. DERIVED FORMS OF VERBS WITH FINAL

| Noun of Object.<br>Noun of Action<br>with<br>ن. م. | Noun<br>of<br>Agent. | Noun of<br>Unity and Species. | Noun of Action.   | Passive.      |              | Imperative.  | Active.       |              |
|----------------------------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------|---------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|--------------|
|                                                    |                      |                               |                   | Aorist.       | Preterite.   |              | Aorist.       | Preterite.   |
| مُكْشِي                                            | (ش)                  | تَكْشِيَّة (وَاحِدَة)         | تَكْشِيَّة        | يُكْشِي       | كُشِيَ       | كُشْ         | يُكْشِي       | كُشِيَ       |
| مُكْأَشِي                                          | »                    | مُكْأَشَاة (وَاحِدَة)         | مُكْأَشَاة خِشَاء | يُكْأَشِي     | كُؤْشِيَ     | كُأَشْ       | يُكْأَشِي     | كُؤْشِيَ     |
| مُكْشِي                                            | »                    | مُكْشِيَّة                    | أُكْشَاء          | يُكْشِي       | كُشِيَ       | أُكْشِ       | يُكْشِي       | أُكْشِيَ     |
| مُتَكْأَشِي                                        | »                    | تَكْأَشِيَّة                  | تَكْأَشِ          | يُتَكْأَشِي   | كُتْأُشِيَ   | تَكْأَشْ     | يُتَكْأَشِي   | كُتْأُشِيَ   |
| مُتَكْأَشِي                                        | »                    | تَكْأَشِيَّة                  | تَكْأَشِ          | يُتَكْأَشِي   | كُتْأُشِيَ   | تَكْأَشْ     | يُتَكْأَشِي   | كُتْأُشِيَ   |
| مُتَكْأَشِي                                        | »                    | أُكْأَشَاءَة                  | أُكْأَشَاء        | يُكْأَشِي     | كُؤْأُشِيَ   | أُكْأَشِ     | يُكْأَشِي     | كُؤْأُشِيَ   |
| مُتَكْأَشِي                                        | »                    | أُكْأَشَاءَة                  | أُكْأَشَاء        | يُكْأَشِي     | كُؤْأُشِيَ   | أُكْأَشِ     | يُكْأَشِي     | كُؤْأُشِيَ   |
| مُتَكْأَشِي                                        | »                    | مُسْتَكْأَشَاءَة              | أُسْتَكْأَشَاء    | يُسْتَكْأَشِي | كُسْتُأُشِيَ | أُسْتَكْأَشِ | يُسْتَكْأَشِي | كُسْتُأُشِيَ |

# Initial

## DERIVED FORMS OF VERBS WITH MEDIAL, AND FINAL ي

| Noun of Object.<br>Noun of Action<br>with م.<br>Noun of Place<br>and Time. | Noun<br>of<br>Agent. | Noun of<br>Unity and Species. | Noun of Action.  | Passive. |            | Imperative. | Active. |            |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------------|------------------|----------|------------|-------------|---------|------------|
|                                                                            |                      |                               |                  | Aorist.  | Preterite. |             | Aorist. | Preterite. |
| مَوْتِي                                                                    | مَوْتِي (بِ)         | تَوَفِيَّة (وَاحِدَة)         | تَوَفِيَّة       | يُوتِي   | وَتِي      | وَفِّ       | يُوتِي  | وَفِّ      |
| مَوَاتِي                                                                   | مَوَاتِي »           | مَوَاتَاة (وَاحِدَة)          | مَوَاتَاة وَفَاء | يُوتِي   | وَتِي      | وَفِّ       | يُوتِي  | وَفِّ      |
| مَوْتِي                                                                    | مَوْتِي »            | أَيَقَاءَة                    | أَيَقَاء         | يُوتِي   | وَتِي      | وَفِّ       | يُوتِي  | وَفِّ      |
| مَتَوْتِي                                                                  | مَتَوْتِي »          | تَوَفِيَّة                    | تَوَفِّ          | يُوتِي   | وَتِي      | وَفِّ       | يُوتِي  | وَفِّ      |
| مَتَوَاتِي                                                                 | مَتَوَاتِي »         | تَوَاتِيَّة                   | تَوَاتٍ          | يُوتِي   | وَتِي      | وَفِّ       | يُوتِي  | وَفِّ      |
| مَنَوْتِي                                                                  | مَنَوْتِي »          | أَنَوَاتَاة                   | أَنَوَاتٍ        | يُوتِي   | وَتِي      | وَفِّ       | يُوتِي  | وَفِّ      |
| مَنَوَاتِي                                                                 | مَنَوَاتِي »         | أَنَوَاتَاة                   | أَنَوَاتٍ        | يُوتِي   | وَتِي      | وَفِّ       | يُوتِي  | وَفِّ      |
| مَسْتَوْتِي                                                                | مَسْتَوْتِي »        | أَسْتَوَاتَاة                 | أَسْتَوَاتٍ      | يُوتِي   | وَتِي      | وَفِّ       | يُوتِي  | وَفِّ      |

Paraphrase  
 enco  
 296  
 of  
 exact

ي. DERIVED FORMS OF VERBS WITH MEDIAL, AND FINAL

| Noun of Object.<br>Noun of Action<br>with<br>ن. | Noun<br>of<br>Agent. | Noun of<br>Unity and Species. | Noun of Action.    | Passive.     |               | Imperative.  | Active.      |               |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------|--------------|---------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|
|                                                 |                      |                               |                    | Aorist.      | Preterite.    |              | Aorist.      | Preterite.    |
| مَطْوِيٌّ                                       | مَطْوِيٌّ (و)        | مَطْوِيَّةٌ (وَاحِدَةٌ)       | تَطْوِيَّةٌ        | يُطَوَّى     | طَوَّى        | طَوِّ        | يُطَوَّى     | طَوَّى        |
| مَطَاوِيٌّ                                      | »                    | مَطَاوِيَّةٌ (وَاحِدَةٌ)      | مَطَاوَاةٌ طَرَاءٌ | يُطَاوَى     | طَاوَى        | طَاوِ        | يُطَاوِي     | طَاوَى        |
| مَطْوِيٌّ                                       | »                    | مَطْوِيَّةٌ                   | اِطْرَاءٌ          | يُطَوَّى     | اِطْرَوَى     | اِطْرَوِ     | يُطَوِّي     | اِطْرَوَى     |
| مَتَطَوَّى                                      | »                    | مَتَطَوِّيَّةٌ                | تَطْوِيَّةٌ        | تُطَوَّى     | تَطَوَّى      | تَطَوِّ      | يَتَطَوَّى   | تَطَوَّى      |
| مَتَطَاوِيٌّ                                    | »                    | مَتَطَاوِيَّةٌ                | تَطَاوِيَّةٌ       | يَتَطَاوَى   | تَطَاوَى      | تَطَاوِ      | يَتَطَاوِي   | تَطَاوَى      |
| مُنَطَوَّى                                      | »                    | مُنَطَوِّيَّةٌ                | اِنْطَرَاءٌ        | يُنَطَوَّى   | اِنْطَرَوَى   | اِنْطَرَوِ   | يُنَطَوِّي   | اِنْطَرَوَى   |
| مَطْوِيٌّ                                       | »                    | مَطْوِيَّةٌ                   | اِطْرَاءٌ          | يُطَوَّى     | اِطْرَوَى     | اِطْرَوِ     | يُطَوِّي     | اِطْرَوَى     |
| مُسْتَطَوَّى                                    | »                    | مُسْتَطَوِّيَّةٌ              | اِسْتِطْرَاءٌ      | يُسْتَطَوَّى | اِسْتِطْرَوَى | اِسْتِطْرَوِ | يُسْتَطَوِّي | اِسْتِطْرَوَى |

## DERIVED VERBS.

## I. فَعَّلَ

|                      |          |                    |         |
|----------------------|----------|--------------------|---------|
| To make distant      | بَعَّدَ  | To found           | أَسَّسَ |
| „ rebuke             | بَكَتَ   | „ compose, compile | أَفَّ   |
| „ inform             | بَلَّغَ  | „ hope             | أَمَدَ  |
| „ wet                | بَلَّلَ  | „ entrust          | أَمَّنَ |
| „ give chloroform    | بَنَجَ   | „ strengthen       | أَيَّدَ |
| „ blow a trumpet     | بَوَّقَ  | „ honour           | بَجَّلَ |
| „ make plain, clear  | بَيَّنَ  | „ burn incense     | بَخَّرَ |
| „ fulfil             | بَسَّمَ  | „ scatter          | بَدَدَ  |
| „ value              | بَثَمَنَ | „ change           | بَدَّلَ |
| „ blaspheme          | جَدَّفَ  | „ pitch a tent     | خَبَّمَ |
| „ row                | جَدَّفَ  | „ manage well      | دَبَّرَ |
| „ try, tempt         | جَرَّبَ  | „ train            | دَرَّبَ |
| „ strip              | جَرَّدَ  | „ destroy utterly  | دَمَّرَ |
| „ divide             | جَزَأَ   | „ winnow           | دَرَّى  |
| „ levy troops        | جَنَّدَ  | „ gild             | ذَهَبَ  |
| „ compose an elegy   | أَبَّنَ  | „ appoint a chief  | رَأَسَ  |
| „ impress, influence | أَثَّرَ  | „ foster           | رَبَّى  |
| „ grant a delay      | أَجَّلَ  | „ arrange          | رَتَّبَ |
| „ retard             | أَخَّرَ  | „ cause to return  | رَجَعَ  |
| „ call to prayer     | أَذَّنَ  | „ frighten         | رَهَّبَ |
| „ date               | أَرَّخَ  | „ play upon a reed | زَمَرَ  |



|                       |         |                        |         |
|-----------------------|---------|------------------------|---------|
| To adorn              | زَيَّنَ | To give choice         | خَيَّرَ |
| „ praise              | سَبَّحَ | „ dye red              | ضَرَجَ  |
| „ register            | سَجَّلَ | „ embroider            | طَرَزَ  |
| „ heat                | سَخَّنَ | „ divorce              | طَلَّقَ |
| „ arm                 | سَلَّحَ | „ cleanse              | طَهَّرَ |
| „ surrender           | سَلَّمَ | „ bless                | طَوَّبَ |
| „ nail                | سَمَرَ  | „ overshadow           | ظَلَّلَ |
| „ permit              | جَوَّزَ | „ express, to cause to |         |
| „ gather troops       | جَبَّشَ | pass over              | عَبَّرَ |
| „ make lovable        | حَبَّبَ | „ hasten               | عَجَّلَ |
| „ adorn (speech)      | حَبَّرَ | „ count                | عَدَدَ  |
| „ sharpen, set limits | حَدَّدَ | „ torment              | عَذَّبَ |
| „ look intently       | حَدَّقَ | „ strip                | عَرَّى  |
| „ warn                | حَذَّرَ | „ comfort              | عَزَّى  |
| „ get ready, bring    | حَضَّرَ | „ perfume              | عَطَّرَ |
| „ burden              | حَمَلَ  | „ magnify              | عَظَّمَ |
| „ change              | حَوَّلَ | „ hang up              | عَلَّقَ |
| „ perplex             | حَيَّرَ | „ teach                | عَلَّمَ |
| „ salute              | حَيَّى  | „ prolong life, build  | عَمَّرَ |
| „ inform              | خَبَّرَ | „ make general         | عَمَّمَ |
| „ devastate           | خَرَّبَ | „ accustom             | عَوَّدَ |
| „ save, deliver       | خَلَّصَ | „ name                 | سَمَّى  |
| „ leaven              | خَمَّرَ | „ facilitate           | سَهَّلَ |
| „ frighten            | خَوَّفَ | „ fence a field        | سَيَّجَ |
| „ disappoint          | خَيَّبَ | „ winter               | شَتَّى  |

|                       |         |                         |         |
|-----------------------|---------|-------------------------|---------|
| To strengthen         | شَدَّدَ | To accede to            | لَبَّى  |
| „ exhort to patience  | صَبَّرَ | „ abridge, extract      | لَخَّصَ |
| „ correct             | صَحَّحَ | „ to glorify            | مَجَّدَ |
| „ believe             | صَدَّقَ | „ refine by fire, try   | مَكَّصَ |
| „ proclaim            | صَرَّحَ | „ nurse                 | مَرَّضَ |
| „ plate               | صَفَّحَ | „ rend                  | مَرَّقَ |
| „ applaud             | صَفَّقَ | „ facilitate            | مَهَّدَ |
| „ clarify             | صَفَّى  | „ rouse, draw attention | نَبَّهَ |
| „ pray                | صَلَّى  | to                      | عَوَّلَ |
| „ determine upon      | صَمَّمَ | „ rely upon             | عَوَّلَ |
| „ compose, assort     | صَنَّفَ | „ keep a festival       | عَيَّدَ |
| „ make a noise        | صَوَّتَ | „ sing (bird)           | غَرَدَ  |
| „ paint               | صَوَّرَ | „ wash                  | غَسَلَ  |
| „ summer              | صَيَّفَ | „ cover                 | غَشَّى  |
| „ slaughter a victim  | ضَحَّى  | „ sing                  | غَنَّى  |
| „ fetter, to register | قَيَّدَ | „ change                | غَيَّرَ |
| „ accuse of lying     | كَذَّبَ | „ search                | فَتَّشَ |
| „ consecrate          | كَرَّسَ | „ distribute            | فَرَّقَ |
| „ shatter             | كَسَّرَ | „ explain               | فَسَّرَ |
| „ atone               | كَفَّرَ | „ prefer                | فَضَّلَ |
| „ enshroud            | كَفَّنَ | „ think upon            | فَكَّرَ |
| „ crown               | كَوَّنَ | „ kiss                  | قَبَّلَ |
| „ speak               | كَلَّمَ | „ sanctify              | قَدَّسَ |
| „ complete            | كَمَّلَ | „ offer                 | قَدَّمَ |
| „ create              | كَوَّنَ | „ cut into pieces       | قَطَّعَ |

|                                 |         |                     |         |
|---------------------------------|---------|---------------------|---------|
| To straighten                   | قَوَّمَ | To make one a ruler | رَلَّى  |
| „ strengthen                    | قَوَّى  | „ deliver           | نَجَّى  |
| „ prepare                       | هَيَّأَ | „ bring down        | نَزَّلَ |
| „ reprove                       | وَبَّخَ | „ scrutinize        | نَقَّبَ |
| „ distribute                    | وَزَّعَ | „ revise            | نَقَّحَ |
| „ explain                       | وَضَّحَ | „ cleanse           | نَقَّى  |
| „ make fit, favourable<br>(God) | وَفَّقَ | „ embellish a book  | نَمَّقَ |
| „ venerate                      | وَقَّرَ | „ threaten          | هَدَّدَ |
| „ seal, let fall                | وَقَّعَ | „ educate           | هَدَّبَ |
| „ appoint an agent              | وَكَّلَ | „ praise God        | هَلَّلَ |
|                                 |         | „ congratulate      | هَنَّا  |

## II. فَاعِلٌ

|                                |         |                               |         |
|--------------------------------|---------|-------------------------------|---------|
| To struggle                    | جَاهَدَ | To disagree with              | خَالَفَ |
| „ be contiguous to             | جَاوَرَ | „ ward off                    | دَافَعَ |
| „ exceed limits                | جَاوَزَ | „ persevere                   | دَاوَمَ |
| „ converse with                | حَادَثَ | „ reproach, blame             | أَخَذَ  |
| „ give careful attention<br>to | حَافَظَ | „ be sociable with<br>one     | آذَنَ   |
| „ summon                       | حَاكَمَ | „ hasten                      | بَادَرَ |
| „ try to do                    | حَاوَلَ | „ go forth to battle,<br>duel | بَارَزَ |
| „ try to deceive               | خَادَعَ | „ bless                       | بَارَكَ |
| „ contend with                 | خَاصَمَ | „ act in person               | بَاشَرَ |
| „ address                      | خَاطَبَ | „ exaggerate                  | بَالَغَ |
| „ risk                         | خَاطَرَ |                               |         |

|                        |         |                       |         |
|------------------------|---------|-----------------------|---------|
| To pay attention to    | بَالَى  | To share with         | قَاسَمَ |
| „ swear fealty         | بَايَعَ | „ endure              | قَاسَى  |
| „ dispute              | جَادَلَ | „ punish              | قَاصَّ  |
| „ recompense           | جَارَى  | „ oppose              | قَاوَمَ |
| „ sit in company       |         | „ dissemble           | رَأَى   |
| with                   | جَالَسَ | „ review              | رَاجَعَ |
| „ show courtesy        | جَامَلَ | „ accompany           | رَافَقَ |
| „ be similar           | جَانَسَ | „ guard               | رَاقَبَ |
| „ double               | ضَاعَفَ | „ try to surpass      | سَابَقَ |
| „ oppress              | ضَاقَقَ | „ help                | سَاعَدَ |
| „ pursue, chase        | طَارَدَ | „ journey             | سَافَرَ |
| „ comply with          | طَاوَعَ | „ live with           | سَاكَنَ |
| „ censure              | عَاتَبَ | „ live peaceably with | سَالَمَ |
| „ treat with ani-      |         | „ equalize            | سَاوَى  |
| mosity                 | عَادَى  | „ keep peace with     | سَايَرَ |
| „ punish               | عَاقَبَ | „ resemble            | شَابَهَ |
| „ treat disease, ende- |         | „ drink with          | شَارَبَ |
| avour                  | عَالَجَ | „ share „             | شَارَكَ |
| „ deal with            | عَامَلَ | „ consult             | شَاوَرَ |
| „ resist               | عَانَدَ | „ accompany           | صَاحَبَ |
| „ covenant             | عَاهَدَ | „ find by chance      | صَادَفَ |
| „ help                 | عَاوَنَ | „ wrestle             | صَارَعَ |
| „ abandon              | غَادَرَ | „ reconcile           | صَالَحَ |
| „ compare              | قَابَلَ | „ contradict          | نَاقَضَ |
| „ be near to           | قَارَبَ | „ hand                | نَاوَلَ |

|                            |          |                        |           |
|----------------------------|----------|------------------------|-----------|
| To emigrate                | هَاجَرَ  | To vie for superiority | كَابَرَ   |
| „ assault                  | وَاثَبَ  | „ write                | كَاتَبَ   |
| „ conceal                  | وَارَى   | „ recompense           | كَافَأَ   |
| „ poise                    | وَأَزَنَ | „ observe              | لَا حَظَّ |
| „ correspond               | وَارَى   | „ deal kindly          | لَا طَفَّ |
| „ persist in               | وَاصَدَ  | „ sport with           | لَاعَبَ   |
| „ persevere                | وَاطَبَ  | „ meet                 | لَاقَى    |
| „ make an appoint-<br>ment | وَاعَدَ  | „ help                 | مَالَأَ   |
| „ agree with               | وَافَقَ  | „ seek to hinder       | مَانَعَ   |
| „ arrive                   | وَافَى   | „ call                 | نَادَى    |
| „ suffer                   | كَابَدَ  | „ be hypocritical      | نَافَقَ   |

### III. أُنْعِلَ

|                              |          |              |          |
|------------------------------|----------|--------------|----------|
| To become rich               | أَثْرَى  | To count     | أَحْصَى  |
| „ bear fruit                 | أَثْمَرَ | „ bring      | أَحْضَرَ |
| „ be liberal with            | أَجْرَلَ | „ inform     | أَخْبَرَ |
| „ cause to sit               | أَجْلَسَ | „ be fertile | أَخْصَبَ |
| „ answer                     | أَجَابَ  | „ subdue     | أَخْضَعَ |
| „ do or say anything<br>well | أَجَادَ  | „ give       | آتَى     |
| „ protect                    | أَجَارَ  | „ prefer     | أَثَرَ   |
| „ allow                      | أَجَازَ  | „ harm       | آذَى     |
| „ feel                       | أَحَسَّ  | „ believe    | آمَنَ    |
| „ do good                    | أَحْسَنَ | „ originate  | أَبْدَعَ |
|                              |          | „ change     | أَبْدَلَ |

|                          |          |                     |          |
|--------------------------|----------|---------------------|----------|
| To see                   | أَبْصَرَ | To quench           | أَطْفَأَ |
| „ be slow                | أَبْطَأَ | „ set free          | أَطْلَقَ |
| „ abolish                | أَبْطَلَ | „ obey              | أَطَاعَ  |
| „ remove to a distance   | أَبْعَدَ | „ be dark           | أَظْلَمَ |
| „ reserve                | أَبْقَى  | „ prepare           | أَعَدَّ  |
| „ be clear, manifest     | أَبَانَ  | „ deprive of        | أَعْدَمَ |
| „ weary                  | أَتْعَبَ | „ err               | أَخْطَأَ |
| „ perfect                | أَتَقَنَ | „ break a promise   | أَخْلَفَ |
| „ fulfil                 | أَتَمَّ  | „ bring in, insert  | أَدْخَلَ |
| „ satisfy (food)         | أَشْبَعَ | „ submit to         | أَذْعَنَ |
| „ shine                  | أَشْرَقَ | „ commit a crime    | أَذْنَبَ |
| „ take into partner-     |          | „ spread news       | أَدَاعَ  |
| ship                     | أَشْرَكَ | „ show              | أَرَى    |
| „ pity                   | أَشْفَقَ | „ send              | أَرْسَلَ |
| „ be ambiguous           | أَشْكَدَ | „ anchor            | أَرَسَى  |
| „ point to               | أَشَارَ  | „ give rest         | أَرَّاحَ |
| „ be morning             | أَصْبَحَ | „ wish              | أَرَادَ  |
| „ persist                | أَصَرَ   | „ quench thirst     | أَرَوَى  |
| „ rectify                | أَصْلَحَ | „ resolve           | أَزْمَعَ |
| „ afflict, be right, hit |          | „ hasten            | أَسْرَعَ |
| the mark                 | أَصَابَ  | „ squander          | أَسْرَفَ |
| „ light                  | أَضَاءَ  | „ submit            | أَسْلَمَ |
| „ add, show hospi-       |          | „ be or become aged | أَسَنَّ  |
| tality                   | أَضَافَ  | „ „ prolix          | أَسْهَبَ |
| „ feed                   | أَطْعَمَ | „ do evil           | أَسَاءَ  |



|                        |          |                        |           |
|------------------------|----------|------------------------|-----------|
| To sail                | أَفْلَحَ | To become fatigued     | أَعْيَا   |
| „ convince             | أَفْنَعَ | „ shut                 | أَغْلَقَ  |
| „ abide, to raise      | أَقَامَ  | „ succour              | أَغَاثَ   |
| „ increase             | أَكْثَرَ | „ seduce               | أَغْرَى   |
| „ honour               | أَكْرَمَ | „ separate             | أَفْرَزَ  |
| „ compel               | أَكْرَهَ | „ divulge              | أَفْشَى   |
| „ clothe               | أَبَسَ   | „ be successful        | أَفْلَحَ  |
| „ glue                 | أَصَقَ   | „ be penniless         | أَفْلَسَ  |
| „ exclude              | أَلْفَى  | „ annihilate           | أَفْنَى   |
| „ inspire              | أَلْهَمَ | „ approach             | أَقْبَلَ  |
| „ retain               | أَمْسَكَ | „ advance boldly       | أَقْدَمَ  |
| „ be evening           | أَمْسَى  | „ confess              | أَفَرَّ   |
| „ consider attentively | أَمَعَنَ | „ lend                 | أَقْرَضَ  |
| „ be possible          | أَمَكَنَ | „ swear                | أَقْسَمَ  |
| „ inform               | أَنْبَأَ | „ deposit              | أَوْدَعَ  |
| „ accomplish           | أَنْجَزَ | „ lead to water, state | أَوْدَعَ  |
| „ bring down           | أَنْزَلَ | „ cause to reach       | أَوْصَلَ  |
| „ compose, begin       | أَنْشَأَ | „ command              | أَوْصَى   |
| „ recite poetry        | أَنْشَدَ | „ make plain           | أَوْصَحَ  |
| „ give                 | أَعْطَى  | „ kindle               | أَوْقَدَ  |
| „ reveal               | أَعْلَنَ | „ beckon               | أَوْمَأَ  |
| „ lend                 | أَعَارَ  | „ awaken               | أَيْقَظَ  |
| „ lack                 | أَعْوَزَ | „ be sure              | أَيَّقَنَ |
| „ help                 | أَعَانَ  | „ treat with justice   | أَنْصَفَ  |
|                        |          | „ grant                | أَنْعَمَ  |

|            |         |                   |          |
|------------|---------|-------------------|----------|
| To spend   | أَنفَقَ | To present        | أَهْدَى  |
| „ deliver  | أَنقَذَ | „ despise         | أَهَانَ  |
| „ deny     | أَنكَرَ | „ make obligatory | أَوْجَبَ |
| „ light up | أَنَارَ | „ inspire         | أَوْحَى  |

## IV. تَفَعَّلَ

|                          |           |                              |           |
|--------------------------|-----------|------------------------------|-----------|
| To adopt                 | تَبَنَّى  | To regret                    | تَأَسَّفَ |
| „ be manifest            | تَبَيَّنَ | „ be rooted                  | تَأَصَّلَ |
| „ follow up              | تَتَبَعَ  | „ „ sure                     | تَأَكَّدَ |
| „ be confirmed           | تَثَبَّتَ | „ „ composed(book)           | تَأَلَّفَ |
| „ „ educated             | تَثَقَّفَ | „ suffer                     | تَأَلَّمَ |
| „ „ renewed              | تَجَدَّدَ | „ meditate                   | تَأَمَّلَ |
| „ „ incarnate            | تَجَسَّدَ | „ act with delibe-<br>ration | تَأَنَّى  |
| „ spy                    | تَجَسَّسَ | „ be scattered               | تَبَدَّدَ |
| „ bear patiently         | تَجَلَّدَ | „ „ changed                  | تَبَدَّلَ |
| „ be unveiled            | تَجَلَّى  | „ give freely                | تَبَرَّعَ |
| „ shun                   | تَجَنَّبَ | „ smile                      | تَبَسَّمَ |
| „ be petrified           | تَحَاجَرَ | „ consider                   | تَبَصَّرَ |
| „ „ moved                | تَحَرَّكَ | „ amuse oneself              | تَسَلَّى  |
| „ verify                 | تَحَقَّقَ | „ be poisoned                | تَسَمَّمَ |
| „ suffer patiently       | تَحَمَّلَ | „ „ scattered                | تَشَتَّتَ |
| „ carry under the<br>arm | تَأَبَّطَ | „ „ encouraged               | تَشَجَّعَ |
| „ be polite              | تَأَدَّبَ | „ „ strengthened             | تَشَدَّدَ |
| „ „ founded              | تَأَسَّسَ | „ long for                   | تَشَوَّقَ |

|                       |           |                      |           |
|-----------------------|-----------|----------------------|-----------|
| To give alms          | تَصَدَّقَ | To show pity         | تَرَأَّفَ |
| „ employ oneself in   | تَصَرَّفَ | „ hope               | تَرَجَّى  |
| „ imagine             | تَصَوَّرَ | „ welcome            | تَرَحَّبَ |
| „ beseech             | تَضَرَّعَ | „ watch for          | تَرَقَّبَ |
| „ comprise            | تَضَمَّنَ | „ reflect            | تَرَوَّى  |
| „ be immoderate       | تَطَرَّفَ | „ marry              | تَزَوَّجَ |
| „ act voluntarily     | تَطَوَّعَ | „ be adorned         | تَزَيَّنَ |
| „ draw bad omen       |           | „ „ armed            | تَسَلَّحَ |
| from                  | تَطَيَّرَ | „ exercise absolute  |           |
| „ accuse of injustice | تَظَلَّمَ | power over           | تَسَلَّطَ |
| „ be astonished       | تَعَجَّبَ | „ enjoy              | تَمَتَّعَ |
| „ become numerous     | تَعَدَّدَ | „ be glorified       | تَمَجَّدَ |
| „ excuse oneself, be  |           | „ rebel              | تَمَرَّدَ |
| impossible            | تَعَدَّرَ | „ wallow             | تَمَرَّغَ |
| „ learn               | تَعَلَّمَ | „ be habituated to   | تَمَرَّنَ |
| „ compassionate       | تَحَنَّنَ | „ grasp              | تَمَسَّكَ |
| „ be changed          | تَحَوَّلَ | „ be stable          | تَمَكَّنَ |
| „ „ perplexed         | تَحَيَّرَ | „ flatter            | تَمَلَّقَ |
| „ „ educated          | تَخَرَّجَ | „ take possession,   |           |
| „ „ afraid            | تَخَوَّفَ | reign                | تَمَلَّكَ |
| „ choose              | تَخَيَّرَ | „ be awake to        | تَنَبَّهَ |
| „ be trained          | تَدَرَّبَ | „ „ ascetic          | تَنَسَّكَ |
| „ proceed gradually   | تَدَرَّجَ | „ become a Christian | تَنَصَّرَ |
| „ be defiled          | تَدَنَّسَ | „ live luxuriously   | تَنَعَّمَ |
| „ humble oneself      | تَذَلَّلَ | „ breathe            | تَنَفَّسَ |

|                        |           |                        |           |
|------------------------|-----------|------------------------|-----------|
| To disguise oneself    | تَنَكَّرَ | To come into existence | تَكُونُ   |
| „ groan, sigh          | تَنَهَّدَ | „ be compact           | تَلَبَّدَ |
| „ be diverse           | تَنَوَّعَ | „ muffle oneself       | تَلَثَّمَ |
| „ „ well brought up    | تَهَدَّبَ | „ be soiled            | تَلَطَّخَ |
| „ deride               | تَهَكَّمَ | „ show kindness        | تَلَطَّفَ |
| „ purpose, be baptized | تَعَبَّدَ | „ rejoice              | تَهَلَّلَ |
| „ dine                 | تَغَدَّى  | „ rush heedlessly into | تَهَوَّرَ |
| „ take nourishment     | تَغَدَّى  | „ be prepared          | تَهَيَّأَ |
| „ gaze                 | تَقَرَّسَ | „ fear                 | تَهَيَّبَ |
| „ be dispersed         | تَفَرَّقَ | „ go towards           | تَوَجَّهَ |
| „ seek a lost object   | تَفَقَّدَ | „ seek diligently      | تَوَحَّيَ |
| „ be sanctified        | تَقَدَّسَ | „ fall into difficulty | تَوَرَّطَ |
| „ advance              | تَقَدَّمَ | „ lean on a pillow     | تَوَسَّدَ |
| „ approach             | تَقَرَّبَ | „ mediate              | تَوَسَّطَ |
| „ be proved            | تَقَرَّرَ | „ supplicate           | تَوَسَّلَ |
| „ put on               | تَقَلَّدَ | „ penetrate into       | تَوَغَّلَ |
| „ be proud             | تَكَبَّرَ | „ expect               | تَوَقَّعَ |
| „ „ shattered          | تَكَسَّرَ | „ lean upon            | تَوَكَّأَ |
| „ speak                | تَكَلَّمَ | „ suspect, imagine     | تَوَهَّمَ |
|                        |           | „ become easy          | تَيَسَّرَ |
|                        |           | „ be sure of           | تَيَقَّنَ |

### تَفَاعَلَ

|                      |            |                     |             |
|----------------------|------------|---------------------|-------------|
| To discuss together  | تَحَاوَرَا | To dispute together | تَحَاَصَمَا |
| „ inform one another | تَحَاوَرَا | „ interfere         | تَدَاخَلَ   |

To be mutually

|                      |           |
|----------------------|-----------|
| agreed               | تَرَاضَى  |
| „ be closely packed  | تَرَآكَمَ |
| „ crowd              | تَرَاحَمَ |
| „ be exalted         | تَسَامَى  |
| „ „ accomodating     | تَسَاهَلَ |
| „ „ equal            | تَسَاوَى  |
| „ forebode ill       | نَشَأَمَ  |
| „ resemble one an-   |           |
| other                | تَشَابَهَ |
| „ quarrel            | تَشَاجَرَ |
| „ share with         | تَشَارَكَ |
| „ feign occupation   | تَشَاغَلَ |
| „ take counsel to-   |           |
| gether               | تَأَمَرَ  |
| „ discuss together   | تَبَاحَثَ |
| „ exchange           | تَبَادَلَ |
| „ be blessed         | تَبَارَكَ |
| „ „ far apart        | تَبَاعَدَ |
| „ follow consecu-    |           |
| tively               | تَتَابَعَ |
| „ yawn               | تَنَاءَبَ |
| „ be heavy, sluggish | تَنَاقَلَ |
| „ dispute together   | تَجَادَلَ |
| „ dare               | تَجَاسَرَ |

To affect ignorance تَجَاهَلَ

|                      |           |
|----------------------|-----------|
| „ transgress, exceed |           |
| the bounds           | تَجَاوَزَ |
| „ love one another   | تَحَابَّ  |
| „ fight one another  | تَحَارَبَ |
| „ summon one an-     |           |
| other                | تَحَاكَمَ |
| „ follow in regular  |           |
| series               | تَقَاطَرَ |
| „ intersect          | تَقَاطَعَ |
| „ neglect            | تَقَاعَدَ |
| „ increase           | تَكَاثَرَ |
| „ be thick, dense    | تَكَاثَفَ |
| „ „ lazy             | تَكَاسَلَ |
| „ meet one another   | تَلَاقَى  |
| „ feign sickness     | تَمَارَضَ |
| „ feign death        | تَمَاوَتَ |
| „ swing              | تَمَايَلَ |
| „ commune secretly   | تَنَاجَى  |
| „ contend, litigate  | تَنَازَعَ |
| „ take by the hand   | تَنَاولَ  |
| „ feign sleep        | تَنَآوَمَ |
| „ rush to            | تَهَافَتَ |
| „ neglect            | تَهَاوَنَ |
| „ conceal oneself    | تَوَارَى  |

|                     |           |                     |           |
|---------------------|-----------|---------------------|-----------|
| To be equal to      | تَوَارَى  | To feign blindness, | تَعَامَى  |
| " " humble          | تَوَاضَعَ | ignorance           | تَعَامَى  |
| " consult together  | تَشَاوَرَ | " covenant          | تَعَاهَدَ |
| " accompany         | تَصَاحَبَ | " help one another  | تَعَاوَنَ |
| " shake hands with  | تَصَافَحَ | " rival in glory    | تَفَاخَرَ |
| " be reconciled     | تَصَالَحَ | " become important, |           |
| " fight one another | تَضَارَبَ | formidable          | تَفَاقَمَ |
| " exceed the rights | تَطَاوَلَ | " draw near to      | تَقَارَبَ |
| " be scattered      | تَطَايَرَ | " divide with       | تَقَاسَمَ |
| " feign             | تَظَاهَرَ | " demand payment    | تَقَاضَى  |
| " engage in         | تَعَاطَى  | " agree upon        | تَوَاطَأَ |
| " be exalted        | تَعَالَى  | " agree together    | تَوَافَقَ |
| " deal with one an- |           | " be dilatory       | تَوَانَى  |
| other               | تَعَامَلَ |                     |           |

## VI. اِنْفَعَلَ

|                 |            |                |            |
|-----------------|------------|----------------|------------|
| To be forsaken  | اِنْخَذَلَ | To be healed   | اِنْدَمَلَ |
| " " eclipsed    |            | " " amazed     | اِنْدَهَلَ |
| (moon)          | اِنْخَسَفَ | " " troubled   | اِنْزَعَجَ |
| " be lowered    | اِنْخَفَضَ | " " bruised    | اِنْسَحَقَ |
| " " erased      | اِنْدَثَرَ | " " poured out | اِنْسَكَبَ |
| " " obliterated |            | " slip away    | اِنْسَلَّ  |
| (traces)        | اِنْدَرَسَ | " be split     | اِنْشَقَّ  |
| " be repelled   | اِنْدَفَعَ | " " poured out | اِنْصَبَّ  |



|                      |             |                      |            |
|----------------------|-------------|----------------------|------------|
| To depart            | اَنْصَرَفَ  | To be disclosed      | اَنْكَشَفَ |
| " proceed from       | اَنْبَثَقَ  | " " blotted out      | اَنْمَكَى  |
| " be cut (pen)       | اَنْبَرَى   | " " pulled down      | اَنْهَدَمَ |
| " " extended,        |             | " " put to flight    | اَنْهَزَمَ |
| mercy                | اَنْبَسَطَ  | " rain heavily, shed |            |
| " be raised, sent    | اَنْبَعَثَ  | tears                | اَنْهَلَ   |
| " " attracted        | اَنْجَذَبَ  | " be joined to       | اَنْضَمَّ  |
| " " wounded          | اَنْجَرَحَ  | " " printed          | اَنْطَبَعَ |
| " " concealed        | اَنْحَاكَبَ | " " covered          | اَنْطَبَقَ |
| " go down            | اَنْكَدَرَ  | " " thrown           | اَنْطَرَحَ |
| " deviate            | اَنْكَرَفَ  | " depart             | اَنْطَلَقَ |
| " be straitened      | اَنْخَصَرَ  | " be bent, inclined  | اَنْعَطَفَ |
| " " degraded         | اَنْكَطَّ   | " " arched, coa-     |            |
| " " broken           | اَنْكَطَمَ  | gulated              | اَنْعَقَدَ |
| " " loosed           | اَنْحَلَّ   | " cleave to          | اَنْعَكَفَ |
| " stoop              | اَنْحَنَى   | " be planted         | اَنْغَرَسَ |
| " be deceived        | اَنْخَدَعَ  | " " plunged          | اَنْغَمَسَ |
| " " led              | اَنْقَادَ   | " " opened           | اَنْفَتَحَ |
| " fall prostrate, to |             | burst                | اَنْفَجَرَ |
| be spilt             | اَنْكَبَ    | " be separated       | اَنْفَصَلَ |
| " be broken, defeat- |             | " " cleft            | اَنْفَلَقَ |
| ed                   | اَنْكَسَرَ  | " " distressed       | اَنْقَبَضَ |
| " be eclipsed (sun)  | اَنْكَسَفَ  | " " extinguished     | اَنْقَرَضَ |

|                    |           |                  |           |
|--------------------|-----------|------------------|-----------|
| To be finished     | انْقَضَى  | To be overturned | انْقَلَبَ |
| " " cut off, cease | انْقَطَعَ |                  |           |

## VII. اِفْتَعَلَ

|                            |            |                   |            |
|----------------------------|------------|-------------------|------------|
| To adduce an argu-<br>ment | اِحْتَجَمَ | To begin          | اِبْتَدَأَ |
| " be on one's guard        | اِحْتَرَسَ | " originate       | اِبْتَدَعَ |
| " " burnt                  | اِحْتَرَقَ | " smile           | اِبْتَسَمَ |
| " venerate                 | اِحْتَرَمَ | " be distant      | اِبْتَعَدَ |
| " gather wood              | اِحْتَطَبَ | " request         | اِبْتَغَى  |
| " celebrate                | اِحْتَفَدَ | " swallow         | اِبْتَلَعَ |
| " despise                  | اِحْتَقَرَ | " put to the test | اِبْتَلَى  |
| " endure                   | اِحْتَمَلَ | " delight         | اِبْتَهَجَ |
| " contain                  | اِحْتَوَى  | " implore         | اِبْتَهَلَ |
| " use strategy             | اِحْتَلَّ  | " follow          | اِتَّبَعَ  |
| " hide oneself             | اِحْتَبَأَ | " ruminate        | اِجْتَرَّ  |
| " experience               | اِحْتَبَرَ | " be gathered     | اِجْتَمَعَ |
| " invent                   | اِحْتَرَعَ | " exert oneself   | اِجْتَهَدَ |
| " abridge                  | اِحْتَصَرَ | " be kindled      | اِسْتَعَرَ |
| " be distinguished<br>for  | اِحْتَصَّ  | " draw water      | اِسْتَقَى  |
| " take to oneself          | اِتَّخَذَ  | " listen          | اِسْتَمَعَ |
| " be girded                | اِثَّرَ    | " lean upon       | اِسْتَنَدَ |
|                            |            | " be strong       | اِشْتَدَّ  |
|                            |            | " buy             | اِشْتَرَى  |

|                      |            |                    |             |
|----------------------|------------|--------------------|-------------|
| To be kindled        | اَشْتَعَلَ | To be ordained     | اِرْتَسَمَ  |
| " " occupied         | اَشْتَغَلَ | " " pleased with   | اِرْتَضَى   |
| " long for           | اَشْتَهَى  | " tremble          | اِرْتَعَدَ  |
| " long for           | اَشْتَأَى  | " rise, advance    | اِرْتَقَى   |
| " be dyed            | اَصْطَبَعَ | " commit a crime   | اِرْتَكَبَ  |
| " choose             | اَصْطَفَى  | " suspect          | اِرْتَابَ   |
| " make terms         | اَصْطَلَحَ | " despise, scorn   | اِرْذَرَى   |
| " warm oneself       | اَصْطَلَى  | " increase         | اِرْزَدَان  |
| " lie down           | اَضْطَجَعَ | " cover oneself    | اِسْتَتَرَ  |
| " be troubled        | اَضْطَرَبَ | " economise        | اِقْتَصَدَ  |
| " compel             | اَضْطَرَّ  | " limit oneself to | اِقْتَصَرَ  |
| " blaze              | اَضْطَرَمَ | " require          | اِقْتَضَى   |
| " persecute          | اَضْطَهَدَ | " acquire          | اِقْتَنَى   |
| " defraud            | اِخْتَلَسَ | " be grieved       | اِكْتَسَابَ |
| " be mixed           | اِخْتَلَطَ | " earn             | اِكْتَسَبَ  |
| " invent, forge lies | اِخْتَلَقَ | " be clothed       | اِكْتَسَى   |
| " be leavened        | اِخْتَمَرَ | " " satisfied      | اِكْتَفَى   |
| " choose             | اِخْتَارَ  | " surround         | اِكْتَنَفَ  |
| " claim              | اِدَّعى    | " take refuge      | اِلْتَجَأَ  |
| " be confused        | اِرْتَبَكَ | " undertake        | اِلْتَزَمَ  |
| " tremble            | اِرْتَجَفَ | " look back        | اِلْتَفَتَ  |
| " extemporize        | اِرْتَجَدَ | " meet together    | اِلْتَقَى   |
| " apostatize         | اِرْتَدَّ  | " seek for         | اِلْتَمَسَ  |

To blaze, be inflam-

ed

„ be bent

„ examine, try

„ be mixed

„ „ filled

„ know, see

„ consider

„ excuse oneself

„ confess

„ separate oneself

„ take refuge

„ embrace

„ take care of

„ be accustomed

„ „ deceived

„ wash oneself

„ be enraged

„ begin, conquer

„ glory in

„ prey on

„ miss

„ think

To draw near

„ commit crime

„ abstain from

„ be vigilant

„ commit suicide

„ choose

„ be spread

„ „ victorious

„ await

„ be puffed up

„ profit by

„ criticise

„ be transferred

„ choose

„ have a relapse

„ rebuke, drive away

„ seize an oppor-

tunity

„ come to an end

„ be shaken

„ mind

„ be united

„ „ wide

اِفْتَرَبَ

اِفْتَرَفَ

اِمْتَنَعَ

اِفْتَبَّهَ

اِفْتَكَّرَ

اِفْتَخَبَ

اِفْتَشَرَ

اِفْتَصَرَ

اِفْتَضَّرَ

اِفْتَفَحَ

اِفْتَفَعَ

اِفْتَقَدَ

اِفْتَقَلَ

اِفْتَقَى

اِفْتَكَسَ

اِفْتَهَرَ

اِفْتَهَزَ

اِفْتَهَى

اِفْتَزَ

اِفْتَمَّ

اِفْتَكَّدَ

اِفْتَسَعَ

|                 |           |                  |            |
|-----------------|-----------|------------------|------------|
| To be joined    | اتَّصَلَ  | To burn, blaze   | اِتَّقَدَ  |
| „ „ humble      | اِتَّضَعَ | „ be pious, fear | اِتَّقَى   |
| „ follow advice | اِتَّعَظَ | „ lean upon      | اِتَّكَأَ  |
| „ happen, agree | اِتَّفَقَ | „ trust in       | اِتَّكَلَّ |

## VIII. اِفْعَلَ

|             |          |                   |          |
|-------------|----------|-------------------|----------|
| To be white | اِبْيَضَ | To be yellow      | اِصْفَرَ |
| „ „ red     | اِحْمَرَ | „ „ crooked       | اِعْوَجَ |
| „ „ green   | اِخْضَرَ | „ „ one-eyed      | اِعْوَرَ |
| „ „ blue    | اِزْرَقَ | „ „ dust-coloured | اِغْبَرَ |
| „ „ brown   | اِسْمَرَ | „ „ dull          | اِكْمَدَ |
| „ „ black   | اِسْوَدَ |                   |          |

## IX. اِسْتَفْعَلَ

|                     |              |                     |              |
|---------------------|--------------|---------------------|--------------|
| To approve          | اِسْتَحْسَنَ | To employ a ser-    | اِسْتَعْدَمَ |
| „ send for one      | اِسْتَحْضَرَ | vant                | اِسْتَدْرَجَ |
| „ be worthy of      | اِسْتَحَقَّ  | „ draw out          | اِسْتَخْلَصَ |
| „ find sweet        | اِسْتَحْلَى  | „ extract           | اِسْتَدْرَكَ |
| „ be changed, be    |              | „ rectify omission  | اِسْتَدَلَّ  |
| impossible          | اِسْتَحَالَ  | „ seek proof, infer | اِسْتَدَارَ  |
| „ spare one's life, |              | „ be circular       | اِسْتَرْحَمَ |
| be ashamed          | اِسْتَحْيَا  | „ seek mercy        | اِسْتَرَدَّ  |
| „ seek information  | اِسْتَخْبَرَ | „ recall            |              |

|                      |              |                     |               |
|----------------------|--------------|---------------------|---------------|
| To hire              | اسْتَأْجَرَ  | To rest             | اسْتَقَرَّ    |
| „ ask permission     | اسْتَأْذَنَ  | „ explore           | اسْتَفْرَى    |
| „ seek safety        | اسْتَأْمَنَ  | „ penetrate deeply, |               |
| „ be polite, cultur- |              | (affair)            | اسْتَقْصَى    |
| ed                   | اسْتَأْنَسَ  | „ be independent    | اسْتَقَلَّ    |
| „ recommence an      |              | „ „ upright         | اسْتَقَامَ    |
| action               | اسْتَأْنَفَ  | „ consider great    | اسْتَكْبَرَ   |
| „ be worthy of       | اسْتَاهَلَ   | „ consider abun-    |               |
| „ „ arbitrary        | اسْتَبَدَّ   | dant                | اسْتَكْثَرَ   |
| „ exchange           | اسْتَبَدَّلَ | „ regard as a duty  | اسْتَلْزَمَ   |
| „ rejoice at good    |              | „ draw attention    |               |
| news                 | اسْتَبَشَّرَ | to                  | اسْتَلْفَتَ   |
| „ consider ugly      | اسْتَبْشَعَ  | „ lie on one's back | اسْتَلْقَى    |
| „ consider remote    | اسْتَبْعَدَ  | „ seek inspiration  | اسْتَلْهَمَ   |
| „ seek the comple-   |              | „ seek help         | اسْتَمَدَّ    |
| tion                 | اسْتَتَمَّ   | „ continue          | اسْتَمَرَّ    |
| „ except             | اسْتَثْنَى   | „ ask a gift        | اسْتَمْنَحَ   |
| „ answer prayer      | اسْتَجَابَ   | „ discover          | اسْتَنْبَطَ   |
| „ seek protection    | اسْتَجَارَ   | „ deduce            | اسْتَنْتَجَمَ |
| „ profit             | اسْتَفَادَ   | „ ask for water, be |               |
| „ loathe             | اسْتَقْبَحَ  | dropsical           | اسْتَسْقَى    |
| „ meet, to be in     |              | „ call to witness   | اسْتَشْهَدَ   |
| front of             | اسْتَقْبَلَ  | „ consult           | اسْتَشَارَ    |



|                     |               |                     |              |
|---------------------|---------------|---------------------|--------------|
| To esteem of little |               | „ seek aid          | اِسْتَعَاثَ  |
| account             | اِسْتَصَغَرَ  | „ seek to under-    |              |
| „ find right        | اِسْتَصَوَّبَ | stand               | اِسْتَفْهَمَ |
| „ seek for infor-   |               | „ seek help         | اِسْتَنْجَدَ |
| mation              | اِسْتَطْلَعَ  | „ ask fulfilment of |              |
| „ enslave           | اِسْتَعْبَدَ  | a promise           | اِسْتَنْجَزَ |
| „ hasten            | اِسْتَعْجَلَ  | „ disdain           | اِسْتَنْكَفَ |
| „ make oneself      |               | „ incite            | اِسْتَنْهَضَ |
| ready               | اِسْتَعَدَّ   | „ shine, be enligh- |              |
| „ seek a favour     | اِسْتَعَطَفَ  | tened               | اِسْتَنَارَ  |
| „ consider great    | اِسْتَعْظَمَ  | „ mock              | اِسْتَهْزَأَ |
| „ desire to know    | اِسْتَعْلَمَ  | „ begin speech      | اِسْتَهَلَّ  |
| „ use               | اِسْتَعْمَلَ  | „ deserve           | اِسْتَوْجَبَ |
| „ borrow            | اِسْتَعَارَ   | „ deposit           | اِسْتَوْدَعَ |
| „ seek help         | اِسْتَعَانَ   | „ seek payment      | اِسْتَوْفَى  |
| „ seek forgiveness  | اِسْتَغْفَرَ  | „ overpower         | اِسْتَوَلَى  |
| „ be rich, indepen- |               | „ be awakened       | اِسْتَيْقَظَ |
| dent of             | اِسْتَغْنَى   |                     |              |

### X. اِنْعَوَعَلَ

|                   |              |                         |               |
|-------------------|--------------|-------------------------|---------------|
| To be hump-backed | اِحْدَوَدَبَ | To be about to do       | اِخْلَوَقَ    |
| „ „ „ „           | اِحْقَوَقَفَ | „ „ covered with        |               |
| „ „ sweet         | اِخْلَوَى    | grass                   | اِعْشَوْشَبَ  |
| „ „ rough, rude   | اِخْشَوْشَنَ | „ be filled with tears, |               |
|                   |              | eyes                    | اِعْرَوَّرَقَ |

# QUADRILITERALS. فَعَّلَل

|                       |           |                        |           |
|-----------------------|-----------|------------------------|-----------|
| To embellish          | زَخَّرَفَ | To make disciples      | تَلَمَّدَ |
| „ embroider           | زَرَكَّشَ | „ stammer              | تَمَتَّمَ |
| „ move                | زَعَزَعَ  | „ collect              | جَمَهَرَ  |
| „ shake               | زَلَزَلَ  | „ have the death-      |           |
| „ roar                | زَمَجَرَ  | rattle                 | حَشَرَجَ  |
| „ clothe              | سَرَبَلَ  | „ appear (truth)       | حَضَّكَصَ |
| „ lower the head      | طَاطَأَ   | „ neigh                | حَمَّكَمَ |
| „ fall in (the night) | عَسَّعَسَ | „ open the eyes        |           |
| „ camp                | عَسَكَرَ  | widely                 | حَمَلَقَ  |
| „ sift wheat          | غَرَبَلَ  | „ scribble             | خَرَبَشَ  |
| „ gargle              | غَرَّغَرَ | „ roll down            | دَخَّرَجَ |
| „ burst out laughing  | قَهَقَهَ  | „ buzz                 | دَنَدَنَ  |
| „ shine               | لَالَا    | „ flutter              | رَفَرَفَ  |
| „ rinse               | مَضَبَصَ  | „ roll away            | زَحَلَقَ  |
| „ trouble             | مَلَمَلَ  | „ run quickly          | هَرَوَلَ  |
| „ wag the tail        | بَضَبَصَ  | „ sketch, plan         | هَنَدَسَ  |
| „ confound            | بَلَبَلَ  | „ suggest evil (devil) | وَسَّوَسَ |
| „ interpret           | قَرَّجَمَ | „ wail                 | وَلَوَلَ  |

## DERIVED FORMS OF THE QUADRILITERAL.

### I. تَفَعَّلَل

|               |             |                    |             |
|---------------|-------------|--------------------|-------------|
| To roll along | تَدَخَّرَجَ | To profess atheism | تَزَنَّدَقَ |
| „ be shaken   | تَزَعَزَعَ  | „ put on trousers  | تَسَرَّوَلَ |

|                   |           |                      |             |
|-------------------|-----------|----------------------|-------------|
| To be rude, proud | تَعَجَّرَ | To shine             | تَلَأَلَّ   |
| „ „ conceited     | تَغَطَّرَ | „ follow a sect      | تَمَذَّهَبَ |
| „ philosophize    | تَفَلَّسَ | „ be restless in bed | تَمَلَّلَ   |
| „ go backwards    | تَقَهَّرَ |                      |             |

## II. اُعْنَلَّ

|                    |              |                    |              |
|--------------------|--------------|--------------------|--------------|
| To gather of press |              | To have a protube- |              |
| (crowds)           | اِحْرَنْجَمَ | rant chest and a   |              |
| „ lie on the back  | اِسْلَنْقَى  | hollow back        | اِقْعَنَسَسَ |

## III. اُفْعَلَّ

|                      |            |                      |             |
|----------------------|------------|----------------------|-------------|
| To be intensely dark | اِدْهَمَّ  | To vanish away       | اِضْمَحَلَّ |
| „ stretch the neck   |            | „ enjoy tranquillity | اِطْمَأَنَّ |
| to look              | اِشْرَابَ  | „ shudder with honor | اِقْشَعَرَ  |
| „ be high, proud     | اِشْمَخَرَ | „ be intensely dark  | اِكْفَهَرَ  |

## SUPPLEMENTS OF THE QUADRILITERAL.

|                      |           |                      |           |
|----------------------|-----------|----------------------|-----------|
| To practise farriery | بَيَّطَرَ | To stuff the crop    | حَوْصَدَ  |
| „ clothe one with    |           | „ hurl into an abyss | دَهَوَّرَ |
| a gown               | جَلَّبَبَ | „ put a cap on any   |           |
| „ throw violently    |           | one                  | قَلَنَسَ  |
| down                 | جَنْدَلَ  |                      |           |

THE MORE COMMON FORMS OF TRILITERAL  
MASDARS.

أَشْهُرُ أَوْزَانِ مَصَادِيرِ التَّلَاثِيَّ

|               |                  |
|---------------|------------------|
| 18 فَعِيلَةٌ  | 1 فَعَلَ         |
| 19 فُعَالَةٌ  | 2 فُعِلَ         |
| 20 فَاعِلَةٌ  | 3 فِعِلَ         |
| 21 فَعَلَةٌ   | 4 فَعَلَ         |
| 22 فُوعَلَةٌ  | 5 فُوعِلَ        |
| 23 فُوعَلَةٌ  | 6 فُوعِلَ        |
| 24 فَعَلَةٌ   | 7 فَعِلَ         |
| 25 فُوعَلَى   | 8 فِعِلَ         |
| 26 فَعَلَى    | 9 فُوعِلَ        |
| 27 فُوعَلَى   | 10 فُوعُولَةٌ    |
| 28 فُوعَلَانِ | 11 فُوعَالَةٌ    |
| 29 فُوعَلَانِ | 12 فُوعَالَةٌ    |
| 30 فُوعَلَانِ | 13 فُوعَالِيَّةٌ |
| 31 تَفْعَالٌ  | 14 فُوعَالٌ      |
| 32 فُوعُولَةٌ | 15 فُوعَالٌ      |
| 33 مَفْعُولٌ  | 16 فُوعَالٌ      |
|               | 17 فُوعِيلٌ      |

## NOUNS OF ACTION OF TRILITERAL VERBS.

## الْمَصَادِرُ الثَّلَاثِيَّةُ

## 1. فَعَلَ

|                      |         |                       |         |
|----------------------|---------|-----------------------|---------|
| Pushing, paying      | دَفَعَ  | Bringing              | جَلَبَ  |
| Sprinkling           | رَسَّ   | Gathering             | جَمَعَ  |
| Thunder              | رَعَدَ  | Ignorance             | جَهْلٌ  |
| Lifting              | رَفَعَ  | Digging               | حَفَرَ  |
| Throwing             | رَمَى   | Truth                 | حَقٌّ   |
| Captivity            | سَبَى   | Loosing               | حَلَّ   |
| Closing up           | سَدَّ   | Praising              | حَمَدَ  |
| Shedding             | سَفَكَ  | Carrying              | حَمَلَ  |
| Enacting, sharpening | سَنَّ   | Writing               | خَطَّ   |
| Longing              | شَوَّقَ | Study                 | دَرَسَ  |
| Roasting             | شَيَّى  | Knocking              | طَارَقَ |
| Pardon               | صَفَحَ  | Taste                 | طَعَمَ  |
| Beating              | ضَرَبَ  | Folding               | طَيَّ   |
| Light                | ضَوَّءَ | Fickleness            | طَيْشٌ  |
| Grinding             | طَحَنَ  | Justice               | عَدَلَ  |
| Eating               | أَكَلَ  | Living                | عَيْشٌ  |
| Safety               | أَمَنَ  | Washing               | غَسَلَ  |
| Cold                 | بَرَدَ  | Grief                 | غَمٌّ   |
| Lightning            | بَرَقَ  | Opening               | فَتَحَ  |
| Selling              | بَيَّعَ | Supposing, appointing | فَرَضَ  |

|               |         |                       |         |
|---------------|---------|-----------------------|---------|
| Superiority   | فَضْل   | Death                 | مَوْت   |
| Understanding | فَهْم   | Springing             | نَبَعَ  |
| Killing       | قَتَلَ  | Vow                   | نَذَرَ  |
| Purpose       | قَصْد   | Assisting             | نَصَرَ  |
| Knocking      | قَرَعَ  | Sprinkling            | نَضَحَ  |
| Speech        | قَوْل   | Arranging, versifying | نَظَّمَ |
| Cauterizing   | كَيَّ   | Profiting             | نَفَعَ  |
| Glance        | لَحَظَ  | Lamentation           | نَوَّحَ |
| Blame         | لَوَّمَ | Sleep                 | نَوَّمَ |
| Praising      | مَدَحَ  | Obtaining             | نَيْلَ  |
| Stretching    | مَدَّ   | Pulling down          | هَدَمَ  |
| Forbidding    | مَنَعَ  | Promise               | وَعَدَ  |

## فُعِلَ 2

|                     |        |                         |         |
|---------------------|--------|-------------------------|---------|
| Abasement, weakness | ذَلَّ  | Harm                    | ضَرَّ   |
| Ampleness           | رُحِبَ | Weakness                | ضَعُفَ  |
| Cheapness           | رُخِصَ | Oppression              | ظَلَمَ  |
| Abstemiousness      | رُهِدَ | Excuse                  | عَذَرَ  |
| Scoffing            | سُخِرَ | Politeness, sociability | أُنْسَ  |
| Disease             | سُقِمَ | Stinginess              | بُخِلَ  |
| Drunkenness         | سُكِرَ | Healing                 | بُرِّئَ |
| Drinking            | شُرِبَ | Slowness                | بُطِئَ  |
| Occupation          | شُغِلَ | Vanity, falsehood       | بُطِلَ  |
| Thankfulness        | شُكِرَ | Distance                | بُعِدَ  |
| Doing               | صُنِعَ | Cowardice               | جُبِنَ  |



|                    |       |                      |       |
|--------------------|-------|----------------------|-------|
| Generosity         | جُود  | Holiness             | قُدُس |
| Sorrow             | حُزن  | Proximity            | قُرْب |
| Beauty             | حُسْن | Abhorrence           | كُرْه |
| Judgment           | حُكْم | Meanness             | لُوم  |
| Dream              | حُلْم | Kindness, gentleness | لُطْف |
| Wickedness         | خُبْث | Abiding              | مُكْت |
| Experience         | خُبْر | Reigning             | مُلْك |
| Storing up         | ذُخْر | Advice               | نُصْح |
| Nakedness          | عُرْي | Speaking             | نُطْق |
| Difficulty         | عُسْر | Dryness              | يُبْس |
| Washing            | غُسْل | Easiness             | يُسْر |
| Spoiling           | غُنْم | Luck                 | يُمْن |
| Vileness, ugliness | قُبْح |                      |       |

## 3. فِعْل

|                      |       |                     |       |
|----------------------|-------|---------------------|-------|
| Crime                | اِثْم | Envy                | حِقْد |
| Permission           | اِذْن | Forbearance         | حِلْم |
| Inheritance          | اِرْث | Confusion           | خِزْي |
| Righteousness        | بِر   | Fertility           | خِصْب |
| Diligence, endeavour | جِد   | Remembrance         | ذِكْر |
| Skilfulness          | حِذْق | Compassion          | رِفْق |
| Covetousness         | حِرْص | Being well watered  | رِي   |
| Depriving            | حِرْم | Sorcery, seduction  | سِحْر |
| Feeling              | حِس   | Drinking            | شَرْب |
| Preservation         | حِفْظ | Feeling, versifying | شِعْر |

|                 |        |           |       |
|-----------------|--------|-----------|-------|
| Truthfulness    | صِدْق  | Knowledge | عِلْم |
| Distress        | صِيْق  | Adultery  | فِسْق |
| Goodness        | طَيِّب | Saying    | قِيْل |
| Passionate love | عِشْق  |           |       |

## 4. فَعْل

|                       |       |                  |       |
|-----------------------|-------|------------------|-------|
| Confusion, shame      | خَجَل | Hoarseness       | بَحَم |
| Dumbness              | خَرَس | Leaving          | بَرَح |
| Erring                | خَطَأ | Leprosy          | بَرَص |
| Diligence             | دَأْب | Seeing           | بَصَر |
| Slipping              | زَلَق | Fatigue          | تَعَب |
| Slipping              | زَلَل | Fear, grief      | جَزَع |
| Disgust               | سَام  | Patience         | جَلَد |
| Anger                 | سَخَط | Caution          | حَذَر |
| Generosity            | سَخَا | Sorrow           | حَزَن |
| Hisease               | سَقَم | Envy             | حَسَد |
| Dwelling              | سَكَن | Swearing         | حَلَف |
| Wakefulness, watching | سَهَر | Annoyance        | ضَجَر |
| Grief                 | شَجَن | Request, seeking | طَلَب |
| Dignity               | شَرَف | Coveting         | طَمَع |
| Deafness              | صَم   | Victory          | ظَفَر |
| Politeness            | أَدَب | Sweating         | عَرَق |
| Regret                | أَسَف | Thirst           | عَطَش |
| Corruption            | أَسَن | Publicity        | عَلَن |
| Hope                  | أَمَل | Doing            | عَمَل |

|             |        |              |        |
|-------------|--------|--------------|--------|
| Blindness   | عَمَى  | Repentance   | نَدَمَ |
| Anger       | غَضَبَ | Moisture     | نَدَى  |
| Toy         | فَرَحَ | Relationship | نَسَبَ |
| Failure     | فَشَلَ | Looking      | نَظَرَ |
| Despair     | فَنَطَ | Fleeing      | هَرَبَ |
| Generosity  | كَرَمَ | Affection    | هَوَى  |
| Zaziness    | كَسَلَ | Fear         | وَجَلَ |
| Hydrophobia | كَلَبَ | Swelling     | وَزَمَ |
| Affection   | كَلَفَ | Dirtiness    | وَسَخَ |
| Sickness    | مَرَضَ | Deep sleep   | وَسَنَ |
| Wearifeness | مَلَلَ |              |        |

## 5. فُعِلَ

|            |         |             |        |
|------------|---------|-------------|--------|
| Difficulty | عُسِرَ  | Mercy       | رُحِمَ |
| Holiness   | قُدِّسَ | Drunkenness | سُكِرَ |
| Meanness   | لُؤِمَ  | Excuse      | عُدِرَ |
| Dreaming   | حُلِمَ  |             |        |

## 6. فُعِلَ

|               |        |         |        |
|---------------|--------|---------|--------|
| Consent       | رُضِيَ | Request | بُعِيَ |
| Night-journey | سُرِيَ | Weeping | بُكِيَ |
| Guidance      | هُدِيَ | Piety   | تُقِيَ |

## 7. فَعَلَ

|          |        |           |        |
|----------|--------|-----------|--------|
| Laughing | ضَحِكَ | Playing   | لَعِبَ |
| Lying    | كَذَبَ | Depriving | حَرَمَ |

|          |        |          |        |
|----------|--------|----------|--------|
| Swearing | حَلَفَ | Stealing | سَرَقَ |
| Choking  | خَنَقَ |          |        |

## 8. فَعَلَ

|              |          |              |        |
|--------------|----------|--------------|--------|
| Heaviness    | ثَقَلَ   | Satisfaction | شَبَعَ |
| Satisfaction | رَضِيَ   | Littleness   | صَغَرَ |
| Annihilation | بَلَى    | Greatness    | عَظُمَ |
| Thickness    | ثَبَخَنَ | Richness     | غِنَى  |
| Plumpness    | سَمِنَ   | Shortness    | قَصَرَ |

## 9. فُعُولَ

|                       |         |                              |         |
|-----------------------|---------|------------------------------|---------|
| Compassion            | حُنُوٌّ | Setting (sun, moon, or star) | أَفُولَ |
| Going forth           | خُرُوجٌ | Going forth                  | فُرُوزٌ |
| Subjection, obedience | خُضُوعٌ | Rising (sun)                 | بُرُوعٌ |
| Palpitation           | خَفَقٌ  | Reaching, maturity           | بُلُوغٌ |
| Obscureness           | خُمُولٌ | Firmness                     | قُبُوتٌ |
| Entering              | دُخُولٌ | Sitting                      | جُلُوسٌ |
| Approaching           | دُنُوٌّ | Solidity                     | جُبُودٌ |
| Returning             | رُجُوعٌ | Madness                      | جُنُونٌ |
| Settling              | رُسُوبٌ | Happening                    | حُدُوثٌ |
| Firmness              | رُسُوخٌ | Arriving                     | حُصُولٌ |
| Worship, prostration  | سُجُودٌ | Presence                     | حُضُورٌ |
| Gladness              | سُرُورٌ | Staying, falling             | حُلُولٌ |
| Falling               | سُقُوطٌ |                              |         |

|                       |         |                    |          |
|-----------------------|---------|--------------------|----------|
| Heat                  | حُمُورٌ | Failing            | قُصُورٌ  |
| Silence               | سُكُوتٌ | Sitting            | قُعُودٌ  |
| Quietness             | سُكُونٌ | Hiding             | كُمُورٌ  |
| Consolation           | سُلُوءٌ | Descending         | نُزُولٌ  |
| Exaltation            | سُمُوءٌ | Growing, beginning | نُشُوءٌ  |
| Rising (sun)          | شُرُوقٌ | Execution          | نُفُوقٌ  |
| Proceeding            | صُدُورٌ | Aversion           | نُفُورٌ  |
| Ascending             | صُعُودٌ | Growth             | نُمُوءٌ  |
| Rising                | طُلُوعٌ | Blowing (wind)     | هُبُوبٌ  |
| Crossing              | عُبُورٌ | Falling            | هُبُوطٌ  |
| Height                | عُلُوءٌ | Attacking          | هَاجُومٌ |
| Setting (sun)         | غُرُوبٌ | Arriving           | وُضُولٌ  |
| Deception             | غُرُورٌ | Coming             | وُرُودٌ  |
| Languor, lukewarmness | فُتُورٌ | Standing           | وُقُوفٌ  |
| Coming                | قُدُومٌ |                    |          |

## 10. فُعُولَةٌ

|            |           |            |           |
|------------|-----------|------------|-----------|
| Manhood    | كُهُولَةٌ | Harshness  | حُشُونَةٌ |
| Manliness  | مُرُوءَةٌ | Tenderness | رُخُوصَةٌ |
| Saltiness  | مُلُوحَةٌ | Dampness   | رُطُوبَةٌ |
| Softness   | نُعُومَةٌ | Heat       | سُخُونَةٌ |
| Ruggedness | وُعُورَةٌ | Ease       | سَهُولَةٌ |
| Ruggedness | وُعُورَةٌ | Difficulty | صُعُوبَةٌ |
| Dryness    | يُبُوسَةٌ | Sweetness  | عَذَابَةٌ |
| Sourness   | حُمُوضَةٌ |            |           |

## 11. فَعَالَةٌ

|                         |            |                    |            |
|-------------------------|------------|--------------------|------------|
| Protection              | حِمَايَةٌ  | Swimming           | سِبَاَحَةٌ |
| Avoidance               | حِيَادَةٌ  | Office of a butler | سِقَايَةٌ  |
| Weaving                 | حِيَاكَةٌ  | Authority          | سِيَادَةٌ  |
| Lectureship             | خِطَابَةٌ  | Ruling, politics   | سِيَاسَةٌ  |
| Caliphate               | خِلَافَةٌ  | Travelling         | سِيَاحَةٌ  |
| Treachery               | خِيَانَةٌ  | Accusation         | شِكَايَةٌ  |
| Sewing                  | خِيَاطَةٌ  | Dyeing             | صِبَاغَةٌ  |
| Knowledge               | دِرَايَةٌ  | Exchanging (money) | صِرَافَةٌ  |
| Prefecture              | إِمَارَةٌ  | Handcraft          | صِنَاعَةٌ  |
| Building                | بِنَايَةٌ  | Goldsmith's art    | صِبَاغَةٌ  |
| Merchandise             | فِجَارَةٌ  | Hospitality        | ضِيَاْفَةٌ |
| Reciting                | تِلَاوَةٌ  | Worship            | عِبَادَةٌ  |
| Tribute                 | جِبَايَةٌ  | Porterage          | عِتَالَةٌ  |
| Surgery                 | جِرَاحَةٌ  | Divination         | عِرَافَةٌ  |
| Ploughing               | جِرَائَةٌ  | Perfumery (trade)  | عِطَارَةٌ  |
| Guarding                | جِرَاسَةٌ  | Building           | عِمَارَةٌ  |
| Relating                | حِكَايَةٌ  | Providence, care   | عِنَايَةٌ  |
| Indication, auctioneer- |            | Husbandry          | فِلَاحَةٌ  |
| ing                     | دِلَالَةٌ  | Reading            | قِرَاءَةٌ  |
| Headship                | رِدَّاسَةٌ | Leading            | قِيَادَةٌ  |
| Suckling                | رِضَاعَةٌ  | Writing            | كِتَابَةٌ  |
| Agriculture             | زِرَاعَةٌ  | Sufficiency        | كِفَايَةٌ  |



|                  |          |              |          |
|------------------|----------|--------------|----------|
| Navigation       | مِلَاحَة | Protection   | وَقَايَة |
| Carpentry        | نِجَارَة | Stewardship  | وَكَايَة |
| Guidance         | هِدَايَة | Birth        | وِلَادَة |
| Inheritance      | وَرَاثَة | Governorship | وِلَايَة |
| Office of Vizier | وِزَارَة |              |          |

## 12. فَعَالَة

|               |          |                        |          |
|---------------|----------|------------------------|----------|
| Safety        | سَلَامَة | Honour, regard         | كِرَامَة |
| Kindness      | سَبَاحَة | Foulmouthedness        | بَذَاءَة |
| Courage       | شَجَاعَة | Skilfulness            | بِرَاعَة |
| Misery        | شَقَاوَة | Simplicity             | بَسَاطَة |
| Testimony     | شَهَادَة | Kindness, cheerfulness | بَشَاشَة |
| Chivalry      | شَهَامَة | Stupidity              | بَلَادَة |
| Friendliness  | صَدَاقَة | Cowardice              | جَبَانَة |
| Hardness      | صَلَابَة | Boldness               | جَسَارَة |
| Cheerfulness  | طَلَقَة  | Ignorance              | جَهَالَة |
| Purity        | طَهَارَة | Youthfulness           | حَدَاثَة |
| Comeliness    | ظَرِافَة | Skilfulness            | حَدَاقَة |
| Freshness     | غَضَاصَة | Sweetness              | حَلَاوَة |
| Stupidity     | غَبَاوَة | Foolishness            | حَمَاقَة |
| Vileness      | قَبَاحَة | Depravity              | خَبَائَة |
| Holiness      | قَدَاسَة | Losing                 | خَسَارَة |
| Contentedness | قَنَاعَة | Delicacy               | دِمَاقَة |
| Denseness     | كَثَافَة | Meaness, badness       | رَدَاءَة |

|                   |           |             |          |
|-------------------|-----------|-------------|----------|
| Happiness         | سَعَادَة  | Vigilance   | نَبَاهَة |
| Easiness of style | سَلَا سَة | Repentance  | نَدَامَة |
| Stability         | مَثَانَة  | Cleanliness | نَظَافَة |
| Inaccessibility   | مَنَاعَة  | Innocency   | نَقَاوَة |
| Skilfulness       | مَهَارَة  | Meekness    | وَدَاعَة |

## 13. فَعَالِيَة

|             |            |             |            |
|-------------|------------|-------------|------------|
| Depravity   | خَبَائِثَة | Openly      | عَلَانِيَة |
| Suitability | صَلَاحِيَة | Skilfulness | فَرَاهِيَة |
| Obedience   | طَوَاعِيَة | Hating      | كَرَاهِيَة |
| Madness     | عَنَاهِيَة | Purity      | نَزَاهِيَة |

## 14. فُعَال

|                     |         |                |         |
|---------------------|---------|----------------|---------|
| Weeping             | بُكَاء  | Cough          | سُعَال  |
| Singing to camels   | حُدَاء  | Consumption    | سُلَال  |
| Bellowing           | خُورَار | Headache       | ضَدَاع  |
| Choking, diphtheria | خُنَاق  | Crying         | ضَرَاح  |
| Praying             | دُعَاء  | Shouting       | صِيَاح  |
| Giddiness           | دُورَار | Sneezing       | عُطَاس  |
| Bleeding (nose)     | رُعَاف  | Hiccough, gasp | فُوقَاق |
| Grumbling (camel)   | رُعَاء  | Great thirst   | لُهَات  |
| Hard breathing      | زُحَار  | Mewing         | مُؤَاء  |
| Chatter (monkey)    | زُقَاح  | Crowing        | نُعَاب  |
| Rheum               | زُكَام  | Drowsiness     | نُعَاس  |
| Asking              | سُؤَال  | Lamentation    | نُورَاح |

|          |         |                 |         |
|----------|---------|-----------------|---------|
| Shouting | هُتَافٌ | Passionate love | هُيَامٌ |
| Leanness | هُزَالٌ |                 |         |

## 15. فَعَالٌ

|                       |         |                       |         |
|-----------------------|---------|-----------------------|---------|
| Affliction            | بَلَاءٌ | Generosity            | سَخَاءٌ |
| Splendour             | بَهَاءٌ | Permission            | سَمَاحٌ |
| Firmness              | ثَبَاتٌ | Misery                | شَقَاءٌ |
| Reward                | جَزَاءٌ | Straying              | ضَلَالٌ |
| Dryness               | جَفَاءٌ | Costliness            | غَلَاءٌ |
| Clearness, emigration | جَلَاءٌ | Corruption            | فَسَادٌ |
| Beauty                | جَمَالٌ | Vanishing             | فَنَاءٌ |
| Crossing, license     | جَوَازٌ | Lapse, missing        | فَوَاتٌ |
| Reaping               | حَصَادٌ | Fatigue               | كَلالٌ  |
| Destruction           | خَرَابٌ | Perfection            | كَمَالٌ |
| Losing                | خَسَارٌ | Success               | نَجَاحٌ |
| Secrecy               | خَفَاءٌ | Growing               | نَمَاءٌ |
| Abundance             | رَخَاءٌ | Fulfilment of promise | وَفَاءٌ |

## 16. فَعَالٌ

|                   |         |                 |         |
|-------------------|---------|-----------------|---------|
| Shouting          | صِيَاحٌ | Returning       | إِيَابٌ |
| Light, brightness | ضِيَاءٌ | Veiling         | حِجَابٌ |
| Fleeing           | فِرَارٌ | Counting        | حِسَابٌ |
| Rising, standing  | قِيَامٌ | Conclusion, end | خِتَامٌ |
| Meeting, finding  | لِقَاءٌ | Nursing         | رِضَاعٌ |
| Shunning          | نِفَارٌ | Healing         | شِفَاءٌ |
| Refusing          | إِبَاءٌ | Fasting         | صِيَامٌ |

## 17. فَعِيلٌ

|                        |            |                        |           |
|------------------------|------------|------------------------|-----------|
| Sighing                | رَفِيبٌ    | Departure              | رَحِيلٌ   |
| Snoring                | شَدَاخِيرٌ | Roaring                | رَهْدِيرٌ |
| Braying, hiccough      | شَهِيْقٌ   | Neighing               | صَهِيلٌ   |
| Trumpeting (elephant)  | صَتِيٌّ    | Buzzing                | طَنِينٌ   |
| Shouting               | صَرِيْحٌ   | Clamour, roaring (sea) | عَاجِيْحٌ |
| Gnashing               | صَرِيرٌ    | Hissing                | فَحِيْحٌ  |
| Creaking               | صَرِيْفٌ   | Praising               | مَدِيْحٌ  |
| Whistling              | صَفِيرٌ    | Barking                | نَبِيْحٌ  |
| Noise of boiling water | أَزِيْرٌ   | Lamentation            | ذَكِيْبٌ  |
| Groaning               | أَنِينٌ    | Crowing                | نَعِيْبٌ  |
| Rustling (leaves)      | حَفِيْفٌ   | Braying                | نَهِيْقٌ  |
| Longing                | حَنِينٌ    | Roaring                | هَدِيرٌ   |
| Murmur (water)         | خَرِيرٌ    | Sound of thunder       | هَزِيْمٌ  |
| Creeping               | دَبِيْبٌ   |                        |           |

## 18. فَعِيْلَةٌ

|              |            |               |            |
|--------------|------------|---------------|------------|
| Estrangement | قَطِيْعَةٌ | Scorn, zeal   | حَمِيَّةٌ  |
| Advice       | نَصِيْكَةٌ | Youthfulness  | شَبِيْبَةٌ |
| Supplication | وَسِيْلَةٌ | Accusation    | شَكِيَّةٌ  |
| Slander      | رَقِيْعَةٌ | Determination | عَزِيْمَةٌ |
| Prevention   | حَرِيْمَةٌ | Plunder       | غَنِيْمَةٌ |
| Rancour      | حَقِيْدَةٌ | Judgment      | قَضِيَّةٌ  |

## 19. فَعَالَةٌ

|            |           |            |             |
|------------|-----------|------------|-------------|
| Request    | بُغَايَةٌ | Suddenness | فُجْجَاءَةٌ |
| Completion | تُمَامَةٌ | Tarrying   | لُبَّائَةٌ  |

## 20. فَاعِلَةٌ

|                   |           |        |           |
|-------------------|-----------|--------|-----------|
| Disclosing        | كَاشِفَةٌ | Order  | أَمْرَةٌ  |
| Development       | نَاشِئَةٌ | Result | عَاقِبَةٌ |
| Preserving, watch | وَاقِيَةٌ | Siesta | قَائِلَةٌ |

## 21. فُعْلَةٌ

|                 |          |                        |            |
|-----------------|----------|------------------------|------------|
| Scoffing        | سُخْرَةٌ | Experience             | خُبْرَةٌ   |
| Haste           | سُرْعَةٌ | Preaching              | خُطْبَةٌ   |
| Brownish        | سُمْرَةٌ | Pace                   | خُطْوَةٌ   |
| Auburn          | شُقْرَةٌ | Sight                  | رُؤْيَةٌ   |
| Companionship   | صُكْبَةٌ | Roughness              | غُلْظَةٌ   |
| Nakedness       | عُرْيَةٌ | Power                  | قُدْرَةٌ   |
| Emigration      | غُرْبَةٌ | Freshness, consolation | قُرَّةٌ    |
| Desire, request | بُغْيَةٌ | Power                  | قُوَّةٌ    |
| Boldness        | جُرْأَةٌ | Grammatical error      | هُجْبَنَةٌ |
| Excellence      | جُودَةٌ  |                        |            |

## 22. فَعْلَةٌ

|                    |          |             |          |
|--------------------|----------|-------------|----------|
| Power              | سَطْوَةٌ | Return      | عَوْدَةٌ |
| Distress, ill-luck | شَقْوَةٌ | Inattention | غَفْلَةٌ |
| Attack             | صَوْلَةٌ | Absence     | غَيْبَةٌ |

|                |          |             |         |
|----------------|----------|-------------|---------|
| Zeal, jealousy | غَيْرَة  | Failure     | خَيْبَة |
| Surprise       | فَجَاءَة | Invitation  | دَعْوَة |
| Hardness       | قَسْوَة  | Mercy       | رَأْفَة |
| Sorrow         | كَأَبَة  | Mercy       | رَحْمَة |
| Abundance      | كَثْرَة  | Desire      | رَغْبَة |
| Curse          | لَعْنَة  | Dread       | رَهْبَة |
| Rheum          | نَزْلَة  | Slipping    | رَلَّة  |
| Ampleness      | بَسْطَة  | Growth      | نَشَاة  |
| Repentance     | تَوْبَة  | Revenge     | نَقْمَة |
| Perplexity     | حَيْرَة  | Slip, error | هَفْوَة |
| Fear           | خَشْيَة  | Fear        | هَيْبَة |
| Solitude       | خَلْوَة  | Old age     | شَيْبَة |

## 28. فَعْلَة

|                                      |         |                   |         |
|--------------------------------------|---------|-------------------|---------|
| Chastity                             | عِفَّة  | Relationship      | نِسْبَة |
| Living                               | عَيْشَة | Luxuriousness     | نِعْمَة |
| Might                                | غَيْرَة | Intention         | نِيَّة  |
| Desire, blessedness                  | غِبْطَة | Supremacy, empire | إِمْرَة |
| Seduction                            | فِتْنَة | Impetuosity       | حِدَّة  |
| Prudence                             | فُطْنَة | Wisdom            | حِكْمَة |
| Littleness, rarity                   | قِلَّة  | Experience        | خِبْرَة |
| Writing                              | كِتَبَة | Service           | خِدْمَة |
| Praising                             | مَدْحَة | Betrothal         | خِطْبَة |
| Bounty, (reproachful<br>for favours) | مَنَّة  | Lightness         | خِفَّة  |
|                                      |         | Fear              | خَيْفَة |



|                      |          |                     |          |
|----------------------|----------|---------------------|----------|
| Dignity              | رَفْعَةٌ | Partnership, commu- |          |
| Tenderness, thinness | رِقَّةٌ  | nion                | شَرِكَةٌ |
| Conduct              | سِيرَةٌ  | Soundness           | صِحَّةٌ  |

## 24. فَعَلَةٌ

|                    |          |            |          |
|--------------------|----------|------------|----------|
| Pity               | شَفَقَةٌ | Security   | أَمْنَةٌ |
| Haste              | عَجَلَةٌ | Affability | أَنَسَةٌ |
| Victory            | غَلَبَةٌ | Contempt   | أَذْفَةٌ |
| Possessing, talent | مَلَكَهْ | Motion     | حَرَكَةٌ |
| Deliverance        | نَجَاةٌ  | Life       | حَيَاةٌ  |

## 25. فُعْلَى

|             |         |            |         |
|-------------|---------|------------|---------|
| Nearness    | زُلْفَى | Misfortune | بُؤْسٌ  |
| Dwelling    | سُكْنَى | Vision     | رُؤْيَا |
| Blessedness | طُوبَى  | Returning  | رُجْعَى |
| Encounter   | لُقْيَا | Desire     | رُغْبَى |

## 26. فَعْلَى

|            |         |                      |         |
|------------|---------|----------------------|---------|
| Claim      | دَعْوَى | Confidential whisper | نَجْوَى |
| Accusation | شَكْوَى |                      |         |

## 27. فِعْلَى

|             |         |
|-------------|---------|
| Remembrance | ذِكْرَى |
|-------------|---------|

## 28. فُعْلَان

|                      |          |                        |          |
|----------------------|----------|------------------------|----------|
| Reproof              | عُتْبَان | Reckoning              | حُسْبَان |
| Forgiveness          | غُفْرَان | Sweetness              | حُلْوَان |
| Losing               | فُقْدَان | Carrying               | حُمْلَان |
| Reading              | قُرْآن   | Losing                 | خُسْرَان |
| Approaching          | قُرْبَان | Over-weighing          | رُجْحَان |
| Denying, ingratitude | كُفْرَان | Consolation            | سُلْوَان |
| Decrease             | نُقْصَان | Thankfulness           | شُكْرَان |
| Vanity               | بُطْلَان | Overflowing, injustice | طُغْيَان |
| Slander              | بُهْتَان |                        |          |

## 29. فِعْلَان

|                       |          |                     |          |
|-----------------------|----------|---------------------|----------|
| Forgetting            | نِسْيَان | Knowing             | عِرْفَان |
| Forsaking             | هَجْرَان | Losing              | فِقْدَان |
| Finding               | وَجْدَان | Returning, arriving | فِدْمَان |
| Coming                | إِتْيَان | Concealing          | كِتْمَان |
| Depriving, forbidding | حِرْمَان |                     |          |

## 30. فَعْلَان

|                   |           |                   |           |
|-------------------|-----------|-------------------|-----------|
| Flowing           | سَيْلَان  | Shining           | لَمْعَان  |
| Rambling, flowing | طَوَفَان  | Inclination       | مَيْلَان  |
| Flying            | طَيَّرَان | Raving            | هَذْيَان  |
| Boiling           | غَلْيَان  | Agitation, commo- |           |
| Boiling           | فَوْرَان  | tion              | هَيِّجَان |
| Overflowing       | فَيْضَان  | Longing           | تَوَقُّان |

|           |           |              |          |
|-----------|-----------|--------------|----------|
| Wandering | تَيَّهَان | Palpitation  | خَفَقَان |
| Agitation | ثَوْرَان  | Revolving    | دَوْرَان |
| Running   | جَرَيَان  | Trembling    | رَجَفَان |
| Wandering | جَوَلَان  | Passing away | زَوَلَان |
| Avoidance | حَيْدَان  |              |          |

## 31. تَفْعَال

|                    |           |                  |          |
|--------------------|-----------|------------------|----------|
| Croaking           | تَنْعَاب  | Sprinkling       | تَرَشَاش |
| Paying ready money | تَنْقَاد  | Sipping, sucking | تَرَشَاف |
| Sleep              | تَهَجَّاع | Asking           | تَسْأَل  |
| Remembrance        | تَذْكَار  | Pouring          | تَسْكَاب |
| Departing          | تَرْحَال  |                  |          |

## 32. فَعْلُوَّة

|                |            |                     |             |
|----------------|------------|---------------------|-------------|
| Senility       | شَيْخُوَّة | Perishableness      | بَيْدُوَّة  |
| Spreading news | شَيْغُوَّة | Separation, remote- |             |
| Becoming       | صَيْرُوَّة | ness                | بَيِّنُوَّة |
| Siesta         | قَيْلُوَّة | Avoidance           | حَيْدُوَّة  |
| Existence      | كَيْنُوَّة | Continuation        | دَيْمُوَّة  |
| Inclining      | مَيْلُوَّة | Deviation           | زَيْغُوَّة  |
|                |            | Lordship            | سَيْدُوَّة  |

## 33. مَفْعُول

|               |          |                  |          |
|---------------|----------|------------------|----------|
| Difficult     | مَعْسُور | Subject, placing | مَوْضُوع |
| Understanding | مَعْقُول | Promise          | مَوْعُود |
| Temptation    | مَفْتُون | Easiness         | مَيْسُور |

|          |          |           |          |
|----------|----------|-----------|----------|
| Patience | مَجْلُود | Oath      | مَكْلُوف |
| Exertion | مَجْهُود | Return    | مَرْجُوع |
| Produce  | مَكْصُول | Restoring | مَرْدُود |

## ADJECTIVES RESEMBLING THE AGENT.

## 1. فَعْل

|                   |       |                        |        |
|-------------------|-------|------------------------|--------|
| Easy              | سَهْل | Deficient, low (price) | بَخْس  |
| Clever, energetic | شَهْم | Righteous              | بَرّ   |
| Aged              | شَيْخ | Smiling                | بَشّ   |
| Difficult         | صَعْب | Firm, steady           | ثَبَّت |
| Hard              | صَلْد | Chaste (language)      | جَدَل  |
| Thick, bulky      | ضَخْم | Alive                  | حَيّ   |
| Straight, narrow  | ضَنَك | Deceiver               | خَبّ   |
| Sweet             | عَذْب | Meek                   | دَمَتْ |
| Tender, sappy     | غَضّ  | Ragged                 | رَثّ   |
| Rough             | فَظّ  | Broad                  | رَحْب  |
| Thick (beard)     | كَثّ  | Soft, flexible         | رَخَص  |
| Pure              | مَكْض | Ignoble                | رَذَل  |
| Soft, brittle     | هَشّ  | Tender                 | رَطْب  |
| Rugged            | وَعْر | Luxurious              | رَغْد  |
|                   |       | Compliant              | سَمَح  |

## 2. فِعْل

|        |       |         |       |
|--------|-------|---------|-------|
| Thin   | دِقّ  | Rude    | جِلْف |
| Filthy | رَجَس | Fertile | خِصْب |

|         |       |               |       |
|---------|-------|---------------|-------|
| Saltish | مِلْح | Pure          | صِرْف |
|         |       | Inexperienced | غَرّ  |

## 3. فَعَلْ

|          |       |            |       |
|----------|-------|------------|-------|
| Hard     | صَلْب | Pure, free | حُرّ  |
| Heedless | غَفْل | Sweet      | حُلُو |
| Bitter   | مُرّ  | Mean       | دُون  |
| Sour     | مُزّ  | Hot        | سُخْن |

## 4. فَعَلْ

|          |       |       |       |
|----------|-------|-------|-------|
| Handsome | حَسَن | Hero  | بَطَل |
| Filthy   | نَجَس | Youth | حَدَث |

## 5. فَعِلْ

|                |        |             |        |
|----------------|--------|-------------|--------|
| Easy, (style)  | سَلِس  | Fragrant    | أَرِج  |
| Unsociable     | شَرِس  | Liar        | أَفَك  |
| Greedy         | شَرِه  | Ugly        | بَشِيع |
| Harsh tempered | شَكِس  | Glutton     | بَطْن  |
| Merry          | طَرِب  | Joyful      | بَهْج  |
| Thirsty        | طَبِيّ | Fatigued    | تَعِب  |
| Difficult      | عَسِر  | Unfortunate | تَعِس  |
| Fragrant       | عَطِر  | Tasteless   | تَفِه  |
| Turbid         | عَكِر  | Rough       | خَشِن  |
| Blind          | عَمِ   | Dangerous   | خَطِر  |
| Drowned        | عَرِق  | Defiled     | دَنِس  |

|               |         |                |        |
|---------------|---------|----------------|--------|
| Eloquent      | لَسِين  | Angry          | غَضِبَ |
| Gluttonous    | لَهُم   | Joyous         | فَرِحَ |
| Rotten (eggs) | مَذِر   | Timid          | فَرِقَ |
| Filthy        | فَتَجَس | Filthy         | قَذِرَ |
| Glutton       | فَهُم   | Fragile        | قَصِمَ |
| Timorous      | وَجِلَ  | Troubled       | قَلِقَ |
| Pious         | وَرَعَ  | Despairing     | قَنِطَ |
| Dirty         | وَسِخَ  | Broken-hearted | كَتِبَ |
| Brazenfaced   | وَقِيحَ | Grieved        | كَيْدَ |
|               |         | Viscous        | لَزَجَ |

## 6. أَفْعَلَ

|                                         |          |                        |          |
|-----------------------------------------|----------|------------------------|----------|
| Dumb                                    | أَخْرَسَ | Bobtailed              | أَبْتَرَ |
| Green                                   | أَخْضَرَ | Hoarse                 | أَبْحَمَ |
| Having one eye blue,<br>the other black | أَخْيفَ  | Piebald                | أَبْرَشَ |
| Having eyes black and<br>wide apart     | أَدْعَجَ | Leper                  | أَبْرَصَ |
| Blackish                                | أَدَكَنَ | Spotted                | أَبْقَعَ |
| Having a long chin                      | أَدَقَنَ | White                  | أَبْيَضَ |
| Spotted                                 | أَرْقَطَ | Bare (face, field)     | أَجْرَدَ |
| Having bad eyes                         | أَرْمَدَ | Shapely contour (neck) | أَجِيدَ  |
| Blue                                    | أَزْرَقَ | Humpbacked             | أَحْدَبَ |
| Brownish, tawny                         | أَسْمَرَ | Short-sighted          | أَحْصَرَ |
| Black                                   | أَسْوَدَ | Red                    | أَحْمَرَ |
|                                         |          | Fool                   | أَحْمَقَ |
|                                         |          | Squint-eyed            | أَحْوَلَ |



|                        |          |                       |          |
|------------------------|----------|-----------------------|----------|
| Crooked                | أَعْوَجَ | Having the tip of the |          |
| One-eyed               | أَعْوَرَ | nose cut off          | أَشْرَمَ |
| Dust-coloured          | أَغْبَرَ | Hairy                 | أَشْعَرَ |
| Blaze-faced            | أَغْرَ   | Auburn                | أَشْقَرَ |
| Flat-nosed             | أَفْطَسَ | Stiff-handed          | أَشَدَّ  |
| Having the teeth apart | أَفْلَحَ | Hoary                 | أَشْمَطَ |
| Under lip chapped      | أَفْلَحَ | Gray                  | أَشْهَبَ |
| Bald-headed            | أَفْرَعَ | Red-tinged, (pupil)   | أَشْهَلَ |
| Hook-nosed             | أَقْنَى  | Yellow                | أَصْفَرَ |
| Having brown eyelids   | أَكْثَلَ | Partially bald        | أَصْلَعَ |
| Born blind             | أَكْبَهَ | Deaf                  | أَصَمَّ  |
| Long-bearded           | أَلْحَى  | Deaf                  | أَطْرَشَ |
| Red-lipped             | أَلْعَسَ | Lame                  | أَعْرَجَ |
| Blue-eyed, gray-eyed   | أَمْلَحَ | Left-handed           | أَعْسَرَ |
| Eyes wide apart        | أَنْجَلَ | Night-blind           | أَعْشَى  |
| Clipped (bird's tail)  | أَهْلَبَ | Tongue-tied           | أَعْقَدَ |
| Hasty                  | أَهْوَجَ | Hare-lipped           | أَعْلَمَ |
| Slender                | أَهْيَفَ | Blar-eyed             | أَعْمَشَ |
| Right-handed           | أَيْمَنَ | Blind                 | أَعْمَى  |
|                        |          | Long-necked           | أَعْنَقَ |

## 7. فَعِيلٌ

|          |         |           |         |
|----------|---------|-----------|---------|
| Evil     | سَيِّءٌ | Clear     | بَيِّنٌ |
| Narrow   | ضَيِّقٌ | Good      | جَيِّدٌ |
| Pleasant | طَيِّبٌ | Religious | دَيِّنٌ |

|       |        |             |        |
|-------|--------|-------------|--------|
| Dying | مَيِّت | Intelligent | كَيِّس |
|       |        | Soft        | لَيِّن |

## 8. فَعِيل

|             |        |                  |        |
|-------------|--------|------------------|--------|
| Merciful    | رَحِيم | Polite, learned  | أَدِيب |
| Evil, bad   | رَدِي  | Faithful         | أَمِين |
| Companion   | رَفِيق | Stingy           | بَخِيل |
| Weak-minded | سَخِيف | Slow             | بَطِيء |
| Swift       | سَرِيع | Far              | بَعِيد |
| Happy       | سَعِيد | Stupid           | بَلِيد |
| Foolish     | سَفِيه | Thick            | ثَخِين |
| Safe        | سَلِيم | New              | جَدِيد |
| Stout       | سَعِين | Worthy           | جَدِير |
| Strong      | شَدِيد | Important, large | جَسِيم |
| Noble       | شَرِيف | Great, glorious  | جَلِيل |
| Ugly        | شَنِيع | Sharp            | حَدِيد |
| Sound       | صَكِيح | Greedy           | حَرِيص |
| Small       | صَغِير | Sorrowful        | حَزِين |
| Weak        | ضَعِيف | Wise             | حَكِيم |
| Long        | طَوِيل | Vile             | خَسِيس |
| Beautiful   | ظَرِيف | Light, agile     | خَفِيف |
| Old         | عَتِيق | Fine, thin       | نَقِيق |
| Wonderful   | عَجِيب | Low              | دَنِيء |

|                |        |                   |        |
|----------------|--------|-------------------|--------|
| Much, many     | كَثِير | Broad             | عَرِيض |
| Dense          | كَثِيف | Dear, rare        | عَرِيز |
| Generous       | كَرِيم | Of high rank      | عَلِيّ |
| Base           | لَئِيم | Deep              | عَبِيق |
| Kind           | لَطِيف | Common, universal | عَمِيم |
| Glorious       | مَجِيد | Strange           | غَرِيب |
| Good, handsome | مَلِيح | Thick, coarse     | غَلِيظ |
| Lean           | نَحِيف | Rich              | غَنِيّ |
| Clean          | نَظِيف | Poor              | فَقِير |
| Valuable       | نَفِيس | Old               | قَدِيم |
| Honourable     | وَجِيه | Near              | قَرِيب |
| Humble         | وَضِيع | Short             | قَصِير |
| Orphan         | يَتِيم | Strong            | قَوِيّ |
|                |        | Great             | كَبِير |

## 9. فاعِل

|                 |        |                 |        |
|-----------------|--------|-----------------|--------|
| Firm            | ثَابِت | Putrid, (water) | أَجِن  |
| Ignorant        | جَاهِل | Stagnant        | أَسِن  |
| Clever          | حَادِق | Cold            | بَارِد |
| Hot             | حَارّ  | Righteous       | بَارّ  |
| Resolute        | حَازِم | Brave           | بَاسِل |
| Intensely black | حَالِك | Vain            | بَاطِل |
| Sour            | حَامِض | Oppressing      | بَاغٍ  |

|                 |         |                       |        |
|-----------------|---------|-----------------------|--------|
| Barren          | عَاْقِر | Special               | خَاصّ  |
| Wise            | عَاْقِل | Traitor               | خَاذِن |
| Learned         | عَالِم  | Sinner                | خَاطِي |
| High            | عَالِي  | Domesticated(animals) | دَاجِن |
| General, common | عَامّ   | Continuous            | دَائِم |
| Lukewarm        | فَاتِر  | Simpleton             | سَادِج |
| Wicked          | فَاجِر  | Thief                 | سَارِق |
| Hard            | قَاسٍ   | Sound                 | سَالِم |
| Cutting (sword) | قَاطِع  | High                  | سَام   |
| Liar            | كَاذِب  | Sharp sword           | صَارِم |
| Infidel         | كَافِر  | Clear                 | صَافٍ  |
| Perfect         | كَامِل  | Carnivorous           | صَارٍ  |
| Skilful         | مَاهِر  | Pure                  | طَاهِر |
| Imperfect       | نَاقِص  | Just                  | عَادِل |
| Complete        | وَافٍ   | Naked                 | عَارٍ  |

## 10. فَعْلَان

|                   |          |           |          |
|-------------------|----------|-----------|----------|
| Satisfied, (food) | شَبْعَان | Hungry    | جَوْعَان |
| Lewd              | شَهْوَان | Grieved   | حَزْنَان |
| Thirsty           | صَدْيَان | Perplexed | حَيْرَان |
| Thirsty           | ظَمْآن   | Ashamed   | خَجَلَان |
| Perspiring        | عَرْقَان | Abashed   | خَزْيَان |
| Thirsty           | عَطْشَان | Watered   | رَيّان   |
| Impotent          | عَيّان   | Drunken   | سَكّان   |

|                   |           |          |           |
|-------------------|-----------|----------|-----------|
| Repentant         | نَدَمَان  | Choked   | غَضَّان   |
| Forgetful         | نَسِيَان  | Angry    | غَضَبَان  |
| Giddy (from wine) | نَشْوَان  | Heedless | غَفْلَان  |
| Sleepy            | نَعْسَان  | Joyous   | فَرَحَان  |
| Fearful           | هَيِّبَان | Cripple  | كَسَّحَان |
| Slumbering        | وَسْنَان  | Grieved  | لَهْفَان  |
| Dejected          | وَلَهَان  | Full     | مَلَان    |

## 11. فَعَال

|                |        |         |        |
|----------------|--------|---------|--------|
| Chaste (woman) | حَصَان | Coward  | جَبَان |
| Incurable      | عَيَاء | Liberal | جَوَاد |

## 12. فُعَال

|               |        |               |                   |
|---------------|--------|---------------|-------------------|
| Incurable     | عُضَال | Brackish      | أُجَاج            |
| Incurable     | عُقَام | Fatal         | دُعَاف and زُعَاف |
| Sweet (water) | فُرَات | Clear (water) | زُلَال            |
| Magnanimous   | هُمَام | Brave         | شُجَاع            |
|               |        | Bulky         | صُخَام            |

## MEASURES OF THE NOUNS OF EXCESS.

|                |              |
|----------------|--------------|
| 9 مَفْعِيلٌ    | 1 فَعَّالٌ   |
| 10 فَاعِلَةٌ   | 2 فَعَّالَةٌ |
| 11 فَعُولَةٌ   | 3 فِعِيلٌ    |
| 12 فُعْلٌ      | 4 فَعُولٌ    |
| 13 فُعْلٌ      | 5 فِعِيلٌ    |
| 14 فُعُولٌ     | 6 فَاعُولٌ   |
| 15 تَفْعَالٌ   | 7 فُعْلَةٌ   |
| 16 تَفْعَالَةٌ | 8 مَفْعَالٌ  |

## NOUNS OF EXCESS. صِبِغُ الْمَبَالِغَةِ

## 1. فَعَّالٌ

|                |          |                 |          |
|----------------|----------|-----------------|----------|
| Learned        | عَلَّامٌ | Penitent        | أَوَّابٌ |
| Perfidious     | غَدَّارٌ | Smiling         | بَسَّامٌ |
| Deceiver       | غَرَّارٌ | Weeper          | بَكَّاءٌ |
| Impostor       | غَشَّاشٌ | Forgiving (God) | فَوَّابٌ |
| Pardoner (God) | غَفَّارٌ | Giant           | جَبَّارٌ |
| Bountiful      | فَيَّاضٌ | Traveller       | جَوَّالٌ |
| Murderer       | قَتَّالٌ | Traitor         | خَوَّانٌ |
| Subduer (God)  | قَهَّارٌ | Fosterer (God)  | رَزَّاقٌ |
| Liar           | كَذَّابٌ | Thief           | سَرَّاقٌ |
| Benefactor     | مَنَّانٌ | Bloodthirsty    | سَفَّاکٌ |
| Timid          | هَيَّابٌ | Drunkard        | شَرَّابٌ |
| Giver          | وَهَّابٌ | One who fasts   | صَوَّامٌ |
|                |          | Covetous        | طَمَّاعٌ |



## فَعَالَةٌ 2.

|             |            |           |            |
|-------------|------------|-----------|------------|
| Learned     | عَلَّامَةٌ | Traveller | جَوَّالَةٌ |
| Genealogist | نَسَابَةٌ  | Traveller | رَحَّالَةٌ |
| Timid       | هَيَّابَةٌ | Clamorous | صَخَّابَةٌ |

## فَعِيلٌ 3.

|           |         |          |         |
|-----------|---------|----------|---------|
| Veracious | صَدِيقٌ | Silent   | سَكِيتٌ |
| Holy      | قَدِيسٌ | Tippler  | سَكِيرٌ |
| Playful   | لَعِيبٌ | Drunkard | شَرِيبٌ |
|           |         | Wicked   | شَرِيرٌ |

## فَعُولٌ 4.

|              |          |           |         |
|--------------|----------|-----------|---------|
| Chaste       | طَهُورٌ  | Brave     | جَسُورٌ |
| Hasty        | عَجُولٌ  | Ignorant  | جَهُولٌ |
| Forgiving    | غَفُورٌ  | Merciful  | رَحُومٌ |
| Zealous      | غَيُورٌ  | Silent    | سَكُوتٌ |
| Fearful      | هَيُّوبٌ | Thankful  | شَكُورٌ |
| Affectionate | وَدُودٌ  | Veracious | صَدُوقٌ |

## فَعِيلٌ 5.

|               |         |                  |         |
|---------------|---------|------------------|---------|
| Sorrowful     | كَثِيبٌ | Merciful         | رَحِيمٌ |
| Thick (beard) | كَثِيبٌ | Of close texture | صَفِيقٌ |
|               |         | Omniscient       | عَلِيمٌ |

## فَاعُولٌ 6.

|            |          |        |          |
|------------|----------|--------|----------|
| Very timid | فَارُوقٌ | Silent | سَاكُوتٌ |
|------------|----------|--------|----------|

## 7. فَعْلَةٌ

|            |          |          |          |
|------------|----------|----------|----------|
| Jolly      | لُعْبَةٌ | Wrestler | صُرْعَةٌ |
| Censorious | لُومَةٌ  | Laugher  | ضَحْكَةٌ |
| Sleepy     | نَوْمَةٌ | Sweater  | عُرْقَةٌ |
| Mocker     | هَزْأَةٌ | Timid    | فُرْعَةٌ |

## 8. مِفْعَالٌ

|            |           |             |            |
|------------|-----------|-------------|------------|
| Liberal    | مِعْطَاءٌ | Spendthrift | مِتَلَّافٌ |
| Daring     | مِقْدَامٌ | Delusive    | مِخْلَافٌ  |
| Loquacious | مِكْثَارٌ | Docile      | مِدْعَانٌ  |
| Lazy       | مِكْسَالٌ | Hospitable  | مِضْيَافٌ  |
| Bountiful  | مِهْدَامٌ | Covetous    | مِطْمَاعٌ  |

## 9. مَفْعِيلٌ

|                |           |                 |           |
|----------------|-----------|-----------------|-----------|
| Using perfumes | مِعْطِيطٌ | Poor, destitute | مِسْكِينٌ |
|----------------|-----------|-----------------|-----------|

## 10. فَاعِلَةٌ

|               |           |             |           |
|---------------|-----------|-------------|-----------|
| Reciter       | رَاوِيَةٌ | Treacherous | خَائِنَةٌ |
| Distinguished | نَابِغَةٌ | Crafty      | دَاهِيَةٌ |

## 11. فَعُولَةٌ

|          |             |                |            |
|----------|-------------|----------------|------------|
| Grateful | مَنْوَنَةٌ  | Timid          | فَرُّوقَةٌ |
| Timid    | هَيْبُونَةٌ | Liar           | كَذُّوبَةٌ |
|          |             | Disgusted with | مَلُوءَةٌ  |

## 12. فُعْلٌ

|      |        |          |        |
|------|--------|----------|--------|
| Holy | قُدُسٌ | Heedless | غُفْلٌ |
|------|--------|----------|--------|

## 13. فَعْل

Changeable

فُكِّلَ

Fickle

حُوِّلَ

Deceitful

خُلِّبَ

## 14. فَعُول

Everlasting

قَيِّمٌ

Holy

قَدُّوسٌ

## 15 and 16. تَفَعَّالٌ وَتَفَعَّالَةٌ

Humorist

تَلْعَابَةٌ

Humorist

تِلْعَابٌ

Glutton

تِلْقَامٌ

## NOUNS OF INSTRUMENT. اِسْمُ الْآلَةِ

## 1. مِفْعَل

Slaking trough

مِضْوَلٌ

Needlecase

مِثْبَرٌ

Cooking-pot

مِطْبَخٌ

File

مِبرَدٌ

Spindle

مِغْرَلٌ

Lancet

مِبْضَعٌ

Bath

مِغْطَسٌ

Microscope

مِجْهَرٌ

Handle

مِقْبَضٌ

Syringe

مِكَقِنٌ

Scissors

مِقْصٌ

Awl

مِكَرَزٌ

Cutter

مِقْطَعٌ

Cannon

مِدْفَعٌ

Frying-pan

مِقْلَى

Telescope

مِرْتَبٌ

Halter

مِقْوَدٌ

Fire-brand

مِسْعَرٌ

Press, (hand or

Grindstone

مِسْنَنٌ

hydraulic)

مِكبَسٌ

Whetstone

مِشْحَدٌ

Tongs

مِلْقَطٌ

Fork

مِشْكٌ

|               |         |              |         |
|---------------|---------|--------------|---------|
| Beak          | مِنْسَر | Adze, chisel | مِنْكَت |
| Fork, kitchen | مِنْشَل | Spur         | مِنْكَس |

## 2. مِفْعَال

|                            |           |             |           |
|----------------------------|-----------|-------------|-----------|
| Telescope                  | مِنْظَار  | Needle-case | مِثْبَار  |
| Bellows                    | مِنْفَاح  | Oar         | مِجْدَاف  |
| Bird's bill                | مِنْقَار  | Plough      | مِكَرَّاث |
| Chisel                     | مِنْقَاش  | Syringe     | مِخْقَان  |
| Hand or hydraulic<br>press | مِكَبَّاس | Flute       | مِرْمَار  |
| Measure                    | مِكِيَال  | Probe       | مِصْبَار  |
| Saw                        | مِنْشَار  | Lancet      | مِشْرَاط  |
| Hoe                        | مِنْكَاش  | Lamp, torch | مِصْبَاح  |
| Iron-shod staff, spur      | مِهْمَاز  | Wooden lock | مِغْلَاق  |
| Balance                    | مِيزَان   | Key         | مِفْتَاح  |
|                            |           | Oar         | مِجْدَاف  |
|                            |           | Scissors    | مِقْرَاض  |

## 3. مِفْعَلَة

|               |           |             |           |
|---------------|-----------|-------------|-----------|
| Lathe         | مِخْرَطَة | Needle-case | مِثْبَرَة |
| Looking-glass | مِرَاة    | Censer      | مِخْدَرَة |
| Sprinkler     | مِرْشَة   | Pen-knife   | مِبرَاة   |
| Sand-sifter   | مِرْمَلَة | Spittoon    | مِتْفَلَة |
| Arrow         | مِرْمَاة  | Censer      | مِجْمَرَة |
| Fan           | مِرْوَحَة | Inkstand    | مِخْبَرَة |
| Paper ruler   | مِسطَرَة  | Pillow      | مِخْدَة   |

|                  |            |                     |           |
|------------------|------------|---------------------|-----------|
| Broom            | مِكْنَسَة  | Filter              | مِصْفَاة  |
| Flat or box iron | مِكْوَاة   | Squirt              | مِضْحَكَة |
| Press            | مِلْرَمَة  | Hand-mill           | مِطْحَنَة |
| Spoon            | مِلْعَقَة  | Mallet              | مِطْرَقَة |
| Duster           | مِمْسَكَة  | Umbrella            | مِظَلَّة  |
| Salt-cellar      | مِمْلَكَة  | Wine or olive press | مِعْصَرَة |
| Towel            | مِنْشَفَة  | Ladle               | مِغْرَفَة |
| Girdle           | مِنْطَاقَة | Pen-case            | مِقْلَمَة |

## WITH THE MEANING OF NOUN OF INSTRUMENT.

## فِعَال

|                   |        |                    |        |
|-------------------|--------|--------------------|--------|
| Shackle           | عِقَال | A woman's covering | إِزَار |
| Swaddling clothes | قِمَاط | Shoe               | حِذَاء |
| Head-veil         | قِنَاع | Girth, girdle      | حِزَام |
| Muffler           | لِثَام | Blanket            | دِثَار |
| Bridle, rein      | لِجَام | Bandage            | رِبَاط |
| Quilt             | لِحَاف | Wine-skin          | رِقَاق |
| Belt              | نِطَاق | Curtain            | سِتَار |
| Golden girdle     | وَشَاح | Bandage            | ضِمَاد |

## WITH THE MEANING OF NOUN OF INSTRUMENT.

## فِعَالَة

|         |          |            |          |
|---------|----------|------------|----------|
| Bandage | رِبَاطَة | Sword belt | حِمَالَة |
| Bandage | عِصَابَة | Support    | دِعَامَة |

|        |          |           |          |
|--------|----------|-----------|----------|
| Stick  | هَرَاوَة | Support   | عِصَاة   |
| Pillow | وَسَادَة | Suspender | عِلَاقَة |
|        |          | Turban    | عِمَامَة |

THE IRREGULAR MEASURES. مَفْعَل and مَفْعِلَة

|                  |           |            |         |
|------------------|-----------|------------|---------|
| Sieve            | مُنْخَل   | Pestle     | مُدَق   |
| Soda or soap box | مُكْرُصَة | Oil bottle | مُدْهَن |
| Antimony box     | مُكْحَلَة | Snuff-box  | مُسْعُط |

PRIMITIVE NOUNS OF INSTRUMENT.

|                    |             |                   |          |
|--------------------|-------------|-------------------|----------|
| Net                | شَبَكَة     | Needle            | إِبْرَة  |
| Drum               | طَبْل       | Double-headed axe | حِدَاة   |
| Pick-axe, hoe      | فَأْس       | Lance, spear      | حَرْبَة  |
| Trap               | فَخّ        | Bucket            | دَلْو    |
| Adze               | قَدُوم      | Wheel             | دُؤْلَاب |
| Lock               | قُفْل       | Ink-stand         | دَوَاة   |
| Pen                | قَلَم       | Lance             | رُمَح    |
| Tongs, pincers     | كَلْبَتَان  | Flint             | رِنَاد   |
| Pipe, screw        | لَوَلْب     | Lamp              | سِرَاج   |
| Catapult, ballista | مَنْجَنِيْق | Knife             | سِكِّين  |
| Razor              | مُوسَى      | Arrow             | سَهْم    |
| Yoke               | نِير        | Sword             | سَيْف    |



## PROFESSIONS AND TRADES.

## فَعَالٌ مُصَاعًا لِدَى حِرْفَةٍ

|                  |         |               |         |
|------------------|---------|---------------|---------|
| Thrasher         | دَرَّاس | Tiller        | أَكَّار |
| Auctioneer       | دَلَّال | Greengrocer   | بَقَّال |
| Oil merchant     | دَهَّان | Builder       | بِنَاء  |
| Sower            | زَرَّاع | Door-keeper   | بَوَّاب |
| Oil-dealer       | زَيَّات | Salesman      | بَيَّاع |
| Jailer           | سَجَّان | Surgeon       | جَرَّاح |
| Water carrier    | سَقَّاء | Butcher       | جَزَّار |
| Butter dealer    | سَمَّان | Shearer       | جَزَّاز |
| Beggar           | شَحَّاذ | Executioner   | جَلَّاد |
| Dyer             | صَبَّاغ | Camel-driver  | جَمَّال |
| Money changer    | صَرَّاف | Smith         | حَدَّاد |
| Sportsman        | صَيَّاد | Ploughman     | حَرَّاث |
| Cook             | طَبَّاخ | Reaper        | حَصَّاد |
| Printer          | طَبَّاع | Wood-cutter   | حَطَّاب |
| Drummer          | طَبَّال | Barber        | حَلَّاق |
| Miller           | طَحَّان | Donkey-driver | حَمَّار |
| Porter           | عَتَّال | Porter        | حَمَّال |
| Grocer, perfumer | عَطَّار | Baker         | خَبَّاز |
| Spinner          | غَزَّال | Potter        | خَزَّاف |
| Sheep owner      | غَنَّام | Tailor        | خَيَّاط |
| Miner            | فَحَّام | Horseman      | خَيَّال |
| Husbandman       | فَلَّاح | Tanner        | دَبَّاح |

|                        |         |                |         |
|------------------------|---------|----------------|---------|
| Carpenter              | نَجَّار | Butcher        | قَصَّاب |
| Sculptor, stone-       |         | Bleacher       | قَصَّار |
| dresser                | نَحَّات | Vine-dresser   | كِرَام  |
| Copper-smith           | نَكَّاس | Wheat measurer | كَيْال  |
| Carder                 | نَدَّاف | Butcher        | لَحَام  |
| Engraver, stone-cutter | نَقَّاش | Sailor         | مَلَّاح |

### MEASURES OF THE PLURAL OF PAUCITY.

أَوْزَانُ جَمْعِ الْقِلَّةِ

1 أَفْعُل

2 أَفْعَال

3 أَفْعِلَّة

4 فِعْلَةٌ

### MEASURES OF THE PLURAL OF MULTITUDE

أَوْزَانُ جَمْعِ الْكَثَرَةِ

19 فُعْلَاءَ

20 أَفْعِلَاءَ

21 فُعْلَانُ

22 فِعْلَانُ

23 فَعَالِي

24 فُعَالِي

25 فَعَالِي

26 فُعَالِي

10 فِعَالُ

11 فِعَالَةٌ

12 فُعُولُ

13 فُعُولَةٌ

14 فَعَلِي

15 فِعَلِي

16 فَعِيلُ

17 فُعُلُ

18 فُعَالُ

1 فَعْلُ

2 فُعْلُ

3 فَعْلُ

4 فُعْلُ

5 فِعْلُ

6 فُعْلُ

7 فَعْلَةٌ

8 فُعْلَةٌ

9 فَعْلَةٌ

جَمْعُ الْقَلَّةِ. PLURAL OF PAUCITY.

1. أَفْعُلْ

|             |          |         |              |          |         |
|-------------|----------|---------|--------------|----------|---------|
| Slave       | عَبْدٌ   | عَبْدٌ  | Sea          | أَبْخَرٌ | بَخَرٌ  |
| Time, age   | أَعْصُرٌ | عَصْرٌ  | Eyelid       | أَجْفُنٌ | جَفْنٌ  |
| She-goat    | أَعْزُرٌ | عَزْرٌ  | Letters (al- |          |         |
| Eye         | أَعْيُنٌ | عَيْنٌ  | phabet       | أَحْرَفٌ | حَرَفٌ  |
| Farthing    | أَفْلَسٌ | فَلَسٌ  | Breast-plate | أَذْرُعٌ | دِرْعٌ  |
| Cup         | أَكُوسٌ  | كَاسٌ   | Bucket       | أَذَلٌ   | دَلُوٌ  |
| Sheep, ram  | أَكْبَشٌ | كَبَشٌ  | Tears        | أَدَمْعٌ | دَمْعٌ  |
| Palm of the |          |         | House        | أَدُورٌ  | دَارٌ   |
| hand        | أَكْفٌ   | كَفٌ    | Cubit        | أَذْرُعٌ | ذِرَاعٌ |
| Tongue      | أَلْسُنٌ | لِسَانٌ | Head         | أَرُوسٌ  | رَأْسٌ  |
| Star        | أَنْجَمٌ | نَجْمٌ  | Spring-camp  | أَرْبَعٌ | رَبْعٌ  |
| Eagle       | أَنْسَرٌ | نَسْرٌ  | Foot         | أَرْجُلٌ | رِجْلٌ  |
| Soul        | أَنْفُسٌ | نَفْسٌ  | Line         | أَسْطَرٌ | سَطَرٌ  |
| Tiger       | أَنْمِرٌ | نَمِرٌ  | Lot, share   | أَسْهَمٌ | سَهْمٌ  |
| River       | أَنْهَرٌ | نَهْرٌ  | Mouth        | أَشْهَرٌ | شَهْرٌ  |
| Face, page  | أَوْجُهٌ | وَجْهٌ  | Rib          | أَضْلَعٌ | ضِلْعٌ  |
| Hand        | أَيْدٍ   | يَدٌ    | Fawn         | أَظْبٍ   | ظَبِيٌّ |
|             |          |         | Back         | أَظْهَرٌ | ظَهْرٌ  |

2. أَفْعَالٌ

|                |        |        |        |        |        |
|----------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| Ruins, traces  | آثَارٌ | أَثَرٌ | Camel  | آبَالٌ | إِبِلٌ |
| Appointed time | آجَالٌ | أَجَلٌ | Father | آبَاءٌ | أَبٌ   |

|                |          |       |               |          |         |
|----------------|----------|-------|---------------|----------|---------|
| Eyelid         | أَجْفَان | جَفْن | Sunday        | آحَاد    | أَحَد   |
| Generation     | أَجْيَال | جَيْد | Ear           | آذَان    | أُذُن   |
| Jewish Doctor, |          |       | Lion          | آسَاد    | أَسَد   |
| Pontiff        | أَحْبَار | حَبْر | Horizon       | آفَاق    | أَفُق   |
| Rope           | أَحْبَال | حَبَل | Hill          | آكَام    | أَكْمَة |
| Young man      | أَحْدَاث | حَدَث | Pain          | آلَام    | أَلَم   |
| Party, troop   | أَحْرَاب | حِرْب | Favour        | آلَاء    | أَلَى   |
| Grief          | أَحْزَان | حُزْن | Hope          | آمَل     | أَمَل   |
| Sentence (in   |          |       | Time          | آذَاء    | أَذَى   |
| law            | أَحْكَام | حُكْم | Well          | آبَار    | بَيْرٌ  |
| Burden         | أَحْمَال | حِمْل | Righteous     | أَبْرَار | بَر     |
| Lower jaw      | أَحْنَاك | حَنَك | Hero          | أَبْطَال | بَطَل   |
| Condition,     |          |       | Distance      | أَبْعَاد | بُعْد   |
| state          | أَحْوَال | حَال  | First-born    | أَبْكَار | بِكْر   |
| Time           | أَحْيَان | حَيْن | Son           | أَبْنَاء | إِبْن   |
| Alive          | أَحْيَاء | حَي   | Door          | أَبْوَاب | بَاب    |
| Adversary      | أَخْصَام | خَصْم | Verse         | أَبْيَات | بَيْت   |
| Danger         | أَخْطَار | خَطَر | Equals in age | أَقْرَاب | تَرَب   |
| Disease        | أَدْوَاء | دَاء  | Fatigue       | أَنْعَاب | تَعَب   |
| Rotation       | أَدْوَار | دَوْر | Fruit         | أَثْمَار | ثَمَر   |
| Opinion        | آرَاء    | رَأْي | Garment       | أَثْوَاب | ثَوْب   |
| Sustenance     | أَرْزَاق | رِزْق | Grandfather   | أَجْدَاد | جَد     |
| Ripe dates     | أَرْطَاب | رَطَب | Bell          | أَجْرَاس | جَرَس   |
| Spirit         | أَرْوَاح | رُوح  | Body          | أَجْسَاد | جَسَد   |

|                |          |             |                |          |        |
|----------------|----------|-------------|----------------|----------|--------|
| Malice         | أَضْغَان | ضِغْن       | Button         | أَزْزَار | زَر    |
| Edge           | أَطْرَاف | طَرَف       | Husband or     |          |        |
| Child          | أَطْفَال | طِفْل       | wife           | أَزْوَاج | زَوْج  |
| Bird           | أَطْيَار | طَيْر       | Cause          | أَسْبَاب | سَبَب  |
| Nail           | أَظْفَار | ظُفْر       | Tribe          | أَسْبَاط | سِبْط  |
| Number         | أَعْدَاد | عَدَد       | Screen         | أَسْتَار | سِتْر  |
| Enemy          | أَعْدَاء | عَدُو       | Current price  | أَسْعَار | سِعْر  |
| Wedding        | أَعْرَاس | عُرْس       | Book           | أَسْفَار | سِفْر  |
| Grass          | أَعْشَاب | عُشْب       | Fish           | أَسْمَاك | سَمَك  |
| Nests          | أَعْشَاش | عُش         | Name           | أَسْمَاء | إِسْم  |
| Arm            | أَعْضَاد | عُضْد       | Tooth          | أَسْنَان | سِن    |
| Member, limb   | أَعْضَاء | عُضْو       | Whip           | أَسْوَاط | سَوَاط |
| Flag           | أَعْلَام | عَلَم       | Market         | أَسْوَاق | سُوق   |
| Work           | أَعْمَال | عَمَل       | Sword          | أَسْيَاف | سَيْف  |
| Paternal uncle | أَعْمَام | عَم         | Tree           | أَشْجَار | شَجَر  |
| Neck           | أَعْنَاق | عُنُق       | Poetry         | أَشْعَار | شِعْر  |
| Year           | أَعْوَام | عَام        | Business, work | أَشْغَال | شُغْل  |
| Branch         | أَغْصَان | غُصْن       | Kind, sort     | أَشْكَال | شَكْل  |
| Scabbard       | أَغْمَاد | غِمْد       | Longing        | أَشْوَاق | شَوْق  |
| Joy            | أَفْرَاح | فَرَح       | Thorn          | أَشْوَاك | شَوَك  |
| Individual     | أَفْرَاد | فَرْد       | Thing          | أَشْيَاء | شَيْء  |
| Mare           | أَفْرَاس | فَرَس       | Echo           | أَصْدَاء | صَدَى  |
| Mouth          | أَفْوَاه | فَم or فُوه | Country        | أَصْقَاع | صُقْع  |
| Filth          | أَقْدَار | قَدَر       | Voice          | أَصَوَات | صَوْت  |

|                 |           |        |               |           |        |
|-----------------|-----------|--------|---------------|-----------|--------|
| Angel           | أَمَلَاىَ | مَلَك  | Pole, axis,   |           |        |
| Wave            | أَمَوَاج  | مَوْج  | leader        | أَقْطَاب  | قُطْب  |
| Possession,     |           |        | Country       | أَقْطَار  | قُطَار |
| property        | أَمَوَال  | مَال   | Lock          | أَقْفَال  | قُقُل  |
| Water           | أَمَوَاه  | مَاء   | Pen           | أَقْلَام  | قَلَم  |
| Mile            | أَمِيَال  | مِيَل  | Moon          | أَقْمَار  | قَمَر  |
| Region          | أَنْكَآء  | نَخَو  | Saying        | أَقْوَال  | قَوْل  |
| Helper          | أَنْصَار  | نَصِير | People, crowd | أَقْوَام  | قَوْم  |
| River           | أَنْهَار  | نَهْر  | Liver         | أَكْبَاد  | كِد    |
| Light           | أَنْوَار  | نُور   | Shoulder      | أَكْتَاف  | كَتِف  |
| Tusk            | أَنْيَاب  | نَاب   | Shroud        | أَكْفَان  | كَفَن  |
| Tent-peg, stake | أَوْتَاد  | وَقْد  | Sleeve        | أَكْمَام  | كُم    |
| Bow-string      | أَوْتَار  | وَتَر  | Purse, bag    | أَكْيَاس  | كَيْس  |
| Pain            | أَوْجَاع  | وَجَع  | Mind          | أَلْبَاب  | لُب    |
| Leaf            | أَوْرَاق  | وَرَق  | Side-glance   | أَلْحَاط  | لَحْظ  |
| Dirt            | أَوْسَاح  | وَسْخ  | Tone, melody  | أَلْحَان  | لَحْن  |
| Time            | أَوْقَات  | وَقْت  | Board         | أَلْوَاح  | لَوْح  |
| Nest            | أَوْكَار  | وَكْر  | Glory         | أَمْجَاد  | مَجْد  |
| Child           | أَوْلَاد  | وَلَد  | Territory     | أَمْصَار  | مِصْر  |
| Day             | أَيَّام   | يَوْم  | Salt          | أَمْلَاح  | مِلْح  |
|                 |           |        | Property      | أَمَلَاىَ | مَلِك  |

## 3. أَفْعَلَةٌ

|             |            |        |          |            |        |
|-------------|------------|--------|----------|------------|--------|
| Leather bag | أَجْرَبَةٌ | جِرَاب | Vessel   | آنِيَّة    | إِنَاء |
| Wing        | أَجْنِحَةٌ | جَنَاح | Building | أَبْنِيَّة | بِنَاء |



|                       |             |         |              |             |         |
|-----------------------|-------------|---------|--------------|-------------|---------|
| Pillar                | أَعْمَدَةٌ  | عَمُودٌ | Foetus       | أَجِنَّهٗ   | جَنِينٌ |
| Bridle                | أَعِنَّةٌ   | عِنَانٌ | Apparatus    | أَجْهَرَةٌ  | جِهَازٌ |
| Food                  | أَغْذِيَّةٌ | غِذَاءٌ | Answer       | أَجْوِبَةٌ  | جَوَابٌ |
| Crow                  | أَغْرَبَةٌ  | غُرَابٌ | Shoes        | أَحْذِيَّةٌ | حِذَاءٌ |
| Coverings             | أَغْشِيَّةٌ | غِشَاءٌ | Phantasm     | أَخْيَلَةٌ  | خَيَالٌ |
| Heart                 | أَفْئِدَةٌ  | فُؤَادٌ | Invocation   | أَدْعِيَّةٌ | دُعَاءٌ |
| Mattress              | أَفْرِشَةٌ  | فِرَاشٌ | Proof        | أَدِلَّةٌ   | دَلِيلٌ |
| Shirt                 | أَقْبِصَةٌ  | قَبِيصٌ | Brain        | أَدْمِغَةٌ  | دِمَاعٌ |
| Measurement           | أَقْيَسَةٌ  | قِيَاسٌ | Medicine     | أَدْوِيَّةٌ | دَوَاءٌ |
| Garment               | أَكْسِيَّةٌ | كِسَاءٌ | Handmill     | أَرْحِيَّةٌ | رَحَى   |
| Dress                 | أَلْبِسَةٌ  | لِبَاسٌ | Loaf         | أَرْغَفَةٌ  | رَغِيفٌ |
| Counterpane           | أَلْحِفَةٌ  | لِحَافٌ | Porch        | أَرْوَقَةٌ  | رَوَاقٌ |
| Goods                 | أَمْتِعَةٌ  | مَتَاعٌ | Reins        | أَرْمَةٌ    | رِمَامٌ |
| Example               | أَمْثَلَةٌ  | مِثَالٌ | Time         | أَرْمَنَةٌ  | رَمَانٌ |
| Place                 | أَمْكَنَةٌ  | مَكَانٌ | Question     | أَسْئَلَةٌ  | سُؤَالٌ |
| Woven                 | أَنْسَجَةٌ  | نَسِيجٌ | Mirage       | أَسْرِيَّةٌ | سَرَابٌ |
| Portion               | أَنْصِبَةٌ  | نَصِيبٌ | Bed          | أَسِرَّةٌ   | سَرِيرٌ |
| Air                   | أَهْوِيَّةٌ | هَوَاءٌ | Armour, arms | أَسْلِحَةٌ  | سِلَاحٌ |
| Den of wild<br>beasts | أَوْجَرَةٌ  | وَجَارٌ | Camel's hump | أَسْنَمَةٌ  | سَنَامٌ |
| Valley                | أَوْدِيَّةٌ | وَادٍ   | Spear head   | أَسِنَّةٌ   | سِنَانٌ |
| Jugular vein          | أَوْرَدَةٌ  | وَرْدٌ  | Beverage     | أَشْرَبَةٌ  | شَرَابٌ |
| Vessel                | أَوْعِيَّةٌ | وَعَاءٌ | Sun's rays   | أَشِعَّةٌ   | شُعَاعٌ |
|                       |             |         | Spleen       | أَطْحَلَةٌ  | طَحَالٌ |
|                       |             |         | Food         | أَطْعِمَةٌ  | طَعَامٌ |

## فِعْلَةٌ 4.

|       |          |         |           |           |         |
|-------|----------|---------|-----------|-----------|---------|
| Lad   | غِلْمَةٌ | غُلَامٌ | Brother   | إِخْوَةٌ  | أَخٌ    |
| Youth | فِتْيَةٌ | فَتًى   | Neighbour | جِيرَةٌ   | جَارٌ   |
| Boy   | وَلَدَةٌ | وَلَدٌ  | Boy       | صَبِيَّةٌ | صَبِيٌّ |

## جُمُوعُ الْكَثَرَةِ. PLURALS OF MULTITUDE.

## فَعْلٌ 1.

|        |         |          |                  |        |           |
|--------|---------|----------|------------------|--------|-----------|
| Friend | صَاحِبٌ | صَحْبٌ   | Party of Riders  | رَكَبٌ | رَاكِبٌ   |
| Guest  | نَزَلٌ  | فَارِلٌ  | Party of travel- |        |           |
| Envoy  | وَفْدٌ  | وَاْفِدٌ | lers             | سَفَرٌ | مُسَافِرٌ |
|        |         |          | Party of drink-  |        |           |
|        |         |          | kers             | شَرَبٌ | شَارِبٌ   |

## فُعْلٌ 2.

|                |        |          |               |        |          |
|----------------|--------|----------|---------------|--------|----------|
| Blue           | زُرْقٌ | أَزْرَقٌ | Piebald       | بُرْشٌ | أَبْرَشٌ |
| Brown          | سُمْرٌ | أَسْمَرٌ | Leper         | بُرْصٌ | أَبْرَصٌ |
| Black          | سُودٌ  | أَسْوَدٌ | White         | بَيْضٌ | أَبْيَضٌ |
| Auburn         | شُقْرٌ | أَشْقَرٌ | Bare, smooth- |        |          |
| Withered hand  | شَدٌّ  | أَشَدٌّ  | faced         | جُرْدٌ | أَجْرَدٌ |
| Fine-nosed     | شَمٌّ  | أَشَمٌّ  | Red           | حُمْرٌ | أَحْمَرٌ |
| Red-tinged     |        |          | Squint-eyed   | حَوْلٌ | أَحْوَلٌ |
| (eye)          | شُهْلٌ | أَشْهَلٌ | Dumb          | خُرْسٌ | أَخْرَسٌ |
| Hoary          | شَيْبٌ | أَشْيَبٌ | Green         | خُضْرٌ | أَخْضَرٌ |
| Partially bald | ضَلْعٌ | أَصْلَعٌ | Spotted       | رُقْطٌ | أَرَقْطٌ |

|              |       |          |             |        |          |
|--------------|-------|----------|-------------|--------|----------|
| One-eyed     | عُور  | أَعور    | Deaf        | صَم    | أَصَمَّ  |
| Spotted-face |       |          | Lame        | عُرَج  | أَعْرَجَ |
| (horse)      | غُرَّ | أَغَرَّ  | Tongue-tied | عُقِدَ | أَعْقَدَ |
| Bald-headed  | قُرْع | أَقْرَعَ | Blind       | عُمِيَ | أَعْمِيَ |
| Hasty        | هُوج  | أَهْرَجَ | Crooked     | عُوج   | أَعْوَجَ |

## 3. فَعَلَ

|        |       |         |               |        |         |
|--------|-------|---------|---------------|--------|---------|
| Column | عَمَد | عُمُود  | Ring, ferrule | حَلَقَ | حَلَقَة |
| Goat   | مَعَز | مَعَرَى | Servant       | خَدَمَ | خَادِم  |

## 4. فُعِلَ

|               |        |          |                |         |         |
|---------------|--------|----------|----------------|---------|---------|
| Underclothing | حُلْد  | حُلَّة   | Knot (in wood) | أَبْن   | أُبْنَة |
| Scorpion's    |        |          | Family         | أَسَر   | أُسْرَة |
| sting         | حُمَى  | حُمَة    | Nation         | أُمَم   | أُمَّة  |
| Lecture       | خُطَب  | خُطْبَة  | Desire         | بُعَى   | بُعْيَة |
| Step          | خُطَى  | خُطْوَة  | Low-lying land | بُقِع   | بُقْعَة |
| Pearl         | دُرَر  | دُرَّة   | Channel, canal | تُرِع   | تُرْعَة |
| Shower        | دُفَع  | دُفْعَة  | Suspicion      | تُهَم   | تُهْمَة |
| Summit        | دُرَى  | دُرْوَة  | Wide-sleeved   |         |         |
| Sight         | رَوَى  | رَوِيَّة | cloak          | جُبَّ   | جُبَّة  |
| Vision        | رَوَى  | رَوِيَّا | Corpse         | جُثَّت  | جُنَّة  |
| Hill          | رُبَى  | رُبْوَة  | Sentence       | جُمِلَ  | جُمْلَة |
| Patch         | رُقِعَ | رُقْعَة  | Argument       | حُجِّجَ | حُجْجَة |
| Knee          | رُكِبَ | رُكْبَة  | Room           | حُجِّرَ | حُجْرَة |
| Law           | سُنَن  | سُنَّة   | Ditch          | حُفِرَ  | حُفْرَة |
| Twig          | شُعَب  | شُعْبَة  | Clyster        | حُقِنَ  | حُقْنَة |

|                  |        |         |                 |        |         |
|------------------|--------|---------|-----------------|--------|---------|
| Window           | كَوَى  | كَوَّة  | Picture         | صَوَّر | صُورَة  |
| Morsel           | لَقِم  | لُقْمَة | Edge of a sword | طَبَى  | طَبَة   |
| Small quantity,  |        |         | Apparatus       | عَدَد  | عُدَّة  |
| bright spot      | لَمَعَ | لُمْعَة | Button-hole     | عُرَى  | عُرْوَة |
| Duration         | مُدَد  | مُدَّة  | Knot            | عُقَد  | عُقْدَة |
| Eye              | مَقَل  | مُقْلَة | Wages           | عَمَل  | عُمْلَة |
| Wish             | مَنَى  | مُنْيَة | Room            | غُرَف  | غُرْفَة |
| Heart-blood      | مُهَج  | مُهِجَة | Opportunity     | فُرَص  | فُرْصَة |
| Copy (book)      | نَسَخ  | نُسْخَة | Dome, pavilion  | قُتُب  | قُبَّة  |
| Nape of the neck | نَقَرَ | نُقْرَة | Kiss            | قُبَل  | قُبْلَة |
| Drop             | نَقَط  | نُقْطَة | Village         | قُرَى  | قَرْيَة |
| Fine-point       | نَكَت  | نُكْتَة | Power, faculty  | قُوَى  | قُوَّة  |
| Number           | نَمَر  | نُمْرَة | Anxiety         | كُرَب  | كُرْبَة |
| Turn, paroxysm   | نَوَب  | نَوْبَة | Ball, bomb,     |        |         |
| Opportunity      | نَهَز  | نُهْزَة | marble          | كُدَل  | كُلَّة  |

## 5. فَعَلَ

|                |       |         |              |       |         |
|----------------|-------|---------|--------------|-------|---------|
| Strategy       | حَيَل | حَيْلَة | Needle       | إِبْر | إِبْرَة |
| Service        | خِدَم | خِدْمَة | Pool         | بِرَك | بِرْكَة |
| Rag            | خَرَق | خِرْقَة | Few, piece   | بِضَع | بِضْعَة |
| Steady rain    | دِيم  | دِيمَة  | Church       | بِيع  | بِيعَة  |
| Responsibility | دِهَم | دِمَة   | Poll-tax     | جِرَى | جِرْيَة |
| Departure      | رَحَل | رَحْلَة | Craft, trade | حِرَف | حِرْفَة |
| Parcel         | رَزَم | رِزْمَة | Portion      | حِصَص | حِصَّة  |
| Decayed bones  | رَمَم | رِمْمَة | Wisdom       | حِكَم | حِكْمَة |

|               |         |         |                 |       |         |
|---------------|---------|---------|-----------------|-------|---------|
| Paragraph     | فِقْرَة | فِقْرَة | Suspicion       | رَيْب | رَيْبَة |
| Fragment      | فِلَق   | فِلَقَة | Feather         | رَيْش | رَيْشَة |
| Water-skin    | قِرَب   | قِرْبَة | Article of mer- |       |         |
| Tale          | قِصَص   | قِصَّة  | chandise        | سِلَع | سِلَعَة |
| Piece         | قِطْع   | قِطْعَة | Walk, conduct   | سِيَر | سِيَرَة |
| Peak          | قِمَم   | قِمَّة  | Sect            | شِيع  | شِيعَة  |
| Fragment      | كِسَر   | كِسْرَة | Disposition     | شِيم  | شِيمَة  |
| Mosquito-     |         |         | Paradigm        |       |         |
| curtain       | كِلْد   | كِلَّة  | (Gram.)         | صِيغ  | صِيغَة  |
| Beard         | لِجَى   | لِجْيَة | Villages        | ضِيع  | ضِيعَة  |
| Trial         | مِخَن   | مِخْنَة | Example         | عِبَر | عِبْرَة |
| Sect          | مِلْد   | مِلَّة  | Cause, plea,    |       |         |
| Gift, grace   | مِنَن   | مِنَّة  | illness         | عِلْد | عِلَّة  |
| Relation      | نِسَب   | نِسْبَة | Disturbance     | فِتَن | فِتْنَة |
| Grace, favour | نِعَم   | نِعْمَة | Party, division | فِرَق | فِرْقَة |
| Energy, zeal  | هَمَم   | هَمَّة  | Intelligence    | فِطَن | فِطْنَة |

## 6. فُعْل

|         |       |        |              |       |        |
|---------|-------|--------|--------------|-------|--------|
| Veil    | حُجَب | حِجَاب | She-ass      | أُتْن | أَتَان |
| Girdle  | حُزَم | حِزَام | Large veil   | أُزْر | إِزَار |
| Horse   | حُصَن | حِصَان | Foundation   | أُسُس | أَسَاس |
| Donkey  | حُمَر | حِمَار | Frame        | أُطَر | إِطَار |
| Gulf    | خُلُج | خَلِيج | Large carpet | بُسْط | بِسَاط |
| Muffler | خُمَر | خِمَار | Inclosure    | جُدَر | جِدَار |

|                |       |          |             |       |          |
|----------------|-------|----------|-------------|-------|----------|
| Mattress       | فُرُش | فِرَاش   | Blanket     | دُثْر | دِثَار   |
| Darkness       | قُتْم | قَتَام   | Bond, tie   | رَبْط | رِبَاط   |
| Back of the    |       |          | Apostle     | رُسُل | رَسُول   |
| head           | قُدُل | قَدَال   | Way         | سُبُل | سَبِيل   |
| Rod            | قُضْب | قَضِيب   | Cloud       | سُكْب | سَكَاب   |
| Train          | قُطْر | قِطَار   | Lamp        | سُرُج | سِرَاج   |
| Book           | كُتُب | كِتَاب   | Bedstead    | سُرُر | سَرِير   |
| Bridle         | لُجَم | لِحَام   | Fire        | سُعْر | سَعِير   |
| Counterpane    | لُحَف | لِحَاف   | Sail        | شُرْع | شِرَاع   |
| Town           | مُدُن | مَدِينَة | Star, flame | شُهَب | شِهَاب   |
| Bed            | مُهَد | مِهَاد   | Patient     | صُبْر | صَبُور   |
| Handle (knife) | نُصْب | نِصَاب   | Book        | صُكْف | صَحِيفَة |
| Night-time     | هَزُع | هَزِيع   | Road        | طُرُق | طَرِيق   |
| Band, rope     | وُثْق | وِثَاق   | Shackle     | عُقْل | عِقَال   |
|                |       |          | Pillar      | عُمَد | عُمُود   |

## فَعَلَة 7.

|           |         |        |           |                  |        |
|-----------|---------|--------|-----------|------------------|--------|
| Keeper    | حَفَظَة | حَافِظ | Guilty    | أَثَمَة          | آثِم   |
| Weaver    | حَاكَة  | حَايِك | Eater     | أَكَلَة          | آكِل   |
| Servant   | خَدَمَة | خَادِم | Righteous | بَرَرَة          | بَار   |
| Treasurer | خَزَنَة | خَازِن | Seller    | بَاعَة (بَيْعَة) | بَائِع |
| Sinner    | خَطَاَة | خَاطِئ | Ignorant  | جَهْلَة          | جَاهِل |
| Traitor   | خَوَنَة | خَائِن | Envious   | حَسَدَة          | حَاسِد |
| Low, base | سَفَلَة | سَافِل | Grandson  | حَفَدَة          | حَفِيد |



|            |         |        |                 |         |        |
|------------|---------|--------|-----------------|---------|--------|
| Scribe     | كَتَبَة | كَاتِب | Lord, chief     | سَادَة  | سَائِد |
| Liar       | كَذَبَة | كَاذِب | Manager         | سَاسَة  | سَائِس |
| Unbeliever | كَفَرَة | كَافِر | Goldsmith       | صَاغَة  | صَائِغ |
| Perfect    | كَمَلَة | كَامِل | Seeker, student | طَلَبَة | طَالِب |
| Priest     | كَهَنَة | كَاهِن | Worshipper      | عَبَدَة | عَابِد |
| Rebellious | مَرَدَة | مَارِد | Workman         | عَمَلَة | عَامِل |
| Crafty     | مَكْرَة | مَآكِر | Labourer        | فَعَلَة | فَاعِل |
| Skilful    | مَهْرَة | مَاهِر | Murderer        | قَتَلَة | قَاتِل |
| Narrator   | نَقْلَة | نَاقِل | Reader          | قَرَأَة | قَارِئ |

## 8. فُعْلَة

|             |        |         |              |                |       |
|-------------|--------|---------|--------------|----------------|-------|
| Narrator    | رُؤَاة | رَاوٍ   | Falcon       | بَازِ (بَازِي) | بَازٍ |
| Adulterer   | رُفَاة | رَانٍ   | Oppressor    | بَاغِ (بَاغِي) | بَاغٍ |
| Messenger   | سُعَاة | سَاعٍ   | Builder      | بُنَاة         | بَانٍ |
| Cup-bearer  | سُقَاة | سَاقٍ   | Tax-gatherer | جُبَاة         | جَابٍ |
| Cruel       | طُغَاة | طَاغٍ   | Criminal     | جُنَاة         | جَانٍ |
| Haughty     | عُتَاة | عَاتٍ   | Camel-driver | حُدَاة         | حَادٍ |
| Naked       | عُرَاة | عَارٍ   | Bare-footed  | حُفَاة         | حَافٍ |
| Rebel       | عُصَاة | عَاصٍ   | Protector    | حُمَاة         | حَامٍ |
| Raider      | غُرَاة | غَارٍ   | Sinner       | خُطَاة         | خَاطٍ |
| Cruel, hard | قُسَاة | قَاسٍ   | Caller, sup- |                |       |
| Judge       | قُضَاة | قَاضٍ   | pliant       | دُعَاة         | دَاعٍ |
| Iron-clad,  |        |         | Shepherd     | رُعَاة         | رَاعٍ |
| brave       | كُمَاة | كَمِيٍّ | Archer       | رُمَاة         | رَامٍ |

|             |         |       |             |         |        |
|-------------|---------|-------|-------------|---------|--------|
| Calumniator | وُشَاةٌ | وَاشٍ | Walker, in- |         |        |
| Governor    | وُلَاةٌ | وَالٍ | fantry      | مُشَاةٌ | مَاشٍ  |
|             |         |       | Guide       | هُدَاةٌ | هُدَاٍ |

## 9. فِعْلَةٌ

|          |          |        |         |          |        |
|----------|----------|--------|---------|----------|--------|
| Elephant | فَيْلَةٌ | فَيْلٍ | Shield  | تِرْسَةٌ | تُرْسٌ |
| Monkey   | قِرْدَةٌ | قِرْدٍ | Well    | جَبَبَةٌ | جُبٌّ  |
| Sleeve   | كِمَمَةٌ | كُمٌ   | Bear    | دِبَبَةٌ | دُبٌّ  |
| Cat      | هَرَرَةٌ | هَرٌّ  | Husband | زَوْجَةٌ | زَوْجٌ |

## 10. فِعَالٌ

|                |         |          |                |         |           |
|----------------|---------|----------|----------------|---------|-----------|
| Camel          | جِمَالٌ | جَمَلٌ   | Hill           | إِكَامٌ | أَكَمَةٌ  |
| Rope           | حِبَالٌ | حَبْلٌ   | Sea            | بِحَارٌ | بَحْرٌ    |
| Stone          | حِجَارٌ | حَجَرٌ   | Torrent-bed    | بِطَاحٌ | بَطْحَاءٌ |
| Lance, bayonet | حِرَابٌ | حَرْبَةٌ | Mule           | بِغَالٌ | بَغْلٌ    |
| Sheep          | خِرَافٌ | خِرَوفٌ  | Low-lying land | بِقَاعٌ | بُقْعَةٌ  |
| Good quality   | خِصَالٌ | خَصْلَةٌ | Town           | بِلَادٌ | بَلَدٌ    |
| Tent           | خِيَامٌ | خَيْمَةٌ | Hill           | تِلَالٌ | تَلٌّ     |
| Rudder         | دِفَافٌ | دُفَّةٌ  | Mountain       | جِبَالٌ | جَبَلٌ    |
| Blood          | دِمَاءٌ | دَمٌ     | Forehead       | جَبَاهٌ | جَبْهَةٌ  |
| Wolf           | ذِئَابٌ | ذِئْبٌ   | Kid            | جِدَآءٌ | جَدْيٌ    |
| Man            | رِجَالٌ | رَجُلٌ   | Wound          | جِرَاحٌ | جُرْحٌ    |
| Thin           | رِقَاقٌ | رَقِيقٌ  | Jar            | جِرَارٌ | جَرَّةٌ   |
| Spear, lance   | رِمَاحٌ | رُمُحٌ   | Pup            | جِرَآءٌ | جِرْوٌ    |
| Sand           | رِمَالٌ | رَمْلٌ   | Deep dish      | جِفَانٌ | جَفْنَةٌ  |

|               |         |          |                |         |          |
|---------------|---------|----------|----------------|---------|----------|
| Ascent        | عِقَاب  | عَقَبَة  | Wind           | رِيَّاح | رِيح     |
| Child, family | عِيَال  | عَيْل    | Swift          | سِرَاع  | سَرِيع   |
| Angry         | غِضَاب  | غَضَبَان | Basket         | سِلَال  | سَل      |
| Trap          | فِخَاخ  | فَخْخ    | Stout          | سِمَان  | سَمِين   |
| Short         | قِصَار  | قَصِير   | Arrow          | سِهَام  | سَهْم    |
| Fortress      | قِلَاع  | قَلْعَة  | Mountain-      |         |          |
| Heel, ankle   | كِعَاب  | كَعْب    | path           | شِعَاب  | شَعْب    |
| Dog           | كِلَاب  | كَلْب    | Net            | شِبَاى  | شَبَكَة  |
| Base          | لِثَام  | لِثِيم   | Difficult      | صِعَاب  | صَعْب    |
| Side-glance   | لِحَاظ  | لَحْظ    | Temper         | طِبَاع  | طَبْع    |
| Water         | مِيَاه  | مَاء     | Long           | طَوَال  | طَوِيل   |
| Ewe           | نِعَاج  | نَعَجَة  | Fawn           | ظِبَاء  | ظَبِي    |
| Sandal        | نِعَال  | نَعْل    | Slave, servant | عِبَاد  | عَبْد    |
| She-camel     | نِيَّاق | نَاقَة   | Thirsty        | عِطَاش  | عَطْشَان |
| Sleeping      | نِيَام  | نَائِم   | Bone           | عِظَام  | عَظْم    |
| Abyss         | وَهَاد  | وَهْدَة  | Great          | عِظَام  | عَظِيم   |

## 11. فِعَالَة

|            |          |     |           |          |        |
|------------|----------|-----|-----------|----------|--------|
| Calyx of a |          |     | Camel     | جِمَالَة | جَمَل  |
| flower     | كِمَامَة | كِم | Stone     | حِجَارَة | حَجَر  |
|            |          |     | Companion | صِحَابَة | صَاحِب |

## 12. فُعُول

|           |        |       |        |        |       |
|-----------|--------|-------|--------|--------|-------|
| Sea       | بُخُور | بَخَر | Origin | أُصُول | أَصْل |
| Full-moon | بُدُور | بَدَر | Affair | أُمُور | أَمْر |

|                |          |         |           |                  |       |
|----------------|----------|---------|-----------|------------------|-------|
| Hand-writing   | خَطُّوط  | خَطَّ   | Tower     | بُرُوج           | بُرْج |
| Wine           | خُمُر    | خَمَر   | Lightning | بُرُوق           | بَرْق |
| String, thread | خَيْطُوط | خَيْطَ  | Seed      | بُزُور           | بِزْر |
| Lesson         | دُرُوس   | دَرَس   | Belly     | بُطُون           | بَطْن |
| Debt           | دُيُون   | دَيْن   | House     | بُيُوت           | بَيْت |
| Male           | ذُكُور   | ذَكَر   | Border-   |                  |       |
| Head           | رُؤُوس   | رَأْس   | land      | تُخُوم           | تَخَم |
| Spring-camp    | رُبُوع   | رَبَعَ  | Hill      | تُلُول           | تَلّ  |
| Thunder        | رُعُود   | رَعَد   | Breast    | (تُدُوِي) تِدِيّ | تُدِي |
| Seed           | زُرُوع   | زَرَعَ  | Snow      | تُلُوج           | تَلَج |
| Flower         | زُهُور   | زَهَر   | Bridge    | جُسُور           | جِسْر |
| Prison         | سُجُون   | سَجَن   | Eyelid    | جُفُون           | جَفْن |
| Saddle         | سُرُوج   | سَرَج   | Skin      | جُلُود           | جِلْد |
| Roof           | سُطُوح   | سَطَح   | Side      | جُنُوب           | جَنْب |
| Line, row      | سُطُور   | سَطَر   | Army      | جُنُود           | جُنْد |
| Roof           | سُقُوف   | سَقَف   | Pocket    | جُبُوب           | جَيْب |
| Poison         | سُبُوم   | سَم     | Grain     | حُبُوب           | حَبّ  |
| Affair         | شُورُون  | شَأْن   | Limit,    |                  |       |
| Explanation    | شُرُوح   | شَرَح   | boundary  | حُدُود           | حَدّ  |
| Hair           | شُعُور   | شَعَر   | War       | حُرُوب           | حَرْب |
| Doubt          | شُكُوك   | شَكّ    | Particle  | حُرُوف           | حَرْف |
| Sun            | شُمُوس   | شَمْس   | Fortress  | حُصُون           | حِصْن |
| Witness        | شُهُود   | شَاهِد  | Field     | حُقُول           | حَقْل |
| Month          | شُهُور   | شَهْر   | Cheek     | خُدُود           | خَدّ  |
| Plate, dish    | صُكُون   | صَلَحَن | Adversary | خُصُوم           | خَصَم |

|                 |        |         |               |                  |         |
|-----------------|--------|---------|---------------|------------------|---------|
| Difference      | فُرُوق | فَرَقَ  | Chest         | صُدُور           | صَدْر   |
| Season,         |        |         | Rank          | صُفُوف           | صَف     |
| chapter, part   | فُصُول | فَصَلَ  | Cymbal        | صُنُوج           | صَنْج   |
| Farthing        | فُلُوس | فَلَسَ  | Kind, sort    | صُنُوف           | صِنْف   |
| Art, handicraft | فُنُون | فَنَّ   | Molar-tooth   | ضُرُوس           | ضِرْس   |
| Monkey          | قُرُود | قَرَدَ  | Rib           | ضُلُوع           | ضِلْع   |
| Priest          | قُسُوس | قَسَّ   | Drum          | طُبُول           | طَبْل   |
| Rind            | قُشُور | قَشَرَ  | Rite, cere-   |                  |         |
| Castle          | قُصُور | قَصَرَ  | mony          | طُقُوس           | طَقَسَ  |
| Back, nape of   |        |         | Bird          | طُيُور           | طَيَّرَ |
| neck            | قَفِيّ | قَفَا   | Vessel, enve- |                  |         |
| Heart           | قُلُوب | قَلَبَ  | lope, adverb  | ظُرُوف           | ظَرْف   |
| Sail of ship    | قُلُوع | قَلَعَ  | Back          | ظُهُور           | ظَهْر   |
| Bow             | قِسِيّ | قَوَسَ  | Calf          | عُجُول           | عِجْل   |
| Cup             | كُؤُوس | كَاسَ   | Root, vein    | عُرُوق           | عِرْق   |
| Vineyard        | كُرُوم | كَرَمَ  | Time, epoch   | عُصُور           | عَصْر   |
| Palm of hand    | كُفُوف | كَفَّ   | Stick         | (عُصُورٌ) عَصِيّ | عَصَا   |
| Flesh           | لُحُوم | لَحِمَ  | Mind          | عُقُول           | عَقْل   |
| Meadow          | مُرُوج | مَرَجَ  | Vice, defect  | عُيُوب           | عَيْب   |
| Star            | نُجُوم | نَجَّمَ | Eye           | عُيُون           | عَيْن   |
| Vow             | نُدُور | نَدَرَ  | Branch        | عُصُون           | غُصْن   |
| Soul            | نُفُوس | نَفَسَ  | Cloud         | غُيُوم           | غَيْم   |
| Tiger           | نُمُور | نَمَرَ  | Examination   | فُكُوص           | فَكْحَص |
| Anxiety         | هُمُوم | هَمَّ   | Twig          | فُرُوع           | فَرَع   |

## 13. فَعُولَةٌ

|          |           |       |          |           |       |
|----------|-----------|-------|----------|-----------|-------|
| Hawk     | صُقُورَةٌ | صَقَر | Husband  | بُعُولَةٌ | بَعْل |
| Paternal |           |       | Burden   | حُمُولَةٌ | حِمْل |
| Uncle    | عُمُومَةٌ | عَمّ  | Maternal |           |       |
| Tiger    | نُمُورَةٌ | نَمِر | Uncle    | خُؤُولَةٌ | خَال  |
|          |           |       | Male     | دُكُورَةٌ | دَكَر |

## 14. فَعْلَى

|           |         |        |               |         |         |
|-----------|---------|--------|---------------|---------|---------|
| Weak      | ضَعْفَى | ضَعِيف | Hireling      | أَجْرَى | أَجِير  |
| Murderer  | قَتَلَى | قَتِيل | Captive       | أُسْرَى | أَسِير  |
| Wounded   | قَرَحَى | قَرِيع | Wounded       | جَرَحَى | جَرِيع  |
| Stung     | لَدَغَى | لَدِيع | Stupid        | حَمَقَى | أَحْمَق |
| Sick      | مَرَضَى | مَرِيع | Dispersed     | شَتَّى  | شَتِيت  |
| Dead      | مَوَتَى | مَيّت  | Prostrated in |         |         |
| Perishing | هَلَكَى | هَالِك | wrestling     | صَرَعَى | صَرِيع  |
|           |         |        | Weak          | ضَعْفَى | ضَعِيف  |

## 15. فِعْلَى

|          |         |          |           |         |       |
|----------|---------|----------|-----------|---------|-------|
| Pole-cat | ظَرَبَى | ظَرَبَان | Partridge | حَجَلَى | حَجَل |
|----------|---------|----------|-----------|---------|-------|

## 16. فَعِيل

|         |        |       |        |        |        |
|---------|--------|-------|--------|--------|--------|
| Servant | عَبِيد | عَبْد | Cow    | بَقِير | بَقَر  |
|         |        |       | Donkey | حَبِير | حِمَار |



## 17. فُعِلَ

|              |        |        |              |         |        |
|--------------|--------|--------|--------------|---------|--------|
| White-haired | شَيْب  | شَائِب | Stingy       | بُخْدَل | بَاخِل |
| Reprover     | عُدِّل | عَاذِل | Brave        | بُسْل   | بَاسِل |
| Unadorned    | عُطِّل | عَاطِل | Reclining on |         |        |
| Barren       | عُقِّر | عَاقِر | the chest    | جُثْم   | جَاثِم |
| Raider       | غُرِّي | غَازِ  | Envious      | حُسَد   | حَاسِد |
| Absent       | غُيِب  | غَائِب | Kneeling     | رُكِع   | رَاكِع |
| Liar         | كُذِّب | كَاذِب | Worshipper   | سُجِّد  | سَاجِد |
| Adviser      | نُصِّح | نَاصِح | Law-giver    | شُرِّع  | شَارِع |
| Sleeping     | نُوم   | نَائِم | Eye-witness  | شُهِد   | شَاهِد |

## 18. فُعِّلَ

|              |         |        |                  |         |        |
|--------------|---------|--------|------------------|---------|--------|
| Mischievous  | شُطَّار | شَاطِر | Ignorant         | جُهَّال | جَاهِل |
| Artizan      | صُنَّاع | صَانِع | Clever           | حُدَّاق | حَادِق |
| Worshipper   | عُبَّاد | عَابِد | Guardian         | حُرَّاس | حَارِس |
| Reprover     | عُدَّال | عَاذِل | Envious          | حُسَّاد | حَاسِد |
| Workman      | عُمَّال | عَامِل | Keeper           | حُقَّاط | حَافِظ |
| Sick-visitor | عَوَّاد | عَائِد | Servant          | خُدَّام | خَادِم |
| Wicked       | فُجَّار | فَاجِر | Rider            | رُكَّاب | رَاكِب |
| Reader       | قُرَّاء | قَارِئ | Ascetic          | رُهَّاد | رَاهِد |
| Highwayman   | قُطَّاع | قَاطِع | Visitor, pilgrim | زَوَّار | زَائِر |
| Leader       | قُوَّاد | قَائِد | Thief            | سُرَّاق | سَارِق |
| Scribe       | كُتَّاب | كَاتِب | Traveller        | سَيَّاح | سَائِح |
| Infidel      | كُفَّار | كَافِر | Commentator      | شُرَّاح | شَارِح |

|            |         |        |          |         |        |
|------------|---------|--------|----------|---------|--------|
| Members of |         |        | Priest   | كُهَّان | كَاهِن |
| Parliament | نَوَّاب | نَائِب | Hermit   | نُصَّاح | نَاسِك |
| Heir       | وَرَاث  | وَارِث | Adviser  | نُصَّاح | نَاصِح |
|            |         |        | Watchman | نُظَّار | نَاطِر |

Caliph, suc-

19. فُعَلَاءُ

|                 |           |          |             |           |        |
|-----------------|-----------|----------|-------------|-----------|--------|
| cessor          | خُلَفَاءُ | خَلِيفَة | Guilty      | أَثْمَاءُ | أَثِم  |
| Fit, suited for | خُلَفَاءُ | خَلِيق   | Polite,     |           |        |
| Intruder        | دُخَلَاءُ | دَخِيل   | learned     | أَدَبَاءُ | أَدِيب |
| Chief           | رُؤَسَاءُ | رَئِيس   | Prince      | أُمَرَاءُ | أَمِير |
| Merciful        | رُحَمَاءُ | رَحِيم   | Faithful    | أُمَنَاءُ | أَمِين |
| ompanion        | رُفَقَاءُ | رَفِيق   | Stingy      | بُخَلَاءُ | بَخِيل |
| Watcher         | رُقَبَاءُ | رَقِيب   | Intelligent | بُصَرَاءُ | بَصِير |
| Chief           | رُعَمَاءُ | رَعِيم   | Stupid      | بُلَدَاءُ | بَلِيد |
| Happy           | سُعَدَاءُ | سَعِيد   | Eloquent    | بُلَغَاءُ | بَلِيع |
| Ambassador      | سُفَرَاءُ | سَفِير   | Unlucky     | تُعَسَاءُ | تَعِيس |
| Foolish         | سُفَهَاءُ | سَفِيه   | Coward      | جُبَنَاءُ | جَبَان |
| Sickly          | سُقَمَاءُ | سَقِيم   | Worthy, fit | جُدَرَاءُ | جَدِير |
| Noble           | شُرَفَاءُ | شَرِيف   | Companion   | جُلَسَاءُ | جَلِيس |
| Partner         | شُرَكَاءُ | شَرِيك   | Ignorant    | جُهَلَاءُ | جَاهِل |
| Poet            | شُعَرَاءُ | شَاعِر   | Sorrowful   | حُزَنَاءُ | حَزِين |
| Weak            | ضُعَفَاءُ | ضَعِيف   | Wise        | حُكَمَاءُ | حَكِيم |
| Elegant         | طُرَفَاءُ | طَرِيف   | Wicked      | خُبَنَاءُ | خَبِيث |
| Companion       | عُشَرَاءُ | عَشِير   | Orator      | خُطَبَاءُ | خَطِيب |

|              |          |        |                |           |        |
|--------------|----------|--------|----------------|-----------|--------|
| Anointed     | مَسْحَاة | مَسِيح | Mighty         | عُظْمَاء  | عَظِيم |
| Steady       | مَكْنَاء | مَكِين | Intelligent    | عُقْلَاء  | عَاقِل |
| Intelligent  | ذُجَبَاء | ذَكِيب | Commissioner   | عُمَلَاء  | عَمِيل |
| Jester, boon |          |        | Stranger       | غُرَبَاء  | غَرِيب |
| companion    | ذُدْمَاء | نَدِيم | Eloquent       |           |        |
| Guest        | زُرَّاء  | نَزِيل | speaker        | فُصَحَاء  | فَصِيح |
| Adviser      | نُصَحَاء | نَصِيح | Excellent      | فُضَّلَاء | فَاضِل |
| Defender     | نُصْرَاء | نَصِير | Poor           | فُقَرَاء  | فَقِير |
| Equal        | نُظَرَاء | نَظِير | Ancient        | قُدَمَاء  | قَدِيم |
| Honourable   | وُجَهَاء | وَجِيه | Comrade        | قُرَنَاء  | قَرِين |
| Meek         | وُدَعَاء | وَدِيع | Great          | كُبَرَاء  | كَبِير |
| Minister     | وُزَرَاء | وَزِير | Generous       | كُرَمَاء  | كَرِيم |
| Mediator     | وُسَطَاء | وَسِيط | Surety         | كُفَلَاء  | كَفِيل |
| Humble       | وَضَعَاء | وَضِيع | Base           | لُومَاء   | لَثِيم |
|              |          |        | Kind, delicate | لُطَفَاء  | لَطِيف |

## 20. أَفْعَلَاء

|             |            |        |          |            |        |
|-------------|------------|--------|----------|------------|--------|
| Intimate    |            |        | Innocent | أَبْرِيَاء | بَرِي  |
| friend      | أَخْلَاء   | خَلِيل | Pious    | أَتَقِيَاء | تَقِي  |
| Adopted son | أَدْعِيَاء | دَعِي  | Glorious | أَجَلَاء   | جَلِيل |
| Guide       | أَدِلَاء   | دَلِيل | Beloved  | أَحِبَاء   | حَبِيب |
| Mean        | أَدْنِيَاء | دَنِي  | Sharp    | أَحِدَاء   | حَدِيد |
| Sagacious   | أَذْكِيَاء | ذَكِي  | Peculiar |            |        |
| Submissive  | أَذِلَاء   | ذَلِيل | friend   | أَخْصَاء   | خَاص   |

|             |             |        |           |             |        |
|-------------|-------------|--------|-----------|-------------|--------|
| Foolish     | اَغْيِيَاءُ | غِيِي  | Evil      | اَرْدِيَاءُ | رَدِي  |
| Rich        | اَغْنِيَاءُ | غَنِي  | Slave     | اَرَقَاءُ   | رَقِيق |
| Relative    | اَقْرَبَاءُ | قَرِيب | Generous  | اَسْخِيَاءُ | سَخِي  |
| Powerful    | اَقْوِيَاءُ | قَوِي  | Stingy    | اَشْحَاءُ   | شَحِيح |
| Intelligent | اَلْبَاءُ   | لَبِيب | Strong    | اَشَدَّاءُ  | شَدِيد |
| Prophet     | اَنْبِيَاءُ | نَبِي  | Miserable | اَشْقِيَاءُ | شَقِي  |
| Relative by |             |        | Sound     | اَصْحَاءُ   | صَحِيح |
| marriage    | اَنْسَبَاءُ | نَسِيب | Friend    | اَصْدِقَاءُ | صَدِيق |
| Pure        | اَنْقِيَاءُ | نَقِي  | Sincere   |             |        |
| Friend      | اَوْدَاءُ   | وَدِيد | friend    | اَصْفِيَاءُ | صَفِي  |
| Testator,   |             |        | Physician | اَطْبَاءُ   | طَبِيب |
| executor    | اَوْصِيَاءُ | وَصِي  | Precious, |             |        |
| Benefactor  | اَوْلِيَاءُ | وَلِي  | friend    | اَعَزَّاءُ  | عَزِيز |
|             |             |        | Sick      | اَعْلَاءُ   | عَلِيل |

## 21. فُعْلَان

|           |          |        |               |          |        |
|-----------|----------|--------|---------------|----------|--------|
| Fore-arm, |          |        | Camels        | بُعْرَان | بَعِير |
| cubit     | ذُرْعَان | ذِرَاع | Town, country | بُلْدَان | بَلَد  |
| Male      | ذُكْرَان | ذَكَر  | Wall, inclo-  |          |        |
| Shepherd  | رُعْيَان | رَاع   | sure          | جُدْرَان | جِدَار |
| Loaf      | رُغْفَان | رَغِيف | Lamb          | حُمْلَان | حَمَل  |
| Rider     | رُكْبَان | رَاكِب | Gulf          | خُلُجَان | خَلِيج |
| Monk      | رُهْبَان | رَاهِب | Intimate      |          |        |
| Youth     | شُبَّان  | شَاب   | friend        | خُلَّان  | خَلِيل |

|           |          |         |          |           |         |
|-----------|----------|---------|----------|-----------|---------|
| Clergyman | قُسَّان  | قِسِّيس | Boy      | صُبَيَّان | صَبِيّ  |
| Stick     | قُضْبَان | قَضِيب  | Cross    | صَلْبَان  | صَلِيب  |
| Flock     | قُطْعَان | قَطِيع  | Back     | ظَهْرَان  | ظَهْر   |
| Beehive   | قُقْرَان | قَفِير  | Blind    | عُيْمَان  | أَعْمَى |
| Shirt     | قُمَصَان | قَمِيص  | Pool     | غُدْرَان  | غَدِير  |
| Hill      | كُثْبَان | كَثِيب  | Horseman | فُرْسَان  | فَارِس  |
|           |          |         | Weaned   | فُضْلَان  | فَصِيل  |

## 22. فَعْلَان

|           |          |        |            |          |        |
|-----------|----------|--------|------------|----------|--------|
| Leg       | سِيقَان  | سَاق   | Brother    |          |        |
| Sparrow-  |          |        | (friend)   | إِخْوَان | أَخ    |
| hawk      | صِرْدَان | صُرْد  | Crown      | تِيَجَان | قَاج   |
| Eagle     | عِقْبَان | عُقَاب | Ox, bull   | ثِيرَان  | ثَوْر  |
| Wood, rod | عِيدَان  | عُود   | Rat        | جِرْدَان | جُرْد  |
| Crow      | غِرْبَان | غُرَاب | Neighbour  | جِيرَان  | جَار   |
| Gazelle   | غِرْلَان | غَرَال | Whale      | حَيْتَان | حَوْت  |
| Lad       | غِلْمَان | غُلَام | Wall       | حِيطَان  | حَائِط |
| Mouse     | فِثْرَان | فَأْر  | Sheep      | خِرْفَان | خُرُوف |
| Youth     | فِثْيَان | فَتَى  | Worm       | دِيدَان  | دُود   |
| Fire      | نِيرَان  | نَار   | Fly, flies | ذِبَّان  | ذُبَاب |

## 23. فَعَالَى

|           |          |         |         |           |        |
|-----------|----------|---------|---------|-----------|--------|
| Pregnant  | حَبَالَى | حُبْلَى | Widow,  |           |        |
| Sorrowful | حَزَانَى | حَزِين  | widower | أَيَّامَى | أَيِّم |

|          |          |           |           |          |           |
|----------|----------|-----------|-----------|----------|-----------|
| Virgin   | عَذَارَى | عَذْرَاءَ | Law-suit  | دَعَاوَى | دَعْوَى   |
| Penitent | نَدَامَى | نَدَمَانَ | Satisfied | شَبَاعَى | شَبَعَانَ |
| Orphan   | يَتَامَى | يَتِيمَ   | Pure      | طَهَارَى | طَاهِرَ   |

## 24. فُعَالَى

|             |          |           |         |          |           |
|-------------|----------|-----------|---------|----------|-----------|
| Unique, one |          |           | Intoxi- |          |           |
| by one      | فُرَادَى | فَرْدَ    | cated   | سُكَارَى | سُكْرَانَ |
| Lazy        | كُسَالَى | كَسْلَانَ |         |          |           |

## 25. فَعَالَى

|                |         |           |                |         |           |
|----------------|---------|-----------|----------------|---------|-----------|
| Chair          | كُرَاسٍ | كُرْسِيَّ | Land           | أَرَاضٍ | أَرْضَ    |
| Night          | لَيْالٍ | لَيْلَ    | People, family | أَهَالٍ | أَهْلَ    |
| Interior angle |         |           | Desert         | صَحَارٍ | صَحْرَاءَ |
| of the eye     | مَاقٍ   | مُوقٍ     | Bottle         | قَنَانٍ | قَنِينَةَ |

## 26. فَعَالَى

|              |            |             |           |            |            |
|--------------|------------|-------------|-----------|------------|------------|
| Upper Room   | عَلَالِيَّ | عِلِّيَّةَ  | Desert    | بَرَارِيَّ | بَرِّيَّةَ |
| Chair        | كُرَاسِيَّ | كُرْسِيَّ   | Chameleon | حَرَابِيَّ | حَرَبَاءَ  |
| Fleet camels | مَهَارِيَّ | مَهْرِيَّةَ | Concubine | سَرَارِيَّ | سَرِيَّةَ  |
|              |            |             | Desert    | صَحَارِيَّ | صَحْرَاءَ  |



PLURAL OF PLURALS. أَوزَانُ مُنْتَهَى الْجُمُوعِ

|              |             |
|--------------|-------------|
| 6 فَوَاعِل   | 1 فَعَالِل  |
| 7 فَوَاعِيل  | 2 فَعَالِيل |
| 8 مَفَاعِل   | 3 أَفَاعِل  |
| 9 مَفَاعِيل  | 4 أَفَاعِيل |
| 10 تَفَاعِيل | 5 فَعَائِل  |

PLURAL OF PLURALS. مُنْتَهَى الْجُمُوعِ

1. فَعَالِل

|              |          |         |             |           |            |
|--------------|----------|---------|-------------|-----------|------------|
| Black        |          |         | Hare        | أَرَانِب  | أَرَنْب    |
| locust       | جَنَادِب | جُنْدَب | Head veil   | بَخَانِق  | بُخْنُق    |
| Stocking     | جَوَارِب | جَوْرَب | Isthmus     | بَرَارِخ  | بَرْزَخ    |
| Substance,   |          |         | Bud         | بَرَاعِم  | بُرْعَم    |
| jewel, pearl | جَوَاهِر | جَوَهَر | Veil        | بَرَاغ    | بُرُقْع    |
| Fish scales  | حَرَاشِف | حُرْشَف | Dragoman,   |           |            |
| Colocynth    | حَنَاطِل | حَنْطَل | interpreter | فَرَاغِم  | تُرْجَمَان |
| Large Knife  | خَنَاجِر | خَنْجَر | Fox         | ثَعَالِب  | ثُعْلَب    |
| Silver coin  | دَرَاهِم | دِرْهَم | Breast of   |           |            |
| Copy-book,   |          |         | man         | ثَنَادِي  | ثَنْدُوَّة |
| register     | دَفَاتِر | دَقْتَر | Wild calf   | جَادِر    | جُوْدُر    |
| White silk   |          |         | Army        | جَاكِافِل | جَاكِفَل   |
| cloth        | دِمَاقِس | دِمَقْس | Brook, list | جَدَاوِل  | جَدَوَل    |
| Bracelet     | دِمَالِج | دُمْلَج | Skull       | جَمَاجِم  | جُمُجَمَة  |

|             |            |               |               |           |             |
|-------------|------------|---------------|---------------|-----------|-------------|
| Parasang,   |            |               | Embellish-    |           |             |
| league      | فَرَسَحْ   | فَرَسَحْ      | ment          | زَخَارِفْ | زُخْرُفْ    |
| Caravansary | فُنَادِقْ  | فُنْدُقْ      | Fins          | رَعَائِفْ | رُغْنَفَةٌ  |
| Biretta     | قَلَانِسْ  | قَلَنْسُوَّةْ | Tortoise      | سَلَاخِفْ | سَلَحْفَاةْ |
| Consul      | قَنَاصِلْ  | قُنْصُلْ      | Banner        | سَنَاجِقْ | سَنَجَقْ    |
| Bridge      | قَنَاطِرْ  | قَنْطَرَةٌ    | Party of men  | شَرَاذِمْ | شَرْدَمَةٌ  |
| Hedgehog    | قَنَافِذْ  | قُنْفُذْ      | Frog          | صَفَادِعْ | صِفْدِعْ    |
| Poultice,   |            |               | Bitter thing, |           |             |
| salve       | مَرَاهِمْ  | مَرَّهْمْ     | colocynth     | عَلَاقِمْ | عَلَقَمْ    |
| Tumult      | مَعَامِيعْ | مَعْبَعَةٌ    | Nightingale   | عَنَادِلْ | عَنْدَلِيبْ |
| Hoopoe      | هَدَاهِدْ  | هَذْهَدْ      | Elements      | عَنَاصِرْ | عُنْصُرْ    |
| Evil        |            |               | Spider        | عَنَاكِبْ | عَنْكَبُوتْ |
| thought     | وَسَاوِسْ  | وَسْوَاسْ     | Darkness      | غَيَاهِبْ | غَيْهَبْ    |

## فَعَالِيلُ 2.

|            |            |             |          |            |           |
|------------|------------|-------------|----------|------------|-----------|
| Circular   |            |             | Jug      | أَبَارِيقْ | إِبْرِيقْ |
| oven       | قَنَانِيرْ | قَنُورْ     | Hackney  | بَرَاذِينْ | بِرْدُونْ |
| The con-   |            |             | Bribe    | بَرَاطِيلْ | بَرَطِيلْ |
| stellation |            |             | Flea     | بَرَاغِيثْ | بُرْغُوثْ |
| Dragon     | تَنَانِينْ | تَنِينْ     | Volcano  | بَرَاكِينْ | بُرْكَانْ |
| Snake      | ثُعَابِينْ | ثُعْبَانْ   | Barrel   | بَرَامِيلْ | بَرْمِيلْ |
| Root       | جَرَاثِيمْ | جَرُثُومَةٌ | Proof    | بَرَاهِينْ | بُرْهَانْ |
| Outer gar- |            |             | Garden   | بَسَاتِينْ | بُسْتَانْ |
| ment       | جَلَابِيبْ | جِلْبَابْ   | Disciple | تَلَامِيذْ | تَلْمِيذْ |

|             |            |           |            |            |          |
|-------------|------------|-----------|------------|------------|----------|
| Bird        | عَصَافِير  | عُصْفُور  | Crowd      | جَمَاهِير  | جُمْهُور |
| Demon       | عَفَارِيت  | عَفْرِيت  | Elephant's |            |          |
| Drug        | عَقَاقِير  | عَقَّار   | trunk      | خَرَّاطِيم | خُرْطُوم |
| Bunch of    |            |           | Soft twig  | خَرَّاعِيب | خُرْعُوب |
| grapes      | عَنَاقِيد  | عُنُقُود  | Anklet     | خَلَاخِيل  | خَلْخَال |
| Sieve       | غَرَائِيل  | غِرْبَال  | Pig        | خَنَازِير  | خِنْزِير |
| Cartilage   | غَضَارِيف  | غُضْرُوف  | Gold coin  | دَنَانِير  | دِينَار  |
| Paradise    | فَرَادِيس  | فِرْدَوْس | Knife      | سَكَائِين  | سِكِّين  |
| Paper       | قَرَّاطِيس | قِرْطَاس  | Sultan     | سَلَّاطِين | سُلْطَان |
| Felt gloves | قَفَافِير  | قُفَّاز   | Window     | شَبَائِيك  | شُبَّاک  |
| Lamp        | قَنَادِيل  | قِنْدِيل  | Devil      | شَيَاطِين  | شَيْطَان |
| Hundred-    |            |           | Box        | صَنَادِيق  | صُنْدُوق |
| weight      | قَنَاطِير  | قَنْطَار  | Well,      |            |          |
| Guitar      | قِيَاثِير  | قِيْثَار  | cistern    | صَهَارِيج  | صِهْرِيج |
| Pamphlet    | كَرَارِيس  | كُرَّاسَة | Turkish    |            |          |
| Hole, fis-  |            |           | cap        | طَرَابِيش  | طَرَبُوش |
| sure        | نَخَارِيب  | نُخْرُوب  | Peacock    | طَوَاوِيس  | طَاوُوس  |

### أَفَاعِلُ 3.

|            |                   |            |            |          |            |
|------------|-------------------|------------|------------|----------|------------|
| Enigma     | أَحَاج            | أُحْجِيَّة | Thumb      | أَبَاهِم | إِبْهَام   |
| Middle of  |                   |            | Finger     | أَصَابِع | إِصْبَع    |
| the sole   | أَخَامِص          | أُخْمَاص   | Finger tip | أَنَامِل | أُذْمَلَة  |
| Poor widow | أَرَامِل          | أَرْمَلَة  | Stranger   | أَبَاعِد | أَبْعَد    |
| Name       | أَسَامِي (أَسَام) | إِسْم      | Foreigner  | أَجَانِب | أَجْنِيِّي |

|               |           |             |           |           |             |
|---------------|-----------|-------------|-----------|-----------|-------------|
| Scorpion      | أَفَاعٍ   | أَفْعَى     | Bracelet  | أَسَاوِرَ | سَوَارٍ     |
| Relative      | أَقْرَبَ  | أَقْرَبَ    | Smallest  | أَصَاغِرَ | أَصْغَرَ    |
| Greatest      | أَكْبَرُ  | أَكْبَرُ    | Nails     | أَظْفَارَ | أَظْفُرَ    |
| Most generous | أَكْرَمَ  | أَكْرَمَ    | Foreigner | أَعَاجِمَ | أَعَجَمَ    |
| Goat          | أَمَاعِزَ | أُمُوعَرَةَ | Song      | أَغَانٍ   | أُغْنِيَّةَ |

## 4. أَفَاعِيلَ

|              |            |             |                |            |             |
|--------------|------------|-------------|----------------|------------|-------------|
| Path,        |            |             | Palace, arched |            |             |
| method       | أَسَالِيبَ | أُسْلُوبَ   | hall           | أَوَاوِينَ | إِيَّوَانٍ  |
| Nails        | أَظْفِيرَ  | أَظْفِرَ    | Vanity         | أَبَاطِيلَ | أَبَاطِلَ   |
| Song         | أَغَانِيَّ | أُغْنِيَّةَ | Enigma         | أَحَاجِيَّ | أُحْجِيَّةَ |
| District     | أَقَالِيمَ | إِقْلِيمَ   | Story          | أَحَادِيثَ | أُحْدُوثَةَ |
| Saying       | أَقَاوِيلَ | أَقْوَالَ   | See-saw        | أَرَاجِيحَ | أُرْخُوحَةَ |
| Falsehood    | أَكَاذِيبَ | أَكْذُوبَةَ | Poem           | أَرَاجِيزَ | أُرْجُوزَةَ |
| Crown        | أَكَالِيلَ | إِكْلِيلَ   | Week           | أَسَابِيعَ | أُسْبُوعَ   |
| Poem, decla- |            |             | Handwri-       |            |             |
| mation       | أَنَاشِيدَ | أَنْشُودَةَ | ting           | أَسَاطِيرَ | أُسْطُورَةَ |

## 5. فَعَائِلَ

|            |           |           |            |                       |           |
|------------|-----------|-----------|------------|-----------------------|-----------|
| Cards      | بَطَائِقَ | بِطَاقَةَ | Throne     | أَرَائِكَ             | أَرِيكَتَ |
| Lining of  |           |           | Deer       | أَيَائِلَ             | إِيْلَ    |
| clothes    | بَطَائِنَ | بِطَانَةَ | Creature   | بَرَائِيَا (بَرَائِي) | بَرِيَّةَ |
| Amulet     | تَمَائِمَ | تَمِيمَةَ | Good news, |                       |           |
| News-paper | جَرَائِدَ | جَرِيدَةَ | Gospel     | بَشَائِرَ             | بِشَارَةَ |

|                |            |                     |            |                     |           |
|----------------|------------|---------------------|------------|---------------------|-----------|
| Curtain        | سِتَارَة   | سَتَائِر            | Crime      | جَرَائِر            | جَرِيرَة  |
| Cloud          | سَكَابَة   | سَكَائِب            | Crime      | جَرَائِم            | جَرِيْمَة |
| Secret, heart  | سَرِيرَة   | سَرَائِر            | Small      |                     |           |
| Body of troops |            |                     | garden     | جَنَائِن            | جُنَيْنَة |
|                | سَرِيَّة   | سَرَايَا (سَرَائِي) | Trap, net  | حَبَائِل            | حِبَالَة  |
| Insult         | شَتِيمَة   | شَتَائِم            | Fruit      |                     |           |
| Nature         | طَبِيعَة   | طَبَائِع            | garden     | حَدَائِق            | حَدِيقَة  |
| Miracle        | عَجَبِيَّة | عَجَائِب            | Sheepfold  | حَطَائِر            | حَطِيرَة  |
| Old Woman      | عَجُوز     | عَجَائِر            | Ditch      | حَفَائِر            | حَفِيرَة  |
| Resolution     | عَزِيمَة   | عَزَائِم            | Provision- |                     |           |
| Gift           | عَظِيمَة   | عَطَايَا (عَطَائِي) | bag        | حَقَائِب            | حَقِيبَة  |
| Important      |            |                     | Reality    | حَقَائِق            | حَقِيقَة  |
| affair         | عَظِيمَة   | عَظَائِم            | Treasury   | خَزَائِن            | خِزَانَة  |
| Turban         | عِمَامَة   | عِمَائِم            | Loss       | خَسَائِر            | خِسَارَة  |
| Wonderful      |            |                     | Sin        | خَطَايَا (خَطَائِي) | خَطِيَّة  |
| event          | غَرِيبَة   | غَرَائِب            | Bee-       |                     |           |
| Instinct       | غَرِيرَة   | غَرَائِر            | hive       | خَلَايَا (خَلَائِي) | خَلِيَّة  |
| Booty          | غَنِيمَة   | غَنَائِم            | Minute     | دَقَائِق            | دَقِيقَة  |
| Prey           | فَرِيسَة   | فَرَادِيس           | Victim     | دَبَائِح            | دَبِيحَة  |
| Muscle         | فَرِيسَة   | فَرَايِص            | Savings    | دَخَائِر            | دَخِيرَة  |
| Precept        | فَرِيسَة   | فَرَايِص            | Damage     | رَرَايَا (رَرَائِي) | رَرِيَّة  |
| Virtue,        |            |                     | Sub-       |                     |           |
| merit          | فَضِيلَة   | فَضَائِل            | jects      | رَعَايَا (رَعَائِي) | رَعِيَّة  |

|              |                     |          |                  |          |          |
|--------------|---------------------|----------|------------------|----------|----------|
| Defect, vice | نَقَائِص            | نَقِيصَة | Memory           | فَرَائِم | فَرِيحَة |
| Present      |                     |          | Necklace         | فَلَائِد | فَلَادَة |
|              | هَدَايَا (هَدَائِي) | هَدِيَّة | Squadron         | كُنَائِب | كَتِيبَة |
| Deposit      | وَدَائِع            | وَدِيعَة | Church           | كُنَائِس | كَنِيسَة |
| Pillow       | وَسَائِد            | وَسَادَة | Quiver           | كُنَائِن | كِنَانَة |
| Means        | وَسَائِط            | وَسِطَة  | Nicety of        |          |          |
| Means        | وَسَائِل            | وَسِيلَة | language         | لَطَائِف | لَطِيفَة |
| Commandment  |                     |          | Roll             | لَفَائِف | لُفَافَة |
|              | وَصَايَا (وَصَائِي) | وَصِيَّة | Death (مَنَائِي) | مَنَائِم | مَنِيَّة |
| Event, fight | وَقَائِع            | وَقِيعَة | Result           | نَتَائِم | نَتِيجَة |
|              |                     |          | Advice           | نَصَائِم | نَصِيحَة |

## 6. فَوَاعِل

|          |          |          |              |          |          |
|----------|----------|----------|--------------|----------|----------|
| Maid     | جَوَارٍ  | جَارِيَة | Vessel       | أَوَانٍ  | آيَة     |
| Mosque   | جَوَامِع | جَامِع   | Hastiness    | بَوَادِر | بَادِرَة |
| Side     | جَوَانِب | جَانِب   | Man-of-war   | بَوَارِج | بَارِجَة |
| Prize    | جَوَائِز | جَائِزَة | Jar          | بَوَاطٍ  | بَاطِيَة |
| Eye-brow | حَوَاجِب | حَاجِب   | Cause        | بَوَاعِث | بَاعِث   |
| Accident | حَوَادِث | حَادِثَة | Spice        | تَوَابِل | تَابِل   |
| Senses   | حَوَاسٍ  | حَاسَة   | Fixed (star) | ثَوَابِت | ثَابِت   |
| Marginal |          |          | Penetrating  |          |          |
| notes    | حَوَاشٍ  | حَاشِيَة | (mind)       | ثَوَاقِب | ثَاقِب   |
| Hoof     | حَوَافِر | حَافِر   | Second       | ثَوَانٍ  | ثَانِيَة |
| Want     | حَوَاجِب | حَاجَة   | Bird of prey | جَوَارِح | جَارِحَة |



|              |          |          |               |           |           |
|--------------|----------|----------|---------------|-----------|-----------|
| Storm        | عَوَاصِف | عَاصِفَة | Ring          | خَوَاتِم  | خَاتَم    |
| Capital      |          |          | Property      | خَوَاص    | خَاصَة    |
| (town)       | عَوَاصِم | عَاصِمَة | Beast         | دَوَاب    | دَابَّة   |
| Kind feeling | عَوَاطِف | عَاطِفَة | Misfortune    | دَوَاه    | دَاهِيَة  |
| Result       | عَوَاقِب | عَاقِبَة | Circle        | دَوَائِر  | دَائِرَة  |
| World        | عَوَالِم | عَالَم   | Lock of hair  | دَوَائِب  | دَوَابَة  |
| Grammatical  |          |          | Hill          | رَوَاب    | رَايَة    |
| regent       | عَوَامِل | عَامِل   | Swift-run-    |           |           |
| Common       |          |          | ning          | سَوَاحِج  | سَابِجَة  |
| people       | عَوَام   | عَامَة   | Precedence    | سَوَاقِيق | سَابِيقَة |
| Habit,       |          |          | Streamlet     | سَوَاقِي  | سَاقِيَة  |
| custom       | عَوَائِد | عَادَة   | Moustaches    | شَوَارِب  | شَارِب    |
| Shoulder     | عَوَاتِق | عَاتِق   | Street        | شَوَارِع  | شَارِع    |
| Secret       | غَوَامِض | غَامِضَة | Sea-shore     | شَوَاطِئ  | شَاطِئ    |
| Fruit        | فَوَاكِه | فَاكِهَة | Proof         | شَوَاهِد  | شَاهِد    |
| Profit       | فَوَائِد | فَائِدَة | Thunder-      |           |           |
| Front-part,  |          |          | bolt          | صَوَاعِق  | صَاعِقَة  |
| foremost     |          |          | Neighing      | صَوَاهِل  | صَاهِل    |
| feathers     | قَوَادِم | قَادِمَة | Outskirt      | صَوَاحِج  | صَاحِيَة  |
| Boat         | قَوَارِب | قَارِب   | Seal, stamp   | طَوَائِع  | طَابِع    |
| Rule, foun-  |          |          | Divorced      | طَوَالِق  | طَالِق    |
| dation       | قَوَاعِد | قَاعِدَة | Portion, rite | طَوَائِف  | طَائِفَة  |
| Caravan      | قَوَافِل | قَافِلَة | Obstacle      | عَوَارِض  | عَارِضَة  |

|              |           |           |             |           |           |
|--------------|-----------|-----------|-------------|-----------|-----------|
| Distinguish- |           |           | Rhyme       | قَوَافٍ   | قَافِيَةٌ |
| ed           | نَوَائِغٍ | نَائِغَةٌ | Mould       | قَوَالِبٍ | قَالِبٌ   |
| Region       | نَوَاحٍ   | نَاحِيَةٌ | Glittering  | لَوَائِعٍ | لَامِعٌ   |
| Curiosity    | نَوَادِرٍ | نَادِرَةٌ | Cattle      | مَوَاشٍ   | مَاشِيَةٌ |
| Fore-lock    | نَوَاصٍ   | نَاصِيَةٌ | Table, food | مَوَائِدٍ | مَائِدَةٌ |
| Loophole     | نَوَافِذٍ | نَافِذَةٌ | Harbour     | مَوَانٍ   | مِينَا    |
| Misfortune   | نَوَائِبٍ | نَائِبَةٌ |             |           |           |

## 7. فَوَاعِيلُ

|             |            |            |                                     |            |            |
|-------------|------------|------------|-------------------------------------|------------|------------|
| Mill        | طَوَاحِينٍ | طَاحُونٌ   | Strait                              | بَوَاغِيزٍ | بُوعَازٌ   |
| Lantern     | فَوَائِيسٍ | فَانُوسٌ   | Drain                               | بَوَالِيعٍ | بَالُوعَةٌ |
| Bottle      | قَوَارِيرٍ | قَارُورَةٌ | Spy                                 | جَوَاسِيسٍ | جَاسُوسٌ   |
| Dictionary, |            |            | Sack                                | جَوَالِيقٍ | جُوالِقٌ   |
| ocean       | قَوَامِيسٍ | قَامُوسٌ   | Buffalo                             | جَوَامِيسٍ | جَامُوسٌ   |
| Rule        | قَوَائِينٍ | قَانُونٌ   | Wheel                               | دَوَالِيبٍ | دَوَلَابٌ  |
| Law         | نَوَامِيسٍ | نَامُوسٌ   | Court, col-<br>lection of<br>poetry | دَوَاوِينٍ | دِيَوَانٌ  |

## 8. مَفَاعِلُ

|            |           |            |             |           |           |
|------------|-----------|------------|-------------|-----------|-----------|
| Veil       | مَآزِرٍ   | مِثْرَرَةٌ | Funeral     | مَسَاقِمٍ | مَسَاقِمٌ |
| Food       | مَآكِلٍ   | مَأْكَلٌ   | Noteworthy  |           |           |
| Dwelling   | مَآوٍ     | مَأْوَى    | fact        | مَسَائِرٍ | مَآثِرَةٌ |
| Discussion | مَبَاحِثٍ | مَبْكَحَتٌ | Aim, desire | مَآرِبٍ   | مَآرَبٌ   |

|             |          |           |               |          |             |
|-------------|----------|-----------|---------------|----------|-------------|
| Anchor      | مَرَّاس  | مِرْسَاة  | Censer        | مَبَاخِر | مِبْدَخَرَة |
| Pastorage   | مَرَاع   | مَرْعَى   | Origin, prin- |          |             |
| Bed         | مَرَاقد  | مَرَقْد   | ciple         | مَبَادِي | مَبْدَأ     |
| Mosque      | مَسَاجِد | مَسْجِد   | File          | مَبَارِد | مِبْرَد     |
| Paper-ruler | مَسَاطِر | مِسْطَرَة | Beneficence   | مَبَار   | مَبْرَة     |
| Dwelling    | مَسَاكِن | مَسْكَن   | Water-course  | مَجَار   | مَجْرَى     |
| Evil deed   | مَسَاوِي | مَسَاءَة  | Council       | مَجَامِع | مَجْمَع     |
| Difficulty  | مَشَاق   | مَشَقَّة  | Ink-pot       | مَخَابِر | مِخْبَرَة   |
| Bed         | مَضَاجِع | مَضْجَع   | Orbit of      |          |             |
| Damage      | مَضَار   | مَضَرَّة  | the eye       | مَخَاجِر | مَخْجِر     |
| Kitchen     | مَطَابِخ | مَطْبَخ   | Meeting       |          |             |
| Printing-   |          |           | place         | مَخَافِد | مَخْفِل     |
| press       | مَطَابِع | مَطْبَعَة | Store         | مَخَازِن | مَخْزَن     |
| Mine        | مَعَادِن | مَعْدِن   | Claw          | مَخَالِب | مِخْلَب     |
| Exhibition  | مَعَارِض | مَعْرِض   | School        | مَدَارِس | مَدْرَسَة   |
| Battle      | مَعَارِي | مَعْرَكَة | Burying-      |          |             |
| Manger      | مَعَالِف | مَعْلِف   | place         | مَدَافِن | مَدْفِن     |
| Manufacture | مَعَامِل | مَعْمَل   | Rite, sect    | مَذَاهِب | مَذْهَب     |
| Meaning     | مَعَانِي | مَعْنَى   | Mirror        | مَرَاة   | مِرْآة      |
| Resort      | مَعَاهِد | مَعْهَد   | High rank     | مَرَاتِب | مَرْتَبَة   |
| Defect      | مَعَايِب | مَعَاب    | Dirge, elegy  | مَرَاثِ  | مَرثَاة     |
| Plantation  | مَغَارِس | مَغْرِس   | Mercy         | مَرَامِ  | مَرْحَمَة   |
| Spindle     | مَغَارِل | مَغْرَل   | Anchorage     | مَرَّاس  | مَرَسَى     |

|           |            |            |              |           |            |
|-----------|------------|------------|--------------|-----------|------------|
| Goad      | مَنَاحِيسَ | مِنْكَحَسَ | Cave         | مَعَارِدَ | مَعَارَةَ  |
| Sieve     | مَنَاحِلَ  | مُنْخُلَ   | Desert       | مَعَادِزَ | مَعَارَةَ  |
| Lodging   | مَنَارِلَ  | مَنْزِلَ   | Cemetery     | مَقَابِرَ | مَقْبَرَةَ |
| View      | مَنَاطِرَ  | مَنْظَرَ   | Design, pur- |           |            |
| Virtue    | مَنَاقِبَ  | مَنْقَبَةَ | pose         | مَقَاصِدَ | مَقْصِدَ   |
| Shoulder  | مَنَائِبَ  | مَنْكِبَ   | Frying-pan   | مَقَالٍ   | مِقْلَى    |
| Watering- |            |            | Elementary   |           |            |
| place     | مَنَاهِلَ  | مَنْهَلَ   | school       | مَكَايِبَ | مَكْتَبَ   |
| Windward  | مَهَابَ    | مَهَبَ     | Library      | مَكَايِبَ | مَكْتَبَةَ |
| Refuge    | مَهَارِبَ  | مَهْرَبَ   | Gain         | مَكَايِبَ | مَكْسَبَ   |
| Place of  |            |            | Broom        | مَكَانِسَ | مِكْنَسَةَ |
| peril     | مَهَالِكَ  | مَهْلِكَ   | Stratagem    | مَكَايِدَ | مَكِيدَةَ  |
| Time of   |            |            | Delight      | مَلَادَ   | مَلْدَةَ   |
| meeting   | مَوَاسِمَ  | مَوْسِمَ   | Theatre      | مَلَاعِبَ | مَلْعَبَ   |
| Place     | مَوَاضِعَ  | مَوْضِعَ   | Spoon        | مَلَاعِقَ | مِلْعَقَةَ |
| Gift      | مَوَاهِبَ  | مَوْهَبَةَ | Nostril      | مَنَاحِرَ | مَنْخَرَ   |

## مَفَاعِيلَ 9.

|            |            |             |           |            |           |
|------------|------------|-------------|-----------|------------|-----------|
| Famous     | مَشَاهِيرَ | مَشْهُورَ   | 1½ Dirhem | مَثَاقِيلَ | مُثْقَالَ |
| Torch      | مَصَابِيحَ | مِصْبَاحَ   | Wounded   | مَجَارِيحَ | مَجْرُوحَ |
| Folding    |            |             | Mad       | مَجَانِينَ | مَجْنُونَ |
| door       | مَصَارِيحَ | مِصْرَاعَ   | Psalm     | مَزَامِيرَ | مَزْمُورَ |
| Key        | مَفَاتِيحَ | مِفْتَاحَ   | Destitute | مَسَاكِينَ | مِسْكِينَ |
| Upper room | مَقَاصِيرَ | مَقْصُورَةَ | Nail      | مَسَامِيرَ | مِسْمَارَ |

|             |           |          |         |           |          |
|-------------|-----------|----------|---------|-----------|----------|
| Bird's bill | مَنَاقِير | مِنْقَار | Key     | مَقَالِيد | مَقْلَاد |
| Spur        | مَهَامِيز | مِهْمَاز | Cursed  | مَلَاعِين | مَلْعُون |
| Compact     | مَوَائِق  | مَيْثَاق | Nose    | مَنَاحِير | مِنْخَار |
| House       |           |          | Veil    | مَنَادِيل | مِنْدِيل |
| utensil     | مَوَاعِين | مَاعُون  | Saw     | مَنَاشِير | مِنْشَار |
| Subject     | مَوَاضِع  | مَوْضُوع | Letters |           |          |
| Born, off-  |           |          | patent  | مَنَاشِير | مَنْشُور |
| spring      | مَوَالِيد | مَوْلُود | Balloon | مَنَاطِيد | مِنْطَاد |
|             |           |          | Bellows | مَنَافِيح | مِنْفَاخ |

## 10. تَفَاعِيل

|            |           |          |             |            |             |
|------------|-----------|----------|-------------|------------|-------------|
| Commentary | تَفَاسِير | تَفْسِير | History     | تَوَارِيخ  | تَأْرِیْخ   |
| Tradition  | تَقَالِيد | تَقْلِيد | Edition     | تَأَلِيف   | تَأْلِيف    |
| Image,     |           |          | Misfortune  | تَبَارِیْخ | تَبْرِیْخ   |
| statue     | تَمَائِل  | تِمْنَال | Composition | تَرَائِيب  | تَرْكِيب    |
| Crocodile  | تَمَاسِیح | تِمْسَاح | Canticle    | تَسَابِیح  | تَسْمِیْکَة |
|            |           |          | Amulet      | تَعَاوِذ   | تَعْوِیْذَة |

A ة IS ADDED TO SOME MEASURES:

|           |            |           |            |            |           |
|-----------|------------|-----------|------------|------------|-----------|
| Sagacious |            |           | Satan      | أَبَالِسَة | إِبْلِیس  |
| man       | جَهَائِدَة | جَهْد     | Bishop     | أَسَاقِفَة | أُسُقُف   |
| Disciple  | تَلَامِذَة | تِلْمِیْذ | Veterinary |            |           |
| Broker    | سَمَاسِرَة | سِمْسَار  | surgeon    | بِیَاطِرَة | بِیْطَار  |
| Chemist   | صَيَادِلَة | صَيْدَلِی | Patriarch  | بَطَارِقَة | بَطْرِیْق |

|        |            |            |          |            |             |
|--------|------------|------------|----------|------------|-------------|
| Satrap | مَرَاذِبَة | مَرَزْبَان | Money-   |            |             |
| Bishop | مَطَارِنَة | مَطْرَان   | changer  | صَيَارِفَة | صَيْرَفِي   |
| Angel  | مَلَائِكَة | مَلَاى     | Caesar   | فَيَاصِرَة | فَيَصْر     |
|        |            |            | Cardinal | كَرَادِلَة | كَرْدِينَال |

TRILITERAL VERBS ARRANGED  
ACCORDING TO THEIR MEDIAL RADICAL IN THE  
PRETERITE AND AORIST, WITH THEIR NOUNS  
OF ACTION IN COMMON USE.

1 فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ

2 فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

3 فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ

4 فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

5 فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

6 فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ

فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ

|                 |              |         |                 |             |       |
|-----------------|--------------|---------|-----------------|-------------|-------|
| To be fulfilled | تَمَامَا     | قَمَّ   | To take shelter | إِرَاءَ     | أَرَى |
| „ wander        | تَيَهَّأْنَا | تَاهَا  | „ cut (a pen)   | بَرَّيَا    | بَرَى |
| „ form, mix     |              |         | „ seek          | بَغِيَا     | بَغَى |
| with water      | جَبَلَاءَ    | جَبَلَّ | „ weep          | بَكَاءَ     | بَكَى |
| „ exert one-    |              |         | „ pass the      |             |       |
| self            | جَدَّاهَا    | جَدَّ   | night           | مَبِيئَتَا  | بَاتَ |
| „ draw          | جَذَّبَا     | جَذَبَ  | „ sell          | بَيْعَا     | بَاعَ |
| „ run           | جَرَّيَا     | جَرَّى  | „ be distant    | بَيْنُونَةً | بَانَ |



|               |             |        |                |             |        |
|---------------|-------------|--------|----------------|-------------|--------|
| To bury       | دَفَنَّا    | دَفَنَ | To sit         | جُلُوسًا    | جَلَسَ |
| „ eulogise    | رَثَاءَ     | رَثَى  | „ gather fruit | جَنَيْتًا   | جَنَى  |
| „ return      | رُجُوعًا    | رَجَعَ | „ impose       | حَتَمًا     | حَتَمَ |
| „ relate      | رِزَايَةً   | رَوَى  | „ omit         | حَدَفًا     | حَدَفَ |
| „ increase    | زِيَادَةً   | زَادَ  | „ deprive      | حَرَمَانًا  | حَرَمَ |
| „ err         | زَيَّغَانًا | زَاغَ  | „ pack up      | حَزَمًا     | حَزَمَ |
| „ take cap-   |             |        | „ dig          | حَفَّرًا    | حَفَرَ |
| tive          | سَبِيًّا    | سَبَى  | „ swear        | حَلِفًا     | حَلَفَ |
| „ steal       | سَرِقَةً    | سَرَقَ | „ shave        | حِلَاقَةً   | حَلَقَ |
| „ circulate   |             |        | „ carry        | حَمَلًا     | حَمَلَ |
| (blood)       | سَرِيَانًا  | سَرَى  | „ protect      | حِمَايَةً   | حَمَى  |
| „ shed blood  | سَفَكًا     | سَفَكَ | „ surround     | حُيُوقًا    | حَاقَ  |
| „ give to     |             |        | „ weave        | حِيَاكَةً   | حَاكَ  |
| drink         | سَقِيًّا    | سَقَى  | „ be in        |             |        |
| „ travel      | سِيَاحَةً   | سَاحَ  | season         | حَيْنُونَةً | حَانَ  |
| „ march       | سَيْرًا     | سَارَ  | „ kneel        | خُرُورًا    | خَرَّ  |
| „ flow        | سَيْلَانًا  | سَالَ  | „ vanish be    |             |        |
| „ revile      | شَتْمًا     | شَتَمَ | eclipsed       | خَسَفًا     | خَسَفَ |
| „ buy         | شِرَاءً     | شَرَى  | „ subdue       | خَفَضًا     | خَفَضَ |
| „ be trans-   |             |        | „ mix          | خَلَطًا     | خَلَطَ |
| parent        | شُفُوفًا    | شَفَّ  | „ fail         | خَبِيئَةً   | خَابَ  |
| „ roast       | شَيًّا      | شَوَى  | „ sew          | خِيَاطَةً   | خَاطَ  |
| „ become grey | شَيْبًا     | شَابَ  | „ know         | دِرَايَةً   | دَرَى  |

|               |            |        |             |              |         |
|---------------|------------|--------|-------------|--------------|---------|
| To rebel      | عَصِيَانًا | عَصَى  | To become   |              |         |
| „ incline     |            |        | old         | شَيْخُوخَةً  | شَاخَ   |
| towards,      |            |        | „ besound,  |              |         |
| join to       | عَطَفًا    | عَطَفَ | right       | صِحَّةً      | صَحَّمَ |
| „ tie         | عَقْدًا    | عَقَدَ | „ dismiss,  |              |         |
| „ persevere   | عَكْفًا    | عَكَفَ | spend       | صَرَقًا      | صَرَفَ  |
| „ feed cattle | عَلَفًا    | عَلَفَ | „ cry out,  |              |         |
| „ be faulty   | عَيْبًا    | عَابَ  | crow        | صِيَاحًا     | صَاحَ   |
| „ live        | مَعِيشَةً  | عَاشَ  | „ become    | صَيَّرُورَةً | صَارَ   |
| „ plant       | غَرْسًا    | غَرَسَ | „ make a    |              |         |
| „ spin        | غَزَلًا    | غَزَلَ | noise       | صَجِيجًا     | صَمَجَّ |
| „ wash        | غَسَلًا    | غَسَلَ | „ beat      | ضَرْبًا      | ضَرَبَ  |
| „ forgive     | غُفْرَانًا | غَفَرَ | „ be lost   | ضَيَاعًا     | ضَاعَ   |
| „ conquer     | غَلَبَةً   | غَلَبَ | „ „ narrow  | ضَيْقًا      | ضَاقَ   |
| „ boil        | غَلِيَانًا | غَلَى  | „ leap      | طُفُورًا     | طَفَرَ  |
| „ be absent   | غَيْبًا    | غَابَ  | „ fold      | طَيًّا       | طَوَى   |
| „ seduce      | فِتْنَةً   | فَتَنَ | „ be agree- |              |         |
| „ flee        | فِرَارًا   | فَرَّ  | able        | طِيبًا       | طَابَ   |
| enact, sup-   |            |        | „ fly       | طَيْرَانًا   | طَارَ   |
| pose          | فَرَضًا    | فَرَضَ | „ happen    | عَرَضًا      | عَرَضَ  |
| „ bleed       | فَصْدًا    | فَصَدَ | „ know      | مَعْرِفَةً   | عَرَفَ  |
| „ separate    | فَصْلًا    | فَصَلَ | „ resolve   | عَزَمًا      | عَزَمَ  |
| „ overflow    | فَيْضَانًا | فَاضَ  | „ prevent   | عِصْمَةً     | عَصَمَ  |

|             |            |        |                |           |        |
|-------------|------------|--------|----------------|-----------|--------|
| To incline  | مَيْلَانًا | مَالَ  | To grasp       | قَبْضًا   | قَبْصَ |
| „ abandon   | نَبَذًا    | نَبَذَ | „ throw,       |           |        |
| „ throb     | نَبْضًا    | نَبْصَ | vomit          | قَذْفًا   | قَذَفَ |
| „ take away | نَزَعًا    | نَزَعَ | „ join         | قَرَنًا   | قَرَنَ |
| „ descend   | نُزُولًا   | نَزَلَ | „ gnaw         | قَرَضًا   | قَرَضَ |
| „ attribute | نِسْبَةً   | نَسَبَ | „ purpose      | قَصْدًا   | قَصَدَ |
| „ winnow,   |            |        | „ decide, die, |           |        |
| scatter     | نَسْفًا    | نَسَفَ | fulfil         | قَضَاءً   | قَضَى  |
| „ speak     | نُطْقًا    | نَطَقَ | „ jump         | قَفْزًا   | قَفَزَ |
| „ prohibit, |            |        | „ fry          | قَلِيًّا  | قَلَى  |
| attain      | نَهْيًا    | نَهَى  | „ measure      | قِيَاسًا  | قَاسَ  |
| „ intend    | نِيَّةً    | نَوَى  | „ lie          | كَذِبًا   | كَذَبَ |
| „ shout     | هَتَافًا   | هَتَفَ | „ gain         | كَسْبًا   | كَسَبَ |
| „ put to    |            |        | „ break        | كَسْرًا   | كَسَرَ |
| flight      | هَزِيمَةً  | هَزَمَ | „ uncover      | كَشْفًا   | كَشَفَ |
| „ break,    |            |        | „ suffice      | كَفَايَةً | كَفَى  |
| bruise      | هَشَمًا    | هَشَمَ | „ be weary     | كَلًّا    | كَلَّ  |
| „ digest    | هَضْمًا    | هَضَمَ | „ slap         | لَطْمًا   | لَطَمَ |
| „ perish    | هَلَاكًا   | هَلَكَ | „ touch        | لَمَسًا   | لَمَسَ |
| „ be agi-   |            |        | „ be fitting   | لِبَاقَةً | لَاقَ  |
| tated (sea) | هَيَاجًا   | هَاجَ  | „ „ tender,    |           |        |
| „ love pas- |            |        | kind           | لَيْنًا   | لَانَ  |
| sionately   | هَيَامًا   | هَامَ  | „ possess      | مُلْكًا   | مَلَكَ |

|                 |           |        |               |            |         |
|-----------------|-----------|--------|---------------|------------|---------|
| To arrive, join | صَلَّةٌ   | وَصَلَ | To bury alive | وَأْدَا    | وَأَدَّ |
| „ promise       | عِدَّةٌ   | وَعَدَ | „ leap        | وُثْبًا    | وَثَبَ  |
| „ exhort        | عِظَةً    | وَعِظَ | „ trust       | ثِقَةً     | وَثَقَ  |
| „ come          | وُفُودًا  | وَفَدَ | „ be neces-   |            |         |
| „ fulfil a      |           |        | sary          | وُجُوبًا   | وَجَبَ  |
| compact         | وَفِيًّا  | وَفَى  | „ find        | وَجَدَانَا | وَجَدَ  |
| „ burn          | وُفُودًا  | وَقَدَ | „ come        | وُزُودًا   | وَزَدَ  |
| „ stand         | وُفُوفًا  | وَقَفَ | „ weigh       | وَزْنًا    | وَزَنَ  |
| „ guard         | وَقَايَةً | وَقَى  | „ load        | وَسْقًا    | وَسَقَ  |
| „ shed tears    | وَكَفًّا  | وَكَفَ | „ brand       | سِمَةً     | وَسَمَ  |
| „ entrust       | وَكَلًّا  | وَكَلَ | „ calum-      |            |         |
| „ beget         | وِلَادَةً | وَلَدَ | niate         | وِشَايَةً  | وَشَى   |
| „ be weak       | وَهِيًّا  | وَهَى  | „ describe    | صِفَةً     | وَصَفَ  |

## فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

|                |           |         |                |          |         |
|----------------|-----------|---------|----------------|----------|---------|
| To spread out  | بَسَطًا   | بَسَطَ  | To take        | أَخَذًا  | أَخَذَ  |
| „ assault      | بَطْشًا   | بَطَشَ  | „ eat          | أَكَلًا  | أَكَلَ  |
| „ be vain      | بُطْلًا   | بَطَلَ  | „ command      | أَمْرًا  | أَمَرَ  |
| „ attain       | بُلُوغًا  | بَلَغَ  | „ direct one's |          |         |
| „ wet          | بَلًّا    | بَدَّ   | steps          | أَمًّا   | أَمَّ   |
| „ recite, read | تِلَاوَةً | تَلَا   | „ return       | إِيَابًا | آبَ     |
| „ repent       | تَوْبَةً  | تَابَ   | „ publish      | بَثًّا   | بَثَّ   |
| „ stand firm   | ثُبُوتًا  | ثَبَّتَ | „ give freely  | بَدَلًا  | بَدَلَ  |
| „ pierce       | ثُقْبًا   | ثَقَبَ  | „ appear       | بُرُوزًا | ابْرَزَ |

|                |            |        |                 |            |         |
|----------------|------------|--------|-----------------|------------|---------|
| To envy        | حَسَدًا    | حَسَدَ | To rise, (dust, |            |         |
| „ assemble     | حَشَرًا    | حَشَرَ | war), be        |            |         |
| „ reap         | حَصَدًا    | حَصَدَ | roused          | ثَوْرَانَا | ثَارَ   |
| „ be present   | حُضُورًا   | حَضَرَ | „ set a frac-   |            |         |
| „ put, fall in |            |        | ture            | جَبَرًا    | جَبَرَ  |
| price          | حَطًّا     | حَطَّ  | „ drag          | جَرًّا     | جَرَ    |
| „ rub          | حَكًّا     | حَكَّ  | „ shear         | جَزًّا     | جَزَّ   |
| „ dream        | حُلْمًا    | حَلَمَ | „ touch, feel   | جَسًّا     | جَسَّ   |
| „ be changed   | حَوَالًا   | حَالَ  | „ polish,       |            |         |
| „ betray       | خِذْلَانَا | خَذَلَ | emigrate        | جَلَاءَ    | جَلَا   |
| „ pierce, tra- |            |        | „ be liberal,   |            |         |
| verse          | خَرْقًا    | خَرَقَ | excellent       | جُودًا     | جَادَ   |
| „ trace, write | خَطًّا     | خَطَّ  | „ oppress       | جَوْرًا    | جَارَ   |
| „ step         | خَطْوًا    | خَطَا  | „ pass, be      |            |         |
| „ create       | خَلْقًا    | خَلَقَ | lawful          | جَوَازًا   | جَازَ   |
| „ tan          | دَبْعًا    | دَبَعَ | „ hunger        | جُوعًا     | جَاعَ   |
| „ enter        | دُخُولًا   | دَخَلَ | „ wander        | جَوْلَانًا | جَالَ   |
| „ study        | دَرْسًا    | دَرَسَ | „ urge          | حَثًّا     | حَثَّ   |
| „ call         | دُعَاءَ    | دَعَا  | „ veil          | حَجَبًا    | حَجَبَ  |
| „ knock, pound | دَقًّا     | دَقَّ  | „ make a        |            |         |
| „ guide        | دَلَالَةً  | دَلَّ  | pilgrimage      | حَجَّاجَةً | حَجَّجَ |
| „ approach     | دُنُوًا    | دَنَا  | „ hinder,       |            |         |
| „ revolve      | دَوْرَانًا | دَارَ  | sequester       | حَبْرًا    | حَبَرَ  |
| „ dilute       | دَوْفًا    | دَافَ  | „ happen        | حُدُوثًا   | حَدَثَ  |
| „ continue     | دَوَامًا   | دَامَ  | „ guard         | حِرَاسَةً  | حَرَسَ  |

|                |           |         |              |            |         |
|----------------|-----------|---------|--------------|------------|---------|
| To be quiet    | سَكُوتًا  | سَكَتَ  | To melt      | ذَوْبَانًا | ذَابَ   |
| „ dwell        | سَكُنَى   | سَكَنَ  | „ quake      | رَجَفَانًا | رَجَفَ  |
| „ boil         | سَلَقًا   | سَلَقَ  | „ stone      | رَجَبًا    | رَجَمَ  |
| „ behave,      |           |         | „ hope       | رَجَاءً    | رَجَا   |
| go along       | سَلُوكًا  | سَلَكَ  | „ restore    | رَدًّا     | رَدَّ   |
| „ enact,       |           |         | „ disapprove | رَدْلًا    | رَدَّلَ |
| sharpen        | سَنًا     | سَنَّ   | „ prescribe, |            |         |
| „ grieve, be   |           |         | sketch       | رَسْمًا    | رَسَمَ  |
| evil           | سُوءًا    | سَاءَ   | „ sprinkle   | رَشًّا     | رَشَّ   |
| „ be chief     | سِيَادَةً | سَادَ   | „ refuse     | رَفْضًا    | رَفَضَ  |
| „ drive        | سَوْقًا   | سَاقَ   | „ dance      | رَقْصًا    | رَقَصَ  |
| „ revile       | شَتْمًا   | شَتَمَ  | „ run        | رَكْضًا    | رَكَضَ  |
| „ perceive     | شُعُورًا  | شَعَرَ  | „ desire     |            |         |
| „ split        | شَقًّا    | شَقَّى  | strongly     | مَرَامًا   | رَامَ   |
| „ doubt        | شَكًّا    | شَكَّ   | „ interdict  | زَجْرًا    | زَجَرَ  |
| „ complain     | شِكَايَةً | شَكَا   | „ pass away  | زَوَالًا   | آلَ     |
| „ smell        | شَمًّا    | شَمَّ   | „ precede,   |            |         |
| „ pour         | صَبًّا    | صَبَّ   | outstrip     | سَبْقًا    | سَبَقَ  |
| „ dye, baptize | صَبْغًا   | صَبَّحَ | „ veil       | سِتْرًا    | سَتَرَ  |
| „ start        | صُدُورًا  | صَدَرَ  | „ prostrate  |            |         |
| „ tell the     |           |         | oneself      | سُجُودًا   | سَجَدَ  |
| truth          | صِدْقًا   | صَدَقَ  | „ please,    |            |         |
| „ polish       | صَقْلًا   | صَقَلَ  | rejoice      | سُرُورًا   | سَرَّ   |
| „ be silent    | صَمْتًا   | صَمَتَ  | „ assail     | سَطْوَةً   | سَطَا   |
| „ fast         | صِيَامًا  | صَامَ   | „ pour       | سَكْبًا    | سَكَبَ  |



|                |            |         |               |            |        |
|----------------|------------|---------|---------------|------------|--------|
| To return      | عَوَدًا    | عَادَ   | To preserve   | صَيَانَةً  | صَانَ  |
| „ feed         | عِيَالَةً  | عَالَ   | „ injure      | ضَرًّا     | ضَرَّ  |
| „ float        | عَوْمًا    | عَامَ   | „ dress a     |            |        |
| „ act trea-    |            |         | wound         | ضَمَدًا    | ضَمَدَ |
| cherously      | غَدْرًا    | غَدَرَ  | „ driveaway   | طَرَدًا    | طَرَدَ |
| „ disappear,   |            |         | „ knock, come |            |        |
| set (sun)      | غُرُوبًا   | غَرَبَ  | by night      | طَرَقًا    | طَرَقَ |
| „ deceive      | غُرُورًا   | غَرَّ   | „ ask         | طَلَبًا    | طَلَبَ |
| „ be languid,  |            |         | „ appear,     |            |        |
| lukewarm       | فُتُورًا   | فَتَرَ  | rise          | طُلُوعًا   | طَلَعَ |
| „ spread       | فُرُشًا    | فَرَشَ  | „ walk        |            |        |
| „ be empty     | فَرَاغًا   | فَرَغَ  | around        | طَوَفَانًا | طَافَ  |
| „ „ corrupt    | فَسَادًا   | فَسَدَ  | „ suppose,    |            |        |
| „ loose        | فَكًّا     | فَكَ    | suspect       | ظَنًّا     | ظَنَّ  |
| „ miss, elapse | فَوْتًا    | فَاتَ   | „ worship     | عِبَادَةً  | عَبَدَ |
| „ diffuse      |            |         | „ cross       | عُبُورًا   | عَبَرَ |
| (perfume)      | فَوَحَانًا | فَاحَ   | „ be proud    | عُتُورًا   | عَتَا  |
| „ boil over    | فُورَانًا  | فَارَ   | „ stumble     | عُثُورًا   | عَثَرَ |
| „ win          | فُوزًا     | فَازَ   | „ count       | عَدًّا     | عَدَّ  |
| „ surpass      | فُوقًا     | فَاقَ   | „ run         | عَدَوًا    | عَدَا  |
| „ kill         | قَتْلًا    | قَتَلَ  | „ help        | عَضْدًا    | عَضَدَ |
| „ reside       | قُطْرُنًا  | قَطَنَ  | „ sneeze      | عُطَاسًا   | عَطَسَ |
| „ sit          | تُعُودًا   | تَعَدَّ | „ pardon      | عَفْوًا    | عَفَا  |
| „ lead         | قِيَادَةً  | قَادَ   | „ inhabit,    |            |        |
| „ say          | قَوْلًا    | قَالَ   | live long     | عُمَرًا    | عَمَرَ |

|                |            |        |                 |            |         |
|----------------|------------|--------|-----------------|------------|---------|
| To grant       | مَنَّا     | مَنَّ  | To rise         | فِيَا مَّا | قَامَ   |
| „ die          | مَوْتًا    | مَاتَ  | „ write         | كِتَابَةً  | كَتَبَ  |
| „ grow         | نَبَاتًا   | نَبَتَ | „ conceal       | كِتْمَانًا | كَتَمَ  |
| „ sift         | نَحْلًا    | نَحَلَ | „ toil          | كَدًا      | كَدَّ   |
| „ bewail, call | نَدْبًا    | نَدَبَ | „ clothe        | كَسَوًا    | كَسَا   |
| „ spread, saw  | نَشْرًا    | نَشَرَ | „ stay, refrain |            |         |
| „ assist, give |            |        | from            | كَفًّا     | كَفَّ   |
| victory        | نَصْرًا    | نَصَرَ | „ lurk          | كُمُونًا   | كَمَنَ  |
| „ look         | نَظَرًا    | نَظَرَ | „ be            | كَيَانًا   | كَانَ   |
| „ blow         | نَفْحًا    | نَفَحَ | „ roll, wrap    | لَفًّا     | لَفَّ   |
| „ penetrate    | نُفُودًا   | نَفَدَ | „ gather        | لَمًّا     | لَمَّ   |
| „ bore         | نَقَبًا    | نَقَبَ | „ amuse         | لَهْوًا    | لَهَا   |
| „ chisel       | نَقْشًا    | نَقَشَ | „ spit          | مَجًّا     | مَجَّ   |
| „ decrease     | نُقْصَانًا | نَقَصَ | „ efface        | مَحْوًا    | مَحَا   |
| „ fill the     |            |        | „ cleave the    |            |         |
| place of       | نِيَابَةً  | نَابَ  | water(ship)     | مَخْرًا    | مَخَرَ  |
| „ lament       | نَوْحًا    | نَاحَ  | „ spread        | مَدًّا     | مَدَّ   |
| „ abandon      | هَجْرًا    | هَجَرَ | „ pass          | مَرًّا     | مَرَّ   |
| „ flee         | هَرَبًا    | هَرَبَ | „ mix           | مَزَجًا    | مَزَجَ  |
| „ rain fast    | هَطْلًا    | هَطَلَ | „ chew          | مَضْغًا    | مَضَغَ  |
| „ affright     | هَوْلًا    | هَالَ  | „ rain          | مَطَرًا    | مَطَرَ  |
| „ be easy,     |            |        | „ delay         | مَطْلًا    | مَطَّلَ |
| base           | هَوْنًا    | هَانَ  | „ abhor         | مَقْتًا    | مَقَّتَ |
|                |            |        | „ circumvent    | مَكْرًا    | مَكَرَ  |

## فَعِلَ يَفْعَلُ

|                |            |        |                |           |        |
|----------------|------------|--------|----------------|-----------|--------|
| To be hot      | حُمُوًا    | حَيِيَ | To permit      | إِذْنًا   | أَذِنَ |
| „ „ enraged    | حَنَقًا    | حَنَقَ | „ be sleepless | أَرْقًا   | أَرَقَ |
| „ live         | حَيَاةً    | حَيِيَ | „ approach     | أَرْفًا   | أَرَفَ |
| „ be ashamed   | خَجَلًا    | خَجَلَ | „ regret       | أَسَفًا   | أَسَفَ |
| „ lose         | خُسْرَانًا | خَسِرَ | „ be ac-       |           |        |
| „ be afraid    | خَشْيَةً   | خَشِيَ | customed       | أَلْفًا   | أَلَفَ |
| „ snatch       | خَطْفًا    | خَطَفَ | „ be secure    | أَمْنًا   | أَمِنَ |
| „ fear         | خَوْفًا    | خَافَ  | „ „ innocent   | بِرَاءَةً | بَرَّى |
| „ be amazed    | دُهُولًا   | دَهَلَ | „ depart       | بَرَحًا   | بَرَحَ |
| „ suck         | رَضَاعَةً  | رَضَعَ | „ be ugly      | بِشَاعَةً | بَشَعَ |
| „ desire       | رَغْبَةً   | رَغَبَ | „ remain       | بَقَاءً   | بَقِيَ |
| „ ascend gra-  |            |        | „ be worn out  | بَلَاءً   | بَلِيَ |
| dually         | رُقْيًا    | رَقِيَ | „ follow       | تَبَاعًا  | تَبِعَ |
| „ be safe      | سَلَامًا   | سَلِمَ | „ trade        | تِجَارَةً | تَجَرَ |
| „ hear         | سَمْعًا    | سَمِعَ | „ be tired     | تَعَبًا   | تَعِبَ |
| „ keep awake   |            |        | „ „ spoilt,    |           |        |
| at night       | سَهْرًا    | سَهَرَ | perish         | تَلَفًا   | تَلَفَ |
| „ be satisfied | شَبَعًا    | شَبِعَ | „ get drunk    | ثَمَلًا   | ثَمِلَ |
| „ witness      | شَهَادَةً  | شَهِدَ | „ be grieved   | حُزْنًا   | حَزِنَ |
| „ ascend       | صُعُودًا   | صَعِدَ | „ keep, learn  |           |        |
| „ be annoyed   | ضَجْرًا    | ضَجَرَ | by heart       | حِفْظًا   | حَفِظَ |
| „ laugh        | ضِحْكًا    | ضَحِكَ | „ praise       | حَمْدًا   | حَمِدَ |

## To be restless,

|                |             |          |
|----------------|-------------|----------|
| anxious        | قَلِقًا     | قَلِقَ   |
| „ despair      | قُنُوطًا    | قَنِطَ   |
| „ be content   |             |          |
| with           | قَنَاعَةً   | قَنِعَ   |
| „ be strong    | قُوَّةً     | قَوِيَ   |
| „ become old   | كِبَرًا     | كَبِرَ   |
| „ dislike      | كَرَاهِيَةً | كَرِهَ   |
| „ be lazy      | كَسَلًا     | كَسَلَدَ |
| „ be complete, |             |          |
| perfect        | كَمَالًا    | كَمَلَ   |
| „ abide        | لُبْنًا     | لَبِثَ   |
| „ insist       |             |          |
| upon           | لَجَاجَةً   | لَجَّ    |
| „ lick         | لَحْسًا     | لَحَسَ   |
| „ overtake     | لَحَاقًا    | لَحِقَ   |
| „ be neces-    |             |          |
| sary           | لُزُومًا    | لَزِمَ   |
| „ stick        | لُصُوفًا    | لَصِفَ   |
| „ play         | لَعِبًا     | لَعِبَ   |
| „ meet, find   | لُقْيَانًا  | لَقِيَ   |
| „ gulp         | لَهْمًا     | لَهَمَ   |
| „ be sick      | مَرَضًا     | مَرَضَ   |

## To gain, con-

|              |           |        |
|--------------|-----------|--------|
| quer         | ظَفَرًا   | ظَفِرَ |
| „ be thirsty | ظَمًا     | ظَمِيَ |
| „ wonder     | عُجْبًا   | عُجِبَ |
| „ lack       | عُدْمًا   | عَدِمَ |
| „ sweat      | عَرَقًا   | عَرِقَ |
| „ bite       | عَضًا     | عَضَّ  |
| „ perish     | عَطَبًا   | عَطِبَ |
| „ thirst     | عَطَشًا   | عَطِشَ |
| „ know       | عِلْمًا   | عَلِمَ |
| „ work       | عَمَلًا   | عَمِلَ |
| „ be drowned | غَرَقًا   | غَرِقَ |
| „ pay a fine |           |        |
| or tax       | غَرَامَةً | غَرِمَ |
| „ cover      | غِشَايَةً | غَشِيَ |
| „ be angry   | غَضَبًا   | غَضِبَ |
| „ slip, err  | غَلَطًا   | غَلِطَ |
| „ take booty | غُنْمًا   | غَنِمَ |
| „ rejoice    | فَرَحًا   | فَرِحَ |
| „ finish, be |           |        |
| empty        | فَرَاغًا  | فَرِغَ |
| „ pass away  | فَنَاءً   | فَنِيَ |
| „ understand | فَهْمًا   | فَهِمَ |

|                 |           |          |               |            |        |
|-----------------|-----------|----------|---------------|------------|--------|
| To desire, love | هَوَى     | هَرَى    | To touch      | مَسَا      | مَسَّ  |
| „ reverence,    |           |          | „ be wearied  |            |        |
| fear            | مَهَابَةً | هَابَ    | of            | مَلَلًا    | مَلَّ  |
| „ sink into     |           |          | „ repent      | نَدَمًا    | نَدِمَ |
| mire            | وَحَلًا   | وَحِلَ   | „ forget      | نَسِيَانًا | نَسِيَ |
| „ contain       | سَعَةً    | وَسِعَ   | „ stick in    | نُشُوبًا   | نَشِبَ |
| „ tread         | وَطًا     | وَطَى    | „ be dry      | نَشَفًا    | نَشِفَ |
| „ despair       | يَأْسًا   | يَيْئَسَ | „ obtain      | نَيْلًا    | نَالَ  |
| „ be dry        | يُبْسًا   | يَيْبَسَ | „ sleep       | نَوْمًا    | نَامَ  |
| „ „ awake       | يَقْظَةً  | يَقْظَ   | „ be decrepit | هَرَمًا    | هَرَمَ |
|                 |           |          | „ perish      | هَلَاكًا   | هَلِكَ |

## فَعْلٌ يَفْعَلُ

|                 |            |        |               |           |        |
|-----------------|------------|--------|---------------|-----------|--------|
| To be humble    | خُشُوعًا   | خَشَعَ | To search     | بَحْنًا   | بَحَثَ |
| „ submit        | خُضُوعًا   | خَضَعَ | „ begin       | بَدَاءَةً | بَدَأَ |
| „ strip, pull   |            |        | „ send, raise |           |        |
| off             | خُلْعًا    | خَلَعَ | the dead      | بَعْنًا   | بَعَثَ |
| „ refute, annul | دَحْضًا    | دَحَضَ | „ deny        | جُحُودًا  | جَحَدَ |
| „ push, repel   | دَفْعًا    | دَفَعَ | „ wound       | جَرْحًا   | جَرَحَ |
| „ slaughter     | ذَبْحًا    | ذَبَحَ | „ put begin   | جَعْلًا   | جَعَلَ |
| „ store         | ذُخْرًا    | ذَخَرَ | „ gather      | جَمْعًا   | جَمَعَ |
| „ go            | ذَهَابًا   | ذَهَبَ | „ speak       |           |        |
| „ see           | رُؤْيَةً   | رَأَى  | openly        | جَهْرًا   | جَهَرَ |
| „ outweigh      | رُجْحَانًا | رَجَحَ | „ deceive     | خِدَاعًا  | خَدَعَ |

| فَحَصًا        | فَكَصَ     | To depart  | رَحِيلًا   | رَحَلَ |
|----------------|------------|------------|------------|--------|
| „ strike fire, |            | „ leak,    |            |        |
| slander        | قَدَحًا    | sweat      | رَشَحًا    | رَشَحَ |
| „ read         | قِرَاءَةً  | „ lift up  | رَفَعًا    | رَفَعَ |
| „ knock        | قَرَعًا    | „ kneel    | رُكُوعًا   | رُكِعَ |
| „ cut          | قَطَعَ     | „ creep    | زَحَفًا    | زَحَفَ |
| „ subdue,      |            | „ sow      | زَرَعًا    | زَرَعَ |
| conquer        | قَهَرًا    | „ swim     | سَبَّاحَةً | سَبَمَ |
| „ check a      |            | „ pasture  | سَرَوْحًا  | سَرَحَ |
| horse          | كَبَحًا    | „ radiate, |            |        |
| „ err gram-    |            | spread     | سَطُوعًا   | سَطَعَ |
| matically      | لَحَنًا    | „ permit   | سَمَحًا    | سَمَحَ |
| „ burn         | لَذَعًا    | „ mediate  | شِفَاعَةً  | شَفَعَ |
| „ sting        | لَسَعًا    | „ throw    |            |        |
| „ curse        | لَعَنًا    | down       | صَرَعًا    | صَرَعَ |
| „ glance       | لَمَحًا    | „ pardon   | صَفَحًا    | صَفَحَ |
| „ shine        | لَمَعَانًا | „ make     | صُنِعًا    | صَنَعَ |
| „ praise       | مَدَحًا    | „ melt     | صَهَرًا    | صَهَرَ |
| „ anoint,      |            | „ grind    | طَحَنًا    | طَحَنَ |
| wipe           | مَسَحًا    | „ cast     | طَرَحًا    | طَرَحَ |
| „ disfigure    | مَسَحًا    | „ pierce   | طَعَنًا    | طَعَنَ |
| „ fill         | مَلَأَ     | „ overflow | طَفُوحًا   | طَفَحَ |
| „ grant        | مَنَحًا    | „ appear   | ظَهَرًا    | ظَهَرَ |
| „ forbid       | مَنَعًا    | „ open     | فَتَحًا    | فَتَحَ |



|               |           |        |               |            |          |
|---------------|-----------|--------|---------------|------------|----------|
| To pillage    | نَهَبَ    | نَهَبَ | To be distant | نَائِيًا   | نَائِيًا |
| „ flow        | نَهَرَ    | نَهَرَ | „ succeed     | نَجَّاحًا  | نَجَّحَ  |
| „ rise        | نَهَضَ    | نَهَضَ | „ hew         | نَحَّاتَةً | نَحَّتْ  |
| „ hurry, flow |           |        | „ slay        | نَحَرًا    | نَحَرَ   |
| fast          | هَرَعَ    | هَرَعَ | „ grow up     | نَشَأَةً   | نَشَأَ   |
| „ place       | وَضَعَ    | وَضَعَ | „ advise      | نُصَحًا    | نَصَحَ   |
| „ lap         | وَلَوْغًا | وَلَعَ | „ sprinkle    | نَضَحًا    | نَضَحَ   |
| „ grant       | هَبَةً    | وَهَبَ | „ croak       | نَعِيقًا   | نَعَقَ   |
|               |           |        | „ marry       | نِكَاحًا   | نَكَحَ   |

## فَعْلٌ يَفْعُلُ

|               |           |         |                      |           |         |
|---------------|-----------|---------|----------------------|-----------|---------|
| To be elegant | بَهَجَةً  | بَهَجَ  | To be well educated, |           |         |
| „ „ heavy     | ثِقَلًا   | ثَقُلَ  | refined              | أَدَبًا   | أَدَبَ  |
| „ „ cowardly  | جُبْنًا   | جَبَنَ  | „ be strong,         |           |         |
| „ „ cou-      |           |         | brave                | بَأْسًا   | بَوَّسَ |
| rageous       | جُرْأَةً  | جَرَّوْ | „ be avari-          |           |         |
| „ harden,     |           |         | cious                | بُخْلًا   | بَخُلَ  |
| freeze        | جُمُودًا  | جَمَدَ  | „ excel in           |           |         |
| „ be young,   |           |         | knowledge            | بِرَاعَةً | بَرَّعَ |
| fresh         | حَدَاثَةً | حَدَّثَ | „ be simple          | بِسَاطَةً | بَسَطَ  |
| „ be resolute | حَزَامَةً | حَزَمَ  | „ see                | بَصْرًا   | بَصَرَ  |
| „ „ of noble  |           |         | „ be slow            | بُطْأًا   | بَطَّوْ |
| birth         | حَسَبًا   | حَسَبَ  | „ „ gallant          | بَطَالَةً | بَطَّلَ |
| „ be beau-    |           |         | „ „ distant          | بُعْدًا   | بَعَدَ  |
| tiful         | حُسْنًا   | حَسَّنَ | „ „ stupid           | بَلَادَةً | بَلَّدَ |

|               |           |         |               |           |        |
|---------------|-----------|---------|---------------|-----------|--------|
| To be small   | صَغَرًا   | صَغَرَ  | To be impreg- |           |        |
| „ „ hard      | صَلَابَةً | صَلَبَ  | nable         | حَصَانَةً | حَصَنَ |
| „ suit, be    |           |         | „ be forbear- |           |        |
| good          | صَلَابَةً | صَلَحَ  | ing           | حِلْمًا   | حَلَمَ |
| „ be weak     | ضَعْفًا   | ضَعَفَ  | „ be corrupt  | خُبْنًا   | خَبَثَ |
| „ „ pure,     |           |         | „ dote        | خِرَافَةً | خَرَفَ |
| chaste        | طَهَارَةً | طَهَّرَ | „ be rough    | خُشُونَةً | خَشَنَ |
| „ be just     | عَدْلًا   | عَدَلَ  | „ „ gentle    | دَمَانَةً | دَمَثَ |
| „ „ sweet     | عُذُوبَةً | عَذَبَ  | „ fade        | دُبُولًا  | دَبُلَ |
| „ „ difficult | عُسْرًا   | عَسَرَ  | „ be wide     | رُحْبًا   | رَحَبَ |
| „ „ great     | عَظَمَةً  | عَظَّمَ | „ „ sedate    | رَصَانَةً | رَصَنَ |
| „ treat       |           |         | „ „ moist,    |           |        |
| harshly       | عَنْفًا   | عَنَفَ  | damp          | رُطُوبَةً | رَطَبَ |
| „ be strange  | غَرَابَةً | غَرَبَ  | „ be ugly     | سَمَاجَةً | سَمَجَ |
| „ „ thick,    |           |         | „ „ agree-    |           |        |
| rough         | غُلْظَةً  | غُلْظًا | able, ge-     |           |        |
| „ be great    | فَخَامَةً | فَخَّمَ | nerous        | سَمَاحَةً | سَمَحَ |
| „ „ skilful   | فَرَاهَةً | فَرَهَ  | „ be easy     | سُهُولَةً | سَهَلَ |
| „ „ wide      | فَسَاحَةً | فَسَحَ  | „ „ cou-      |           |        |
| „ „ elo-      |           |         | rageous       | شَجَاعَةً | شَجَعَ |
| quent         | فَصَاحَةً | فَصَحَ  | „ be noble    | شَرَفًا   | شَرَفَ |
| „ be excel-   |           |         | „ „ quick     |           |        |
| lent          | فَضْلًا   | فَضَلَ  | witted        | شَهَامَةً | شَهَمَ |
| „ be ugly     | قُبْحًا   | قُبِحَ  | „ be diffi-   |           |        |
| „ „ holy      | قُدَاسَةً | قَدَسَ  | cult          | ضَعُوبَةً | ضَعَبَ |

To be renowned نَبَاهَةً

,, , of noble

birth ذِكَايَةً

,, be clean نَظَافَةً

,, , smooth نَعُومَةً

,, , brief وَجَازَةً

,, , respect-

ed وَجَاهَةً

,, be meek وَدَاعَةً

,, , pious وَرَاعَةً

,, , wide وَسُوعًا

,, , hand-

some وَسَامَةً

,, be humble ضَعْفَةً

,, , plentiful وَفَارَةً

,, become an

orphan يُتِمًّا

,, be easy يُسْرًا

نَبَةً

نَجَبٌ

نَظْفٌ

نَعَمٌ

وَجَزٌ

وَجَةٌ

وَدْعٌ

وَرَعٌ

وَسْعٌ

وَسَمٌ

وَضْعٌ

وَفَرْ

يَتَمٌ

يَسْرٌ

To be old,

prior قِدَمًا قَدَمٌ

,, be near قُرْبًا قَرَبٌ

,, , short قِصْرًا قِصْرٌ

,, , tall كِبْرًا كَبَرٌ

,, , plentiful كَثْرَةً كَثُرٌ

,, , generous كَرَمًا كَرَمٌ

,, , perfect كَمَالًا كَمَلٌ

,, arrive at

maturity كُهُولَةً كَهَلٌ

,, be mean لَوْمًا لَوْمٌ

,, , gracious لَطَافَةً لَطْفٌ

,, , strong مَتَانَةً مَتْنٌ

,, , barren مَحَالَةً مَحَلٌ

,, , manly مَرْوَةً مَرَوْ

,, , salty مِلْوْحَةً مَلْمٌ

,, , pretty مَلَاَحَةً مَلَمٌ

,, , inaccessible مَنَاعَةً مَنَعٌ

فَعِلٌ يَفْعِلُ

To swell وَرَمًا

,, come after وَلَايَةً

,, despair يَأْسًا

,, wither يَبْسًا

وَرَمٌ

وَلِيٌّ

يَيْسٌ

يَيْسٌ

To count حُسْبَانًا حَسِبَ

,, live in com-

fort نِعْمَةً نَعِمٌ

,, trust ثِقَةً وَثِقٌ

,, inherit وَرَاثَةً وَرِثٌ

THE END.

12







